NATURAL PRODUCTS IN PLANT PEST MANAGEMENT
Natural Products in Plant Pest Management

Edited by

Nawal K. Dubey

Centre for Advanced Studies in Botany
Banaras Hindu University, Varanasi, India
Contents

Contributors vii

Preface ix

1. Global Scenario on the Application of Natural Products in Integrated Pest Management Programmes 1
   N.K. Dubey, Ravindra Shukla, Ashok Kumar, Priyanka Singh and Bhanu Prakash

2. Plant Products in the Control of Mycotoxins and Mycotoxigenic Fungi on Food Commodities 21
   Sonia Marín, Vicente Sanchis and Antonio J. Ramos

3. Natural Products from Plants: Commercial Prospects in Terms of Antimicrobial, Herbicidal and Bio-stimulatory Activities in an Integrated Pest Management System 42
   J.C. Pretorius and E. van der Watt

4. Antimicrobials of Plant Origin to Prevent the Biodeterioration of Grains 91
   K.A. Raveesha

5. Some Natural Proteinaceous and Polyketide Compounds in Plant Protection and their Potential in Green Consumerization 109
   L.A. Shcherbakova

6. Natural Products as Allelochemicals in Pest Management 134
   Roman Pavela
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chapter</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Pages</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>Potency of Plant Products in Control of Virus Diseases of Plants</td>
<td>149</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>H.N. Verma and V.K. Baranwal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>Phytochemicals as Natural Fumigants and Contact Insecticides</td>
<td>175</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Against Stored-product Insects</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Moshe Kostyukovsky and Eli Shaaya</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>Prospects of Large-scale Use of Natural Products as Alternatives</td>
<td>191</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>to Synthetic Pesticides in Developing Countries</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>D.B. Olufolaji</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>Current Status of Natural Products in Pest Management</td>
<td>205</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>with Special Reference to Brassica carinata as a Biofumigant</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>María Porras</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>Fungal Endophytes: an Alternative Source of Bioactive Compounds for</td>
<td>218</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Plant Protection</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>R.N. Kharwar and Gary Strobel</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>Suppressive Effects of Compost Tea on Phytopathogens</td>
<td>242</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Mila Santos, Fernando Diánez and Francisco Carretero</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td>Biotechnology: a Tool for Natural Product Synthesis</td>
<td>263</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Sanath Hettiarachi</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Index</td>
<td></td>
<td>280</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Contributors

V.K. Baranwal, Advanced Centre of Plant Virology, I.A.R.I, New Delhi, India. E-mail: vbaranwal2001@yahoo.com
Francisco Carretero, Plant Production Department, University of Almeria, La Cañada de San Urbano, 04120 Almería, Spain
N.K. Dubey, Department of Botany, Banaras Hindu University, Varanasi-221005, India. E-mail: nkdubey2@rediffmail.com
Fernando Diánez, Plant Production Department, University of Almeria, La Cañada de San Urbano, 04120 Almería, Spain
Sanath Hettiarachi, Department of Botany, University of Ruhuna, Matara, Sri Lanka. Email: sanath@bot.ruh.ac.lk
R.N. Kharwar, Mycopathology and Microbial Technology Lab, Department of Botany, Banaras Hindu University, Varanasi-221005, India. E-mail: rnkharwar@yahoo.com
Moshe Kostyukovsky, Agricultural Research Organization, the Volcani Center, Israel, Bet Dagan, P.O. Box 6, 50250, Israel. E-mail: inspect@volcani.agri.gov.il
Ashok Kumar, Department of Botany, Banaras Hindu University, Varanasi-221005, India
Sonia Marín, Food Technology Department, Lleida University, XaRTA-UITPV, Lleida, Spain. E-mail: smarin@tecal.udl.cat
D.B. Olufolaji, Department of Crop, Soil and Pest Management, The Federal University of Technology, P.M.B. 704, Akure, Nigeria. E-mail: tundeolufolaji@yahoo.co.uk
Roman Pavela, Crop Research Institute, Drnoveska 507, Prague 6 – Ruzyně, Czech Republic. E-mail: pavela@vuru.cz
María Porras, Department of Crop Protection, IFAPA Centro Las Torres – Tomejil, Aptdo. 41200-Alcalá del Río, Sevilla, Spain. E-mail: mariaa.porras@juntadeandalucia.es
Bhanu Prakash, Department of Botany, Banaras Hindu University, Varanasi-221005, India
J.C. Pretorius, Department of Soil, Crop and Climate Sciences, University of the Free State, P.O. Box 339, Bloemfontein 9300, South Africa. E-mail: pretorjc.sci@ufs.ac.za

Antonio J. Ramos, Food Technology Department, Lleida University, XaRTA-UTPV, Lleida, Spain

K.A. Raveesha, Herbal Drug Technology Laboratory, Department of Studies in Botany, University of Mysore, Manasagangotri, Mysore-570 006, India. E-mail: karaveesha@gmail.com

Vicente Sanchis, Food Technology Department, Lleida University, XaRTA-UTPV, Lleida, Spain

Mila Santos, Plant Production Department, University of Almeria, La Cañada de San Urbano, 04120 Almería, Spain. E-mail: msantos@ual.es

Eli Shaaya, Agricultural Research Organization, the Volcani Center, Israel, Bet Dagan, P.O. Box 6, 50250, Israel

L.A. Shcherbakova, Russian Research Institute of Phytopathology, VNIIF, B., Vzyzyomy, Moscow reg., 143050, Russia. E-mail: larisa@vniif.rosmail.com

Ravindra Shukla, Department of Botany, Banaras Hindu University, Varanasi-221005, India

Priyanka Singh, Department of Botany, Banaras Hindu University, Varanasi-221005, India

Gary Strobel, Department of Plant Sciences, Montana State University, Bozeman, MT 59717, USA

E. van der Watt, Department of Soil, Crop and Climate Sciences, University of the Free State, P.O. Box 339, Bloemfontein 9300, South Africa

H.N. Verma, Jaipur National University, Jaipur, India. E-mail: vermalko@yahoo.co.uk
The ever increasing global population needs substantial resources for food production. However, food production as well as its protection is imperative. The situation gets particularly critical in developing countries where the net food production rate is slowing down relative to the population rise. The world food situation is aggravated by the fact that, in spite of all the available means of plant protection, a major fraction of the yearly output of food commodities gets destroyed by various pests including bacteria, fungi, viruses, insects, rodents and nematodes. The production of mycotoxins by fungi has added new dimensions to the gravity of the problem. Losses at times are severe enough to lead to famine in large areas of the world that are densely populated and dependent on agriculture.

The use of synthetic pesticides has undoubtedly contributed to a green revolution in different countries through increased crop protection. However, recent years witnessed considerable pressure on consumers and farmers to reduce or even eliminate the deployment of synthetic pesticides in agriculture owing to environmental risks emerging from their indiscriminate use. Thus, there has been renewed interest in botanical pesticides as the alternative and eco-chemical option in pest management. It is also imperative for sustainable agriculture to reduce the incidence of pests and crop diseases to a degree that does not seriously damage the farmer’s products and also to develop cost-effective strategies with minimal ecological side effects.

The use of locally available plants in the control of pests is an age-old technology in many parts of the world. Some plants, namely *Derris, Nicotiana* and *Ryania*, were used to combat agricultural pests during the prehistoric era. Used widely until the 1940s, such botanical pesticides have been partially replaced by synthetic pesticides that are easier to procure and longer lasting.

Higher plants, in this respect, harbour numerous compounds that may offer resistance to pathogens. There has been a renewed interest in botanical
antimicrobials owing to various distinct advantages. Botanicals, being the natural derivatives, are biodegradable, and do not leave toxic residues or byproducts to contaminate the environment. The main thrust of recent research in the area has been to evolve alternative control strategies that eventually reduce dependency on synthetic fungicides. Recently, in different parts of the world, emphasis has been placed on exploitation of higher plant products as the novel chemotherapeutants for plants because of their non-toxicity, systemicity and biodegradability. To date, different plant products have been formulated as botanical pesticides for large-scale applications for the eco-friendly management of plant pests and as an alternative to synthetic pesticides in crop management. These products are cost-effective and have low toxicity to humans and livestock. Therefore, such products from higher plants may be exploited as the eco-chemical and biorational approach in integrated plant protection programmes. The interests and trends in the modern society for ‘green consumerism’ involving fewer synthetic ingredients in the agriculture industry may favour the approval of plant-based products as the safe alternative strategy in managing plant pests. Natural plant chemicals will certainly play a pivotal role in the near future for pest control in industrialized and developing countries as well. Because of their biodegradable nature, systemicity following application, ability to alter the behaviour of target pests and their favourable safety profile, the botanical pesticides are considered the vital tools in achieving the evergreen revolution and in the ecological strategy of controlling agricultural pests.

To date, natural plant products for pest management form the frontier areas of research on a global scale. The present book deals with the current state and future prospects of botanical pesticides in the eco-friendly management of plant pests. Looking at the growing interest of professionals and the general public alike, it seemed imperative to produce a book that encompasses as much information as possible, with an emphasis on the exploitation of plant products in the possible management of agricultural pests. The book may be useful to many, including plant pathologists, microbiologists, entomologists, plant scientists and natural product chemists. It is a compilation of invited chapters from eminent scientists and professors from educational institutions and research organizations of different countries. The book addresses different topics under the domain of natural compounds in agricultural pest management and is an attempt to include notable and diversified scientific works in the field carried out by leading scientists in the world.

The book harbours a total of 13 chapters contributed by eminent scientists working in the field so as to offer relevant and practical information on each topic. Different issues, including the global scenario on the application of botanical pesticides, plant products in the control of mycotoxins, the commercial application of botanical pesticides and their prospects in green consumerism, natural products as allelochemicals, their efficacy against viral diseases and storage pests, and bioactive products from fungal endophytes, have been covered in the book. I am very grateful to the contributors for their generous and timely responses in spite of their busy academic schedules.
I wish to extend my appreciation to all the contributors for their cooperation and encouragement. Without their enthusiasm and the timely submission of their excellent chapters, this work would not have been possible.

The book focuses on newer developments in agricultural pest management using natural products and provides up-to-date information from world experts in different fields. It is expected that the book will be a source of inspiration to many for future developments in the field. It is also hoped that the book will become useful for those engaged in such an extraordinary and attractive area. The book would serve as the key reference for recent developments in frontier research on natural products in the management of agricultural pests and also for the scientists working in this area.

I convey the strength of my feelings to my wife Dr Nirmala Kishore, daughter Dr Vatsala Kishore and son Navneet Kishore who have always been the excellent intellectual companions without whose constant loving support, patience, and unmatched help and sacrifices it would have been difficult to bring out the book on time. I also bow my head to my parents (Sri G.N. Dubey and Smt Shanti Devi) for their blessings. My sincere thanks are also due to my current research students, especially Ravindra Shukla, for help and cooperation.

Thanks are due to CABI Publishers for publishing the book with utmost interest; I am thankful to the staff members of CABI for sparing no pains to ensure a high standard of publication. Special thanks goes to Sarah Mellor, the Commissioning Editor, who initially motivated me to bring out this book during the ICPP 2008 held in Turin, Italy.

N.K. Dubey
Global Scenario on the Application of Natural Products in Integrated Pest Management Programmes

N.K. DUBEY, RAVINDRA SHUKLA, ASHOK KUMAR, PRIYANKA SINGH AND BHANU PRAKASH
Department of Botany, Banaras Hindu University, Varanasi, India

Abstract
In recent years there has been considerable pressure in agriculture to reduce chemical pesticides and to look for their better alternatives. The plant kingdom is recognized as the most efficient producer of different biologically active compounds, which provide them with resistance against different pests. Some higher plant products have been currently formulated as botanical pesticides and are used on a large scale as eco-friendly and biodegradable measures in managing agricultural pests. Botanicals used in agricultural pest management are safer to the user and the environment. The interest in the possible use of natural compounds to control agricultural pests has notably increased in response to consumer pressure to reduce or eliminate chemically synthesized additives in foods. There is a wide scope of use of plant-based pesticides in the integrated management of different agricultural pests. A consolidated and continuous search of natural products may yield safer alternative control measures comparable to azadirachtin and pyrethroids, which are being used in different part of the world as ideal natural fungicides. The products from higher plants are safe and economical and would be in high demand in the global pesticide market because of their diverse mode of application.

1.1 Introduction

Agriculture plays an important role in the survival of humans and animals. It is the driving force for broad-based economic growth, particularly in developing countries. Tropical and subtropical regions have a greater potential for food production and can grow multiple crops annually. Agricultural crops suffer a colossal loss due to the ravages of insects and diseases thus causing a serious threat to our agricultural production. In some years, losses are much greater, producing catastrophic results for those who depend on the crop for food. Major disease outbreaks among food crops have led to famines and
mass migrations throughout history. Loss of crops from plant diseases may result in hunger and starvation, especially in less developed countries where access to disease-control methods is limited and annual losses of 30–50% are common for major crops. Owing to the congenial climatic conditions and particular environment, the agriculture in tropical and subtropical countries suffers severe losses due to pests (Varma and Dubey, 2001; Roy, 2003).

Even during storage, foods are severely destroyed by fungi, insects and other pests. The deterioration in the stored food commodities is mainly caused by three agents, fungi, insects and rodents, under different conditions of storage. Insect pests cause heavy losses to stored grains, especially in humid and warm areas of the world. The production of mycotoxins by several fungi has added a new dimension to the gravity of the problem. Fungi are significant destroyers of foodstuffs during storage, rendering them unfit for human consumption by retarding their nutritive value and sometimes by the production of mycotoxins. According to FAO estimates, 25% of the world food crops are affected by mycotoxins each year (Dubey et al., 2008). Generally, tropical conditions such as high temperature and moisture, unseasonal rains during harvest, and flash floods lead to mycotoxins. Poor harvesting practices and improper storage during transport and marketing can also contribute to the proliferation of mycotoxins. Among the mycotoxins, aflatoxins raise the most concern posing a great threat to human and livestock health as well as international trade. Aflatoxins are the most dangerous and about 4.5 billion people in developing countries are exposed to aflatoxicoses (Williams et al., 2004; Srivastava et al., 2008). Aflatoxins are potent toxic, carcinogenic, mutagenic, immunosuppressive agents, produced as secondary metabolites by the fungi Aspergillus flavus and A. parasiticus on a variety of food products.

The entire effort of growing a crop will be lost in the absence of crop protection, resulting in financial loss to the grower. Therefore crop protection against various pests is a must in agriculture. There is a need to reduce if not eliminate these losses by protecting the crops from different pests through appropriate techniques. Currently, the role of crop protection in agriculture is of great importance and is a more challenging process than before. Hence, there is an urgent need to pay proper attention to control quantitative losses due to pest infestations of crops and their produce as well as qualitative losses due to mycotoxin contamination.

1.2 The Need to Search for Eco-friendly Control Measures

The most conventional and common method of pest and disease control is through the use of pesticides. Pesticides are the substances or mixture of substances used to prevent, destroy, repel, attract, sterilize or mitigate the pests. Generally pesticides are used in three sectors, viz. agriculture, public health and consumer use. These pesticides are largely synthetic compounds that kill or deter the destructive activity of the target organism.

Many farmers and crop growers use insecticides to kill infesting insects. The consumption of pesticide in some of the developed countries is
almost 3000 g/hectare. Unfortunately, there are reports that these compounds possess inherent toxicities that endanger the health of the farm operators, consumers and the environment (Cutler and Cutler, 1999). Pesticides are generally persistent in nature. Upon entering the food chain they destroy the microbial diversity and cause ecological imbalance. Their indiscriminate use has resulted in the development of a resistance problem among insects to insecticides, pesticide residue hazards, upsetting the balance of nature and a resurgence of treated populations. Insect resistance to phosphine is a matter of serious concern (Rajendran, 2001; Benhalima et al., 2004; Thie and Mills, 2005; Dubey et al., 2008). The repeated use of certain chemical fungicides in packing houses has led to the appearance of fungicide-resistant populations of storage pathogens (Brent and Hollomon, 1998). The ability of some of these pests to develop resistance curbs the effectiveness of many commercial chemicals. Resistance has accelerated in many insect species and it was reported by the World Resources Institute that more than 500 insect and mite species are immune to one or more insecticides (WRI, 1994). Similarly about 150 plant pathogens such as fungi and bacteria are now shielded against fungicides (Shetty and Sabitha, 2009). Moreover, the control of such pests has become increasingly difficult because of reduced effectiveness of pesticides caused by the emergence of pesticidal resistance in arthropod pests.

Reliance on synthetic chemicals to control pests has also given rise to the destruction of beneficial non-target organisms (parasitoids and predators), thereby affecting the food chain and impacting on biological diversity. There have also been cases of pests becoming tolerant to insecticides, resulting in the use of double and triple application rates (Stoll, 2000).

Furthermore, the use of synthetic chemicals has also been restricted because of their carcinogenicity, teratogenicity, high and acute residual toxicity, ability to create hormonal imbalance, spermatotoxicity, long degradation period, environmental pollution and their adverse effects on food and side effects on humans (Omura, et al., 1995; Unnikrishnan and Nath, 2002; Xavier, et al., 2004; Konstantinou, et al., 2006; Feng and Zheng, 2007). Pesticides can be remarkably persistent in biological systems. They have been reported to be accumulated in ecosystems. Osprey eggs in the Queen Charlotte Islands, polar bear fat in the high Arctic, and the blubber of whales in all the oceans of the world are contaminated with pesticide residues, even though all these creatures live far from point sources of pesticide application (CAPE, 2009). Water and wind, as well as the bodies of animals that serve as prey for others (including humans) higher on the food chain, are the universal vectors for pesticide dispersal. Highest on the food chain, human breast milk contamination is of great concern because of high levels of bio-accumulated pesticides. The World Health Organization (WHO) estimates that 200,000 people are killed worldwide, every year, as a direct result of pesticide poisoning (CAPE, 2009). Pest control strategies, therefore, need proper regulation in the interest of human health and environment. In recent years there has been considerable pressure on consumers to reduce or eliminate chemical fungicides in foods. There is increasing public concern over the level of pesticide residues in food. This concern has encouraged researchers
to look for alternative solutions to synthetic pesticides (Sharma and Meshram, 2006).

Effort is therefore needed to find alternatives or formulations for currently used pesticides. There is, therefore, still a need for new methods of reducing or eliminating food-borne pathogens, possibly in combination with existing methods (Leistner, 1978). At the same time, Western society appears to be experiencing a trend of ‘green consumerism’ (Tuley de Silva, 1996; Smid and Gorris, 1999), desiring fewer synthetic food additives and products with a smaller impact on the environment.

Considering all these drawbacks, many components of the integrated pest management (IPM) concept were developed in the late 19th and early 20th centuries, and biopesticides and bioagents became important tools in pest management strategies that are practical, economical, eco-friendly and protective for both public health and the environment. Sustainable agriculture aims to reduce the incidence of pests and diseases to such a degree that they do not seriously damage the farmer’s crops — but without upsetting the balance of nature. One of the aims of sustainable agriculture is to rediscover and develop methods whose cost and ecological side-effects are minimal.

### 1.3 Historical Use of Botanical Products in Pest Management

Plant diseases are known from times preceding the earliest writings. The Bible and other early writings mention diseases, such as rusts, mildews, blights and blast. Disease control measures are as old as modern civilizations and were first recorded long before the Renaissance in both the Western and the Oriental worlds. The use of locally available plants in the control of pests is an ancient technology in many parts of the world. Rotenone was originally employed in South America to paralyse fish, causing them to come towards the surface and be easily captured (Fig. 1.1a; Ware, 2002). It has been used in fruit gardens to combat such pests as Japanese beetles, mites and stinkbugs. Preparations of roots from the genera *Derris elliptica*, *Lonchocarpus nicou* and *Tephrosia* sp. containing rotenone were commercial insecticides in the 1930s. Rotenone is a flavonoid derivative that strongly inhibits mitochondrial function by inhibiting NADH-dependent coenzyme Q oxidoreductase (Singer and Ramsay, 1994). Rotenone persists 3–5 days on the foliage after application and is easily biodegradable.

Nicotine obtained from several members of the genus *Nicotiana* has been used commercially as an insecticide (Fig. 1.1b). However, presently it is not accepted by most organic certification programmes because of its residue and the potential harm it can cause to humans and the agroecosystem (MMVR, 2003). Ryanodine, an alkaloid from the tropical shrub *Ryania speciosa*, has been used as a commercial insecticide against the European corn borer (Fig. 1.1c). Ryania controls many insects, particularly those with chewing mouthparts (Coats, 1994; Regnault-Roger and Philogene, 2008).
Used widely until the 1940s, such botanical pesticides were partly displaced by synthetic pesticides that at the time seemed easier to handle and longer lasting. With the knowledge of the adverse effects of synthetic pesticides, worldwide attention is currently being given to shifting to non-synthetic safer pesticides. There is renewed interest in the application of botanical pesticides for crop protection, and scientists are now experimenting and working to protect crops from pest infestations using indigenous plant materials (Roy et al., 2005).

1.4 Plant Products in Current Worldwide Use as Pesticides

The plant kingdom is recognized as the most efficient producer of chemical compounds, synthesizing many products that are used in defence against different pests (Prakash and Rao, 1986; 1997; Charleston et al., 2004; Isman and Akhtar, 2007). Higher plants contain a wide spectrum of secondary metabolites such as phenolics, flavonoids, quinones, tannins, essential oils, alkaloids, saponins and sterols. Tens of thousands of secondary products of plants have been identified and there are estimates that hundreds of thousands of such compounds exist. These secondary compounds represent a large reservoir of chemical structures with biological activity. Therefore, higher plants can be exploited for the discovery of new bioactive products that could serve as lead compounds in pesticide development because of their novel modes-of-action (Philogene et al., 2005). The rainforest plants are particularly thought to have developed a complete array of defence-providing chemicals. This resource is largely untapped for use as pesticides (Tripathi et al., 2004).

Extracts prepared from different plants have been reported from time to time to have a variety of properties including insecticidal activity, repellence to pests, antifeedant effects, insect growth regulation, toxicity to nematodes, mites and other agricultural pests, and also antifungal, antiviral and antibacterial properties against pathogens (Prakash and Rao, 1986, 1997).
Natural pest controls using botanicals are safer to the user and the environment because they break down into harmless compounds within hours or days in the presence of sunlight. Botanical pesticides are biodegradable (Devlin and Zettel, 1999) and their use in crop protection is a practical sustainable alternative. Pesticidal plants have been in nature for millions of years without any ill or adverse effects on the ecosystem. Botanical pesticides are also very close chemically to those plants from which they are derived, so they are easily decomposed by a variety of microbes common in most soils. Their use maintains the biological diversity of predators (Grange and Ahmed, 1988), and reduces environmental contamination and human health hazards. Botanical pesticides tend to have broad-spectrum activity and are sometimes stimulatory to the host metabolism (Mishra and Dubey, 1994). Botanical insecticides can often be easily produced by farmers and small-scale industries. Recently, attention has been paid towards the exploitation of higher plant products as novel chemotherapeutics in plant protection. Such plant products have also been formulated for their large-scale application in crop protection, and are regarded as pro-poor and cost-effective (Dubey et al., 2009).

Neem

Neem (Azadirachta indica) is regarded as the ‘Wonder Tree’, ‘Botanical Marvel’, ‘Gift of Nature’ and ‘Village Pharmacy’ in India. From prehistoric times, neem has been used primarily against household and storage pests, and to some extent against pests related to field crops in the Indian subcontinent. Neem oil and seeds are known to have inherent germicidal properties and have been in use for Ayurvedic (herbal) medicines in India for a long time. Burning neem leaves in the evening is a common practice in rural India to repel mosquitoes. Neem is widely grown in other Asian countries and tropical and subtropical areas of Africa, America and Australia. It grows well in poor, shallow, degraded and saline soil. Neem can be considered as the most important among all biopesticides for controlling pests. Neem pesticides do not leave any residue on the crop and therefore are preferred over chemical pesticides. In the past decade, neem has become a source of natural pesticide due to its non-toxicity, environmental safety and so on, thereby replacing synthetic pesticides. Neem derivatives have been applied against several species of storage pests and crop pests as leaves, oil, cake, extracts and as formulations in neem oil (Gahukar, 2000; Dhaliwal et al., 2004). Neem pesticides are thus a potential alternative to chemical-based pesticides and their use can avoid the dumping of thousands of tonnes of agrochemicals on Earth every year.

Neem-based pesticides are sold under trade names such as Margosan-O, Azatin Rose Defense, Shield-All, Triact and Bio-neem. They have been shown to control gypsy moths, leaf miners, sweet potato whiteflies, western flower thrips, loopers, caterpillars and mealybugs as well as some of the plant diseases, including certain mildews and rusts.
Neem products also function as insect growth regulators (IGRs). The treated insects are usually prevented from moulting to develop into the next life stage and they die. The treatment may also deter egg laying. Generally, chewing insects are affected more than sucking insects. Insects that undergo complete metamorphosis are also generally affected more than those that do not undergo metamorphosis.

Neem seeds are a rich storehouse of over 100 tetranortriterpenoids and diverse non-isoprenoids (Devkumar and Sukhdev, 1993). The neem tree contains more than 100 different limonoids in its different tissues (Isman et al., 1996). Many of these are biologically active against insects as antifeedants. The most touted biologically active constituent of neem has been highly oxygenated azadirachtin and some of its natural analogues and derivatives. Azadirachtin (molecular formula: C_{35}H_{44}O_{16}, chemical structure shown in Fig. 1.2), a highly oxidized triterpenoid, is the most widely publicized bioactive molecule in neem. It is systemic in nature, absorbed into the plant and carried throughout the tissues, being ingested by insects when they feed on the plant. This may make it effective against certain foliage-feeders that cannot be reached with spray applications. Azadirachtin is more effective when formulated in a neem oil medium together with the other natural products of neem. Hence, it is preferable to use neem oil enriched with azadirachtin as a stable feed stock for making pesticide formulations.

Neem as a harmless and safe pesticide fits into integrated pest management and organic farming. In toxicological studies carried out in the USA and Germany, different neem products were neither mutagenic nor carcinogetic, and they did not produce any skin irritations or organic alterations in mice and rats, even at high concentrations. Azadirachtin is considered non-toxic to mammals, having a low mammalian toxicity with an LD_{50} of >5000 mg/kg for rat (oral acute) (Raizada et al., 2001), fish (Wan et al., 1996) and pollinators (Naumann and Isman, 1996). Hence it is classified by the
Environmental Protection Agency (EPA) in class IV. Regarding its environmental impact, neem is sensitive to light and the half-life of azadirachtin is one day (Kleeberg, 2006).

**Pyrethrum**

Pyrethrum is one of the oldest and safest insecticides, and is extracted from the dried flower buds of *Chrysanthemum* sp. The ground, dried flowers were used in the early 19th century to control body lice during the Napoleonic Wars. Even today, powders of the dried flowers of these plants are sold as insecticides. Pyrethrum is a mixture of four compounds: pyrethrins I and II and cinerins I and II (chemical structures shown in Fig. 1.3; Ware, 2002). Chrysanthemum plants, *Chrysanthemum cinerariaefolium*, are grown primarily in Kenya, Uganda, Tanzania and Ecuador. Pyrethrins affect the insect on contact, creating disturbances in the nervous system which eventually result in convulsions and death. Low doses, however, often cause temporary paralysis from which the insect may recover. For this reason, pyrethrums are mixed with a synergist such as piperonyl butoxide (PBO) derived from sassafras or *n*-octyl bicycloheptane dicarboximide to increase insect mortality and to extend their shelf life (Ware, 2002).

Pyrethrum products represent 80% of the total market of botanical insecticides and are favoured by organic growers because of their low mammalian toxicity and environmental non-persistence (Isman, 1994). Pyrethrum is non-toxic to most mammals, making it among the safest insecticides in use.

**Pyrethroids versus pyrethrin**

Pyrethroids are synthetic materials designed to imitate natural pyrethrum. They have been developed based on pyrethrins, but are much more toxic and long lasting (Singh and Srivasava, 1999). They are marketed under various trade names, for example Ambush or Decis. Pyrethroids can be useful insecticides, but some pyrethroids are extremely toxic to natural enemies. Pyrethroids are also toxic to honey bees and fish. Sunlight does not break them down and they stick to leaf surfaces for weeks, killing any insect that touches the leaves. This makes them less specific in action and more harmful to the environment than pyrethrin. In addition they irritate the human skin.

**Sabadilla**

Sabadilla, also known as cevadilla, is derived from the seeds of the sabadilla lily (*Schoenocaulon officinale*), a tropical lily that grows in Central and South America (Soloway, 1976). The active ingredient is an alkaloid known as veratrine which is commonly sold under the trade names ‘Red Devil’ or ‘Natural Guard’ (for the structure, see Fig. 1.4). This compound was first used in the 16th century, and grew in popularity during the Second World War, when other botanicals such as pyrethrum and rotenone were in short supply. The dust is made from the seeds and the active components are
Fig. 1.3. Pyrethrum.

Fig. 1.4. Veratrine.
lacking in the other plant parts (roots, bulbs, stems and leaves). It is interesting that the toxic constituents actually become more powerful after storage.

Sabadilla is considered among the least toxic of botanical insecticides, with an oral LD$_{50}$ of 4000–5000 mg/kg (in mice) (Dayan et al., 2009). It slows down the shutting of Na$^+$ channels and disturbs membrane depolarization, causing paralysis before death (Bloomquist, 1996). No residue is left after the application of sabadilla because it breaks down rapidly in sunlight.

**Carvone**

Carvone is a monoterpenoid of the essential oil of *Carum carvi* (see Fig. 1.5 for the structure). It is a non-toxic botanical pesticide under the trade name TALENT. It inhibits the sprouting of potato tubers during storage and protects them from bacterial rotting without exhibiting mammalian toxicity. Thus, it enhances the shelf life of stored fruits and vegetables and inhibits microbial deterioration without altering the taste and odour of the fruits after treatment (Varma and Dubey, 1999). The LD$_{50}$ value of carvone (in mice) is reported to be 1640 mg/kg (Isman, 2006).

**Allyl isothiocyanate**

Allyl isothiocyanate (Fig. 1.6) is an organosulfur compound that serves the plant as a defence against herbivores. Because it is harmful to the plant itself, it is stored in the harmless form of the glucosinolate, separate from the myrosinase enzyme present in plants. When an animal chews the plant, the allyl isothiocyanate is released due to action of myrosinase enzyme, thus repelling the animal.

Members of the plant family Brassicaceae are chemically linked by the almost universal presence of glucosinolates, a class of sulfur-containing glycosides, also called mustard oil glycosides or thioglucosides. These compounds are considered the first line of defence of crucifers against insects and other organisms (Renwick, 1996).

![Fig. 1.5. Carvone.](image)

![Fig. 1.6. Allyl isothiocyanate.](image)
1.5 Other Plant Products

Other environmentally safe botanical pesticides are in use from plants, namely from *Annona squamosa* (seeds), *Pongamia pinnata* (seeds) and *Vitex negundo* (leaf) (Hiremath et al., 1997). Some plant species are known to be highly resistant to nematodes. The best documented of these include marigolds (*Tagetes* spp.), rattlebox (*Crotalaria spectabilis*), chrysanthemums (*Chrysanthemum* spp.), and castor bean (*Ricinus communis*) (Duke, 1990). These plants may be recommended as intercropping plants to control the nematode population in soil through their exudates and leachates. In addition to protecting crops from infestation, many rainforest plants can be used as insect repellents. Bright orange berries of *Bixa orellana* are effective in deterring biting insects, in addition to being used as a body paint and dye (Butler, 2009). In some of the members of Asteraceae, the photodynamic compound alpha-terthienyl has been shown to account for the strong nematocidal activity of the roots (Fig. 1.7a). However, no plant-derived products are sold commercially for the control of nematodes. Strychnine formulations are used in commercial rodenticides (Fig. 1.7b). *Quassia amara* (Surinam Wood), belonging to the family Simaroubaceae, is a tree species naturally distributed in Suriname and several tropical countries. Traditionally, the bark and leaves are used in herbal remedies and as medicine because the major secondary metabolites of this tree, quassin and neo-quassin, exhibit pharmacological properties such as antimalarial, antifungal, anti-ulcerative, anti-edimogenic and anticancer activity. The male reproductive system, particularly spermatogenesis, sperm maturation and androgen biosynthesis, is highly sensitive to the metabolites of *Q. amara*, which would be useful for insect pest control but may also affect male reproduction in non-target organisms. Therefore, their pharmacological effects on mammals should be determined before recommendation to avoid any handling problems with such chemicals. However, quassin has been recently assessed in trials in Australia to control pests of Brassicaceae (Thacker, 2002).

Some plants have been reported to contain insect growth regulatory chemicals (IGRs), which disrupt insect maturation and emergence as adults. Juvabione (Fig. 1.8a), found in the wood of balsam fir, was discovered by accident when paper towels made from this source were used to line insect-rearing containers resulting in a suppression of insect development.

![Fig. 1.7](image_url)

Fig. 1.7. (a) α-terthienyl (b) Strychnine.
(Varma and Dubey, 1999). Analogues of insect juvenile hormones such as
juvocimenes in *Ocimum basilicum* have also been reported (Balandrin et al.,
1985). Precocenes isolated from essential oils of *Matricaria recutita* interfere
with the normal function of insect glands that produce juvenile hormones
resulting in the suppression of insect growth while moulting (Fig. 1.8b).

Many plant chemicals deter insects from feeding, thereby showing an
antifeedant effect. Azadirachtin and limonoids such as limonin and nomilin
from different plant species in Meliaceae and Rutaceae (e.g. from *Citrus*
fruits) have long been used successfully for insect control, especially in India.
Azadirachtin protects newly grown leaves of crop plants from feeding dam-
age, thereby showing systemic antifeedant properties (Varma and Dubey,
1999).

### 1.6 Essential Oils

Since the middle ages, essential oils have been widely used for bactericidal,
virucidal, fungicidal, antiparasite, insecticidal, medicinal and cosmetic appli-
cations, especially nowadays in the pharmaceutical, sanitary, cosmetic, and
agricultural and food industries. In nature, essential oils play an important
role in the protection of the plants as antibacterials, antivirals, antifungals,
insecticides and also against herbivores by reducing their appetite for such
plants. They also may attract some insects to favour the dispersion of pollens
and seeds, or repel undesirable others. Some essential oils have been recog-
nized as an important natural source of pesticides. Aromatic plants produce
many compounds that are insect repellents or act to alter insect feeding
behaviour, growth and development, ec dysis (moulting), and behaviour dur-
ing mating and oviposition. Recently researchers have demonstrated such
compounds showing larvicidal and antifeedant activity (Adebayo *et al*., 1999;
Larocque *et al*., 1999; Gbolade, 2001), capacity to delay development, adult
emergence and fertility (Marimuthu *et al*., 1997), deterrent effects on oviposi-
tion (Naumann and Isman 1995; Oyedele *et al*., 2000), and arrestant and repe-
llent action (Landolt *et al*., 1999). Plants with strong smells, such as French
marigold and coriander, act as repellents and can protect the crops nearby.

Most insect repellents are volatile terpenoids such as terpenen-4-ol. Other
terpenoids can act as attractants. In some cases, the same terpenoid can repel
certain undesirable insects while attracting more beneficial insects. For instance,
geraniol will repel houseflies while attracting honey bees (Duke, 1990).
Repellents and attractants modify the behavioural response of insects. This is the basis for the principle of behavioural insect control, whereby a given species is either attracted to a bait or pheromone, or repelled from a host plant by a repulsive agent (Fagoonee, 1981). Some of the plants contain chemicals which alter the behaviour and life cycle of insect pests without killing them. Such chemicals are termed as semio-chemicals by the Organisation for Economic Cooperation and Development (Jones, 1998). The most attractive aspect of using essential oils and/or their constituents as crop protectants is their favourable mammalian toxicity because many essential oils and their constituents are commonly used as culinary herbs and spices. Such products are generally exempted from toxicity data requirements by the Environmental Protection Agency, USA. Some American companies have recently taken advantage of this situation and have been able to bring essential-oil-based pesticides to market. Mycotech Corporation produces Cinnamite™, an aphidicide/miticide/fungicide for glasshouse and horticultural crops, and Valero™, a fungicide for use in grapes, berry crops, citrus and nuts. Both products are based on cinnamon oil, with cinnamaldehyde as the active ingredient. EcoSMART Technologies are aiming to become a world leader in essential-oil-based pesticides (Shaaya and Kostjukovsky, 1998).

Several essential oil constituents are already in use as an alternative to conventional insecticides. For example, d-limonene is an active ingredient of commercially available flea shampoos, pulegone and citronellal are used as mosquito repellents, and 1,8-cineole is the structural base of the herbicide cinmethylin (Duke et al., 2000). Many commercial products such as Buzz Away (containing oils of citronella, cedarwood, eucalyptus and lemongrass), Green Ban (containing oils of citronella, cajuput, lavender, safrole from sassafrass, peppermint and bergapten from bergamot oil) and Sin-So-Soft® (containing various oils) are in use as insect repellents (Chou et al., 1997).

A Push–Pull or stimulo–deterrent diversionary strategy has been developed in South Africa for minimizing damage due to maize stem borer insects (Cook et al., 2006). This strategy involves the selection of plant species employed as trap crops to attract stem borer insects away from maize crops, or some plant species are used as intercrops to repel insects. The trap and repellant plants contain some semio-chemicals which attract or repel the insect. Pennisetum purpureum and Sorghum vulgare attract the stem borer insect, while Milinis minutiflora, Desmodium uncinitum and D. intorium are the repellant plants. The Push–Pull strategy is also employed in the control of Heliothis sp. in cotton fields (Pyke et al., 1987). The Push–Pull strategy exploiting the chemical ecology of plants would prove an interesting, indigenous and readily available concept in the management of insect population in field crops. Plant flowers such as marigolds and certain types of vegetables can help to control pests in or around the main crop, which is sometimes called ‘companion planting’ (Kuepper and Dodson, 2001).

Some of the essential oils and their components show chemosterilant activity making the insect pests sterile. The compound β-asarone extracted from rhizomes of Acorus calamus, possesses antagonial activity causing the complete inhibition of ovarian development of different insects (Varma and
The products showing chemosterilant activity are highly required in integrated pest management programmes to limit the chances of physiological (resistant) race development by insects.

Some of the essential oils have been found useful against those species of pests that are resistant towards synthetic pesticides. These essential oils are a complex mixture of components including minor constituents, in contrast to synthetic pesticides based on single products, and they act synergistically within the plant as a defence strategy. Hence, it is likely that they are more durable towards pests evolving resistance (Feng and Isman, 1995). Due to their largely environmentally friendly nature, they can be efficiently used for pest management in urban areas, homes and other sensitive areas such as schools, restaurants and hospitals (Isman, 2006).

Octopamine (a biogenic amine found in insects) has a broad spectrum of biological roles in insects, acting as a neurotransmitter, neurohormone and circulating neurohormone–neuromodulator (Evans, 1980; Hollingworth et al., 1984). Octopamine exerts its effects through interacting with at least two classes of receptors which, on the basis of pharmacological criteria, have been designated octopamine-1 and octopamine-2 (Evans, 1980). Interrupting the function of octopamine results in a total breakdown of the nervous system in insects. Therefore, the octopaminergic system of insects represents a bi-rational target for insect control. The lack of octopamine receptors in vertebrates probably accounts for the profound selectivity of certain essential oils as insecticides. A number of essential oil compounds have been demonstrated to act on the octopaminergic system of insects (Enan et al., 1998). Mode-of-action studies on monoterpenoids also indicate the inhibition of acetylcholinesterase enzyme activity as the major site of action in insects (Rajendran and Sriranjini, 2008).

Encapsulation is the suitable technology for the formulation of essential-oil-based pesticides. The method reduces the loss of the active agents and offers the possibility of a controlled release of oil vapours (Moretti et al., 1998). Essential oils can also be incorporated with polymers into sheets. Attractant adhesive films with essential oils have been prepared to control insects in agriculture and horticulture (Klerk’s Plastic Industries B.V., 1990).

Many of the commercial products that include essential oils are on the ‘Generally Recognised as Safe’ (GRAS) list fully approved by the Food and Drug Administration (FDA) and Environmental Protection Agency (EPA) in USA for food and beverage consumption (Burt, 2004).

![Fig. 1.9. β-Asarone.](image-url)
1.7 Higher Plant Products as Inhibitors of Aflatoxin Secretions

The post-harvest colonization of various moulds on food commodities reduces their shelf life and market value, as well as rendering them unfit for human consumption because of the secretion of different types of mycotoxins, including aflatoxin, that cause undesirable effects on human health.

Hence, both qualitative as well as quantitative losses of food commodities have been reported due to fungal infestations. For the complete protection of stored food commodities from fungal biodeterioration, a fungitoxicant should be inhibitory to fungal growth as well as aflatoxin secretion. Reducing aflatoxin residue levels in food or feed can confer international trade advantages in developing countries and there may also be long-term benefits for the local population through health improvement (Dichter, 1987). Some natural products from plants such as allicin from garlic and onion extracts, clove oil, and black and white pepper have been reported to control fungal toxins (Ankri and Mirelman, 1999). Leaves of *Garcinia indica* (Selvi et al., 2003), *Morinda lucida* and *Azadirachta indica* (Bankole, 1997) have been found effective in controlling aflatoxin production in food commodities. Some of the natural products, such as cinnamon and clove oil (Sinha et al., 1993), phenols (Singh, 1983), some spices (Hasan and Mahmoud, 1993) and many essential oils (Razzaghi-Abyaneh et al., 2008) have been reported as effective inhibitors of fungal growth and aflatoxin production. The extracts of several wild and medicinal plants have also been tested against aflatoxin-producing fungi (Bilgrami et al., 1980). Essential oils from *Cymbopogon citratus*, *Monodora myristica*, *Ocimum gratissimum*, *Thymus vulgaris* and *Zingiber officinale* have been reported for their inhibitory effect on food spoilage and mycotoxin-producing fungi. Recently, the essential oils of *Cinnamomum camphora* (Singh et al., 2008a), *Thymus vulgaris* (Kumar et al., 2008) and *Pelargonium graveolens* (Singh et al., 2008b) have been reported to suppress aflatoxin B<sub>1</sub> secretion by different toxigenic strains of *A. flavus*. However, there is little in the literature on the ability to monitor aflatoxin secretions by toxigenic fungal strains on food commodities.

1.8 Conclusion

Sustainable agriculture aims to reduce the incidence of pests and diseases to such a degree that they do not seriously damage the farmer’s crop without upsetting the balance of nature. One of the aims of sustainable agriculture is to rediscover and develop strategies of which the cost and ecological side-effects are minimal. The secondary compounds of plants are a vast repository of compounds with a wide range of biological activities. Unlike compounds synthesized in the laboratory, secondary compounds from plants are virtually guaranteed to have biological activity and that activity is likely to function in protecting the producing plant from a pathogen, herbivore, or competitor. Among the variety of nature’s ecosystem services, natural pest control is an important aspect. Hence, it is pertinent to explore the pesticidal activity of plant products.
Natural pest controls using botanicals are safer to the user and the environment because they break down into harmless compounds within hours or days in the presence of sunlight. They are also very close chemically to those plants from which they are derived, so they are easily decomposed by a variety of microbes common in most soils. Because of greater consumer awareness and negative concerns towards synthetic chemicals, crop protection using botanical pesticides is becoming more popular. There is a wide scope for the use of plant-based pesticides in the integrated management of different agricultural pests.

References


Bioorganic and Medicinal Chemistry 17, 4022–4034.


Plant Products in the Control of Mycotoxins and Mycotoxigenic Fungi on Food Commodities

SONIA MARÍN, VICENTE SANCHIS AND ANTONIO J. RAMOS

Food Technology Department, Lleida University, Lleida, Spain

Abstract
Mycotoxins are naturally occurring secondary metabolites of several toxigenic fungi that contaminate the whole food chain, from agricultural products, through to human consumption. Restrictions imposed by the food industries and regulatory agencies on the use of some synthetic food additives have led to a renewed interest in searching for alternatives, such as natural antimicrobial compounds, particularly those derived from plants. This chapter summarizes recent work on the antifungal activity of plant products and their potential for use as food additives. During the past two decades many publications have dealt with the inhibition of mycotoxigenic species by natural plant products. Most of them showed the high efficacy of such products as antifungals. Their final application to food products is, however, still in its infancy. The reasons for this are: (i) different origin, varieties and extraction methods of plant products result in essential oils and oleoresins that are widely varied in composition, preventing a direct extrapolation of results, unless experiments are carried out using pure components of these essential oils and oleoresins; (ii) plant products should be applied in such a way and at a concentration that does not affect sensorial quality of food products. Most in vitro studies used high concentrations of plant extracts and direct contact as the screening technique, so the application of these extracts to foods has not always been successful; and (iii) safety issues should be addressed prior to the widespread application of such extracts.

2.1 Mycotoxins in Foods
Mycotoxins are naturally occurring secondary metabolites of several toxigenic fungi that contaminate the whole food chain, from agricultural products such as peanuts and other nuts, fruits and dried fruits, and ultimately are consumed by man. These toxins can be produced in the field during the growth of the fungus on the crop or later, as a result of substandard handling or storage. Animal-derived foods such as milk, cheese and meat can be other sources of mycotoxins, if animals have been given contaminated
feed. The occurrence of mycotoxins may differ from year to year. The FAO estimates that mycotoxins contaminate 25% of agricultural crops worldwide. They also have a significant impact on economics, by causing losses in farm animals or giving rise to difficulties in their management, or by rendering commodities unacceptable for national or international trade because they do not conform to existing regulations (EU, Commission Regulation 1881/2006 and 1126/2007, 105/2010 and 165/2010).

The generic term mycotoxicosis covers a variety of toxicities that target exposed organs of animals and humans. In this regard, several mycotoxins are potent animal carcinogens and have been classified by the International Agency for Research in Cancer as potential human carcinogens. The toxic effects of mycotoxins on human health are acute with a rapid onset and an obvious toxic or chronic response as characterized by low-dose exposure to mycotoxins over a long-time period. So, the real impact of the mycotoxins in human health depends on the type and the amount of the mycotoxin ingested.

2.2 Natural Preservatives for Control of Mycotoxigenic Fungi and Mycotoxins in Foods

Synthetic preservatives are nowadays the more effective and widespread way of chemical control of harmful microorganisms and diseases caused by them. Both field fungicides or antifungal food additives are efficient ways to control fungal growth in foods and raw materials. Antifungal agents are chemicals that prevent or delay mould growth. However, the presence of chemical residues in foods and labelling of preservatives in food packages are major concerns nowadays; furthermore, increasing fungal resistance has also become a problem. The interest in the search for natural preservatives and their application in food products appear to be stimulated by modern consumer trends and concerns about the safety of current food preservatives.

Restrictions imposed by the food industries and regulatory agencies on the use of some synthetic food additives have led to renewed interest in searching for alternatives, such as natural antimicrobial compounds, particularly those derived from plants.

2.3 Plant Products as Alternatives for Control of Mycotoxigenic Fungi and Mycotoxins

Plants are continuously exposed to a wide range of pathogens and, even though they do not possess an immune system, they have evolved a variety of defence mechanisms against these pathogens. After the perception of the primary wound, a signal is transduced locally and systemically through the activation of different pathways which are integrated in the regulation of the stress response (Doares et al., 1995). Several plant pathogenesis-related proteins such as β-glucanases, chitinases, chitin-binding proteins,
polygalacturonase-inhibiting proteins and $\alpha$-amylases have been shown to possess antifungal activity against toxigenic fungi. When attacked by insects and pathogens, plants produce, together with defence proteins, a wide variety of volatile and non-volatile secondary metabolites, such as phytoalexins, alkaloids, terpenes, aldehydes, etc.

Much research has been published on the antimicrobial activity of plant products, including flours, plant extracts, oleoresins and essential oils. A very interesting option is the use of essential oils as antimicrobial additives, because they are rich sources of biologically active compounds. Essential oils are mainly obtained by steam distillation from various plant sources.

The antimicrobial activity of plant products has been extensively studied and demonstrated against a number of microorganisms, mostly in vitro rather than in tests with foods, and usually using a direct-contact antimicrobial assay. In the direct-contact method, active compounds are brought into contact with the selected microorganisms, and their inhibition is monitored by means of direct inspection or by measuring a physical property that is directly related to microorganism growth, such as optical density, impedance or conductance. The solution of active compound may be added to a test tube or to agar medium, and then microorganisms are inoculated. The disc diffusion test consists of spiking a sterile disc with the active compound; spiked discs are then added after inoculation of the medium, after which the inhibition zones are measured, giving an indication of the antimicrobial strength. For volatile compounds such as essential oils, the antimicrobial effectiveness in the vapour phase is of particular interest. This variety of testing techniques makes it difficult to compare results obtained by different researchers, mainly because of the difficulty in knowing the concentrations of active compounds applied.

**In vitro assays against mycotoxigenic fungi**

Many plant extracts have been tested in vitro for antifungal activity against a wide range of fungi associated with deterioration of food commodities and herbal drugs.

Studies carried out by Karthikeyan et al. (2007) revealed that aqueous leaf extract of zimmu (an interspecific hybrid of Allium cepa L. and Allium sativum L.) exhibited strong antifungal activity against Aspergillus flavus, Fusarium moniliforme and Alternaria alternata and caused in vitro fungal growth inhibition of 73.3%, 71.1% and 74.4%, respectively. These moulds cause mouldy sorghum grains. Essential oil and methanol extract of Satureja hortensis had strong activity against A. flavus isolated from lemon fruit (Dikbas et al., 2008).

Extracts of Cynara cardunculus were effective in the control of A. flavus, A. niger, A. ochraceus, Fusarium tricinctum, Penicillium funiculosum, P. ochrochloron, Trichoderma viride and Alt. alternata (Kukic et al., 2008). Similar results were obtained with aqueous extract of Adenocalymma sativum in order to
control *A. flavus*, *A. niger*, *A. terreus*, *F. oxysporum*, *F. roseum*, *P. italicum*, *Cladosporium cladosporioides* and *Alt. alternata*. The minimum inhibitory concentration of extracts against *A. flavus* and *A. niger* were superior to those of two commonly used synthetic fungicides (Shukla et al., 2008).

The essential oil of *Amomum subulatum* exhibited a fungitoxic spectrum against a wide range of moulds such as *A. niger*, *A. flavus*, *A. terreus*, *A. fumigatus*, *Alt. alternata*, *Cladosporium herbarum*, *Curvularia lunata*, *F. oxysporum*, *Helminthosporium oryzae* and *Trichoderma viride*. Their mycelial growth was significantly inhibited at 750 μg/ml (Singh et al., 2008a).

An in vitro initial screening of a range of 37 essential oils (including cinnamon leaf, *Cinnamomum zeylanicum*; clove, *Syzygium aromaticum*; lemongrass, *Cymbopogon citrates*; oregano, *Origanum vulgare*; and palma rose, *Cymbopogon martini*) on inhibition of mycelial growth of toxigenic strains of *F. verticillioides*, *F. proliferatum* and *F. graminearum* under different temperatures (20–30°C) and water activities (*a_w*) (0.95–0.995) was made. The basic medium was a 3% maize meal extract agar. The agar medium was modified with glycerol in order to get the assayed water activity and the essential oils were incorporated at different concentrations (0, 500, 1000 μg/ml). Although water activity was determinant for the growth of the isolates, in general, the preservative effects of the oils were not linked to *a_w*. However, a trend to a higher inhibition by the oils when *a_w* was low was observed. Temperature had a minor importance in the inhibitory effect of the essential oils (Velluti et al., 2004a).

Essential oils of both cinnamon and clove were shown to effectively inhibit growth of both *A. flavus* and *P. islandicum* by direct contact, and in the vapour phase. In the atmosphere generated by these two essential oils eugenol was the major compound, while other essential oils with low levels of eugenol proved to be ineffective, suggesting that eugenol was the antimicrobial agent (López et al., 2005).

Guynot et al. (2003) proved that the volatile fractions of cinnamon leaf, clove, bay (*Laurus nobilis*), lemongrass and thyme (*Thymus vulgaris*) showed potential antifungal activity against *A. flavus* and *A. niger*.

**In vitro assays for the inhibition of mycotoxin production**

Species in *Aspergillus* section *Flavi*, mainly *A. flavus* and *A. parasiticus* are among the most commonly occurring spoilage fungi. Some strains of these species have the ability to produce aflatoxins. These fungi invade agricultural commodities such as corn, peanuts and cottonseed, and herbal drugs, the resulting contamination with aflatoxin often making these products unfit for consumption. Moreover, these mycotoxins are considered carcinogenic substances and their presence is a health concern, so their control is one of the aims in order to obtain safe products. Little attention has been paid, however, to the efficacy of essential oils in inhibiting aflatoxin production. Recently, work has been carried out to study the effect of these products as anti-aflatoxicogenic agents.
Bluma et al. (2008) carried out a study with several plant extracts. A total of 96 extracts from 41 Argentinian plant species were screened against four strains of *Aspergillus* section *Flavi*. Studies on the percentage of germination, germ-tube elongation rate, growth rate, and aflatoxin B1 (AFB1) accumulation were carried out. Clove, mountain thyme (*Hedeoma multiflora*) and poleo (penny royal; *Lippia turbinate var. integrifolia*) essential oils showed the most antifungal effect in all growth parameters analysed as well as AFB1 accumulation.

Essential oils from *Pelargonium graveolens* (Singh et al., 2008b) and *Artabotrys odoratissimus* (Srivastava et al., 2009) exhibited fungitoxicity against toxigenic strains of *A. flavus* at 0.75 g/l and 750 μl/l, respectively. The oils of *P. graveolens* and *Aelagonium odoratissimus* showed excellent antiaflatoxigenic efficacy as they completely inhibited AFB1 production even at 0.50 g/l and 750 μl/l, respectively.

In addition, an in vitro study with aqueous extracts of neem (*Azadirachta indica*) leaves on *A. flavus* and *A. parasiticus* has shown that the extracts fail to inhibit the vegetative growth of these moulds, while aflatoxin biosynthesis was essentially blocked in vitro (*A. flavus* 100% and *A. parasiticus* more than 95%, using extract concentrations at 10% v/v). AFB1 synthesis was also inhibited at low extract concentrations of *Allium sativum* in a semi-synthetic medium (Shukla et al., 2008).

The essential oil of *Cinnamomum camphora* was effective against other toxigenic *A. flavus* isolates detected in medicinal plants. Srivastava et al. (2008) evaluated other essential oils. In this work, the growth of a toxigenic strain of *A. flavus* decreased progressively with increasing concentrations of essential oils from leaves of *C. camphora* and the rhizome of *Alpinia galanga* incorporated into SMKY medium. Both oils showed complete inhibition of growth of the toxigenic strain of *A. flavus* at 1000 mg/l. The oils significantly arrested AFB1 production by *A. flavus*. The oil of *C. camphora* completely blocked AFB1 production at 750 mg/l, whereas that of *Alpina galanga* showed complete inhibition at 500 mg/l only. The combination of *C. camphora* and *Alpina galanga* oils showed more efficacy than the individual oils, showing complete inhibition of AFB1 production even at 250 mg/l. The major components of *C. camphora* oil, as determined using GC–MS, were fenchone (34.82%), camphene (23.77%), α-thujene (17.45%), 1-limolene (7.54%) and cis-p-menthane (5.81%). In case of *Alpina galanga* oil, bicyclo[4.2.0]oct-1-ene, 7-exo-ethenyl (58.46%), trans-caryophyllene (7.05%), α-pinene (14.94%) with camphene (2.15%), germacrene (1.78%) and citronellyl acetate (1.41%) were recorded as major components. In this study, the oils showed anti-aflatoxigenic properties at concentrations lower than their fungitoxic concentration. Thus, the inhibition of fungal mycelia by these oils may be through a mode other than the aflatoxin inhibition. The difference in antifungal and aflatoxin inhibition efficacy of essential oils may be attributed to the oil composition. The components of the oils may be acting by different modes of action for antifungal activity and aflatoxin inhibition. The interesting finding of this study is the better efficacy of the oil combination of *C. camphora* and *Alpina galanga* in controlling the mycelial growth as
well as aflatoxin production at a concentration lower than with the individual oils (Srivastava et al., 2008).

The results obtained by Sandosskumar et al. (2007) in in vitro experiments confirmed the antifungal activity of the zimmu extract against toxigenic strains of A. flavus. In addition, when the aflatoxigenic strains were grown in medium containing zimmu extract the production of AFB1 was completely inhibited, even at a concentration of 0.5%. In addition, when AFB1 was incubated with this extract a complete degradation of the toxin was observed 5 days after incubation. It is possible that the reduction in AFB1 content may be due to detoxification or catabolism of AFB1 by root exudates of zimmu.

Molyneux et al. (2007) suggested the hypothesis that aflatoxin biosynthesis is stimulated by oxidative stress on the fungus and the compounds capable of relieving oxidative stress should therefore suppress or eliminate aflatoxin biosynthesis.

Srivastava et al. (2008) concluded that, in general, the inhibitory action of natural products on fungal cells involves cytoplasm granulation, cytoplasmic membrane rupture and inactivation and/or inhibition of synthesis of intracellular enzymes. These actions can occur in an isolated or in a concomitant manner and culminate with mycelium germination inhibition. Phenolic compounds in the essential oils have been mostly reported to be responsible for their biological properties; however, some non-phenolic constituents of oils are more effective. The aldehyde group is also believed to be responsible for antimicrobial activity. Among the alcohols, longer chain (C6–C10) molecules in the oils have been reported to be more effective. Such compounds present in the oils may be held responsible for such biological activities.

In addition, the therapeutic use of essential oils and their combinations comprising more than one fungitoxic ingredient may also provide a solution for the rapid development of fungal resistance which is currently noticed in cases of different prevalent antifungal therapeutics. Results obtained by other researchers (Sidhu et al., 2009) confirmed the synergistic effect of plant extracts. So, the combination of botanicals can be used for control of fungal growth and aflatoxin production.

Another mycotoxigenic mould is P. expansum, which is mainly responsible for decay in apples and pears kept in cold storage rooms. In addition, it is regarded as the major producer of the mycotoxin patulin. When apples invaded by P. expansum are used in making apple products (e.g. fruit juices), these products will probably be contaminated with patulin. Its presence is a health concern.

Neem leaf extracts inhibited patulin production at concentrations higher than 12.5 mg/ml, reaching a 96% inhibition at 50 mg/ml of neem extract. Patulin concentrations were reduced by neem extracts in cultures whose growth was not inhibited. So, the inhibition of patulin production does not appear to be simply a function of mycelial weight reduction (Mossini et al., 2004).

The aldehydes hexanal, trans-2-hexenal, citral, trans-cinnamaldehyde and p-anisaldehyde, the phenols carvacrol and eugenol, and the ketones 2-nonanone and (-)-carvone were screened for their ability to control P. expansum conidia germination and mycelial growth (Neri et al., 2006).
The in vitro spore germination and mycelial growth assay showed a consistent fungicidal activity by trans-2-hexenal, whereas (–)-carvone, p-anisaldehyde, eugenol and 2-nonanone exhibited a progressively lower inhibition. The aldehyde trans-2-hexenal was the best inhibitor of conidial germination with a minimum inhibitory concentration (MIC) of 24.6 μl/l, while carvacrol was the best inhibitor of mycelial growth with a MIC of 24.6 μl/l. Other in vitro experiments carried out with this mould by Venturini et al. (2002) determined that thymol and citral were the essential oil components that showed the greatest inhibitory effects.

2.4 Research in Antimicrobial Plant Products Applied to Foods

Biologicals, because of their natural origin, are biodegradable and they do not leave toxic residues or by-products to contaminate the environment. Spices and herbs have been used for thousands of centuries by many cultures to enhance the flavour and aroma of foods. However, an increasing number of researchers have demonstrated that commonly used herbs and spices, such as garlic, clove, cinnamon, thyme, oregano, allspice, bay leaves, mustard and rosemary, possess antimicrobial properties. The activity was mainly due to the presence of essential oils (Table 2.1). Essential oils and their constituents have been used extensively as flavour ingredients in a wide variety of foods, beverages and confectionery products. Many such products are classified as ‘Generally Recognized As Safe’.

Cereals

Cereals are among food commodities that are mostly prone to bear mycotoxins. Fusarium mycotoxins (including fumonisins, zearalenone and trichothecenes, among others) and ochratoxin A are mainly found in cereals. Maize, in particular, is a suitable substrate for aflatoxin accumulation. Therefore, plant extracts, essential oils, or their purified components have been assayed for their efficacy controlling fungi when applied directly to cereals. Together with the effect of these compounds on mycotoxigenic fungi development and on mycotoxin production, the phytotoxicity of the oils to the seeds has been evaluated, mainly calculated as the percentage of germination of the seeds, their viability or seedling growth. Maize has been the most investigated cereal, followed by wheat, sorghum, rice and others.

Maize

Lemongrass as powder or as essential oil has been one of the most frequently assayed for its efficacy against mycotoxigenic fungi on maize. Thus, Adegoke and Odesola (1996) found that the application of the essential oil of lemongrass to maize could avoid the development of inoculated A. flavus and P. chrysogenum. Authors suggested that the presence of phytochemical components such as tannins, alkaloids and glycosides, as well as the terpenes found in the essential oil, could play an important role in this effect.
Lemongrass essential oil has also been assayed to control the growth and fumonisin B₁ (FB₁) production by *F. proliferatum* (Velluti *et al.*, 2003; Souza *et al.*, 2007). For example, Marín *et al.* (2003) found that the essential oil (500 or 1000 μg/g) inhibited growth of this fungus on artificially inoculated irradiated grains at 0.995 *a*w and 20 or 30°C, but results were not satisfactory at 0.95 *a*w. Inhibition of FB₁ production was only effective when it was applied to grains.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Essential oil</th>
<th>Plant species</th>
<th>Major compounds</th>
<th>References</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Thyme</td>
<td><em>Thymus vulgaris</em></td>
<td>Thymol, carvacrol, linalool</td>
<td>Montes-Belmont and Carvajal, 1998; Soliman and Badeaa, 2002</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oregano</td>
<td><em>Origanum vulgare</em></td>
<td>Carvacrol, thymol</td>
<td>Marín <em>et al.</em>, 2003; Velluti <em>et al.</em>, 2003; López <em>et al.</em>, 2004;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Marín <em>et al.</em>, 2004; Souza <em>et al.</em>, 2007</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cinnamon</td>
<td><em>Cinnamomum zeylanicum</em></td>
<td>Eugenol, cinnamaldehyde, caryophyllene</td>
<td>Montes-Belmont and Carvajal, 1998; Soliman and Badeaa, 2002;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Marín <em>et al.</em>, 2003; Velluti <em>et al.</em>, 2003; Marín <em>et al.</em>, 2004</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mustard</td>
<td>*Brassica hirta, Brassica juncea,</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>Brassica nigra, Brassica rapa</em></td>
<td>Allyl isothiocyanate</td>
<td>Nielsen and Rios, 2000; Mari <em>et al.</em>, 2002; Dhingra <em>et al.</em>, 2009</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clove</td>
<td><em>Syzygium aromaticum</em></td>
<td>Eugenol, cariophyllene</td>
<td>Montes-Belmont and Carvajal, 1998; Nielsen and Rios, 2000;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Awuah and Ellis, 2002; Marín <em>et al.</em>, 2003; Velluti <em>et al.</em>, 2003;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Marín <em>et al.</em>, 2004; Matan <em>et al.</em>, 2006; Bluma and Etcheverry, 2008;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Reddy <em>et al.</em>, 2009</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lemongrass</td>
<td><em>Cymbopongon citratus</em></td>
<td>Geranial, neral</td>
<td>Adegoke and Odesola, 1996; Dubey <em>et al.</em>, 2000; Marín <em>et al.</em>, 2003;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Velluti <em>et al.</em>, 2003; Fandohan <em>et al.</em>, 2004; Velluti <em>et al.</em>, 2004b;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Marín <em>et al.</em>, 2004; Somda <em>et al.</em>, 2007; Souza <em>et al.</em>, 2007</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Basil</td>
<td><em>Ocimum basilicum</em></td>
<td>Thymol</td>
<td>Montes-Belmont and Carvajal, 1998; Soliman and Badeaa, 2002; Fandohan <em>et al.</em>, 2004; Atanda <em>et al.</em>, 2007</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
at 0.995 $a_w$ and 30°C. Results were similar when assayed on naturally contaminated maize inoculated with *F. verticillioides* and *F. proliferatum*, showing that antimycotoxigenic ability of lemongrass only took place at the higher water activities (Marín et al., 2003). From this study it was suggested that competing mycobiota play an important role in FB$_1$ accumulation and that the efficacy of essential oils in cereals may be much lower than that observed in the *in vitro* experiments using synthetic media. The main components found in the essential oil used in these studies were geranial and neral, and in much lower quantities limonene, geranyl acetate, geraniol and methyl heptenone.

Fandohan et al. (2004) also assayed lemongrass essential oil against *F. verticillioides*, finding a total inhibition of *F. verticillioides* growth at a concentration of 8 μl/g over 21 days. At 4.8 μl/g fumonisin production was not affected under open storage conditions, but a marked reduction was observed in closed conditions. Unfortunately, at this dose the oil adversely affected kernel germination.

When assayed on irradiated maize against a mycotoxigenic strain of *F. graminearum*, lemongrass essential oil (500 or 1000 μg/g) had an inhibitory effect on growth rate of grains at 0.995 $a_w$ and at 20 or 30°C, but at 0.95 $a_w$ only the higher dose was effective. Deoxynivalenol (DON) production was inhibited at 0.995 $a_w$/30°C at both doses, but no significant effect was observed for zearalenone (ZEA) control (Velluti et al., 2004b) (DON and ZEA both being toxins produced by *F. graminearum*, amongst other *Fusarium* species). Similarly, several *F. graminearum* strains assayed on non-sterilized maize with lemongrass essential oil showed a limited efficacy for DON control (total prevention at 0.995 $a_w$/30°C, but no effect at 20°C) and a limited effect for ZEA control (prevention at 0.95 $a_w$/30°C) (Marín et al., 2004).

Besides lemongrass, a huge number of essential oils have been tested for fungal control or mycotoxin prevention on maize. Thus it has been confirmed that essential oils from seeds of *Azadirachta indica* (neem tree; 500 and 1000 μg/g) and leaves of *Morinda lucida* (500 μg/g), two Nigerian medicinal plants, completely inhibited *A. flavus* aflatoxin synthesis in inoculated maize grains. Similarly, essential oils of cinnamon, peppermint (*Mentha piperita*), basil (*Ocimum basilicum*), oregano, *Teloxys ambrosioides* (the flavoring herb epazote), clove and thyme caused a total inhibition of *A. flavus* development on maize kernels (Montes-Belmont and Carvajal, 1998). Only around a 50% reduction was observed with the oils of *Eucalyptus globulus* (eucalyptus) and *Piper nigrum* (black pepper). Some of their constituents, when used at 2% concentration, such as thymol or $\beta$-methoxycinnamaldehyde significantly reduced *A. flavus* maize grain contamination. No effect was observed with the essential oils of *Allium cepa* (onion) and *Allium sativum* (garlic). However, other authors have found that *Allium* extracts at 2.5% have a significant effect on the reduction of the incidence of *F. proliferatum* in maize grains (Souza et al., 2007).

Essential oils of *Pimpinella anisum* (anise), *Pémus boldus* (boldus), mountain thyme, clove and poleo were assayed against *Aspergillus* section *Flavi* (*A. flavus* and *A. parasiticus*) in sterile maize grain under different water activities (0.982–0.90 $a_w$ range) (Bluma and Etcheverry, 2008). Five essential oils were shown to influence lag phase, growth rate and AFB$_1$ accumulation, in a
way that depends on their concentration, substrate water activity and time of incubation. Only the highest concentration assayed (3000 μg/g) showed the ability to maintain antifungal activity during a 35-day incubation period.

Ethanolic, methanolic and aqueous extracts of leaves, roots, scape and flowers of *Agave asperrima* (maguey cenizo) and *Agave striate* (espadin) have been tested for their capacity to inhibit growth and aflatoxin production by *A. flavus* and *A. parasiticus* on maize. Leaves and roots showed no inhibitory effect, and methanolic extracts from flowers were the most effective. It was found that 50% of the minimal inhibitory concentration of extracts (approximately 20 mg/ml) produced aflatoxin reductions higher than 99% in maize in storage conditions (Sánchez et al., 2005).

Natural maize phenolic acids such as *trans*-cinnamic acid (CA) and ferulic acid (FA), alone or in combination, have been tested to control *A. flavus* and *A. parasiticus* growth and aflatoxin production on maize (Nesci et al., 2007). A combination of 25 mM CA + 30 mM FA was very effective in the control of fungal growth and completely inhibited AFB1 production at all a_w assayed (0.99–0.93 a_w range). However, some treatments, as a CA–FA mixture at 10 + 10 mM, could lead to stimulation of an *A. parasiticus* population, and stimulation of AFB1 could be possible in some treatments.

Addition of whole or ground dry basil leaves at 50–100 mg/g to maize has shown to be effective in the reduction of aflatoxin contamination in maize stored for 32 days, with reductions in the range of 75–94% (Atanda et al., 2007). The authors suggested that aflatoxins could be controlled by co-storing whole dry sweet basil leaves with aflatoxin-susceptible foods in a very simple manner.

Aqueous extracts of leaves of some indigenous plants from Nigeria, such as *Ocimum gratissimum*, *Acalypha ciliata*, *Vernonia amygdalina*, *Mangifera indica* and *Azadirachta indica*, had a significant inhibitory effect on *F. verticilloides* development on maize, with *Acalypha ciliata* being the most effective (Owolade et al., 2000).

The effect of cinnamon, clove, oregano and palma rose oils (500–1000 μg/g) on growth and FB1 accumulation by *F. verticillioides* and *F. proliferatum* in maize grain, at 0.995 and 0.950 a_w and at 20 and 30°C, have also been evaluated, resulting in different efficacies depending on the treatment conditions (Marín et al., 2003; Velluti et al., 2003). These essential oils have also been used to study their effects on ZEA and DON production by *F. graminearum* in non-sterilized maize grain in the same initial conditions. In this case the efficacy of essentials oils was found to be poor, clove essential oil being that with a broader applicability (Marín et al., 2004).

*Ocimum vulgare* (30 μg/g) and *Aloysia triphylla* (lemon verbena; 45 μg/g) essential oils were evaluated on *F. verticillioides* FB1 production on maize grain. The oregano essential oil decreased the production level of FB1, probably because of its content of monoterpenes (such as thymol, menthol and cinnamaldehyde) that act as antioxidants and inhibitors of toxicogenesis and sclerotial development. On the other hand, *Aloysia triphylla* increased the production of FB1, probably because of the presence of myrcenone, alpha thujone and isomers of myrcenone in the oil, compounds that showed
oxidant properties that increase lipid peroxidation and, consequently, fumonisin production (López et al., 2004).

Essential oils of *O. basilicum* and *O. gratissimum* have been demonstrated to reduce the incidence of *F. verticillioides* in maize, and totally inhibited fungal growth at concentrations of 6.4 and 4.8 μl/g, respectively, although at the 4.8 μl/g dose they did not affect fumonisin production. On the other hand, oil of neem seeds has been shown to accelerate the growth of *F. verticillioides* on maize grains (Fandohan et al., 2004).

**Wheat**

To control *A. flavus* development on wheat, the essential oils of *C. citratus*, *O. gratissimum*, *Zingiber cassumunar* and *Caesulia axillaris* have been assayed. The oils of *Caesulia citratus* and *Caesulia axillaris* showed fungistatic activity, indicating their in vivo applicability as herbal fumigants (Dubey et al., 2000).

In the same way, vapours of the essential oil of *Caesulia axillaris* (1300 μg/g, v/v) have been shown to control *A. flavus*, *A. niger*, *A. fumigatus*, *A. sulphureus*, *Rhizopus* spp., *Mucor* spp., *Curvularia* spp., *Penicillium oxalicum* and *Absidia* spp. during 12 months of storage. The essential oil of *Mentha arenensis* (600 μg/g, v/v) showed similar results. These oils were also effective in controlling the insect pests *Sitophilus oryzae* (Varma and Dubey, 2001). Similarly, the practical applicability of essential oil from leaves of wormseed (*Chenopodium ambrosioides*) as a fumigant for protecting stored wheat has been assayed. A concentration of 100 μg/ml applied as a fumigant was able to control *A. flavus*, *A. niger*, *A. parasiticus*, *A. terreus*, *A. candidus* and *P. citrinum* during 12 months of storage (Kumar et al., 2007).

The essential oils of thyme and cinnamon (≤500 μg/g), *Calendula officinalis* (marigold) (≤2000 μg/g), *Mentha viridis* (spearmint), basil and *Achillea fragrantissima* (quyssum) (≤3000 μg/g) completely inhibited *A. flavus*, *A. parasiticus*, *A. ochraceus* and *F. moniliforme* on wheat grains. Caraway oil (*Carum carvi*) was inhibitory at 2000 μg/g against *A. flavus* and *A. parasiticus* and at 3000 μg/g against *A. ochraceus* and *F. moniliforme*. Anise oil completely inhibited the four fungi at ≤500 μg/g. Worse results were obtained with essential oils of chamomile (*Matricaria chamomilla*) and hazanbul (*Achillea millefolium*) (Soliman and Badeaa, 2002).

Resveratrol, an extract of grape skin, has been demonstrated to be effective in controlling the ochratoxigenic fungi *P. verrucosum* and *A. westerdijkiae* on naturally contaminated wheat (Aldred et al., 2008). Total populations of fungi were significantly reduced by the presence of this compound, often by about 1–3 log colony forming units (CFU), but CFUs of the mycotoxigenic inoculated fungi were reduced only about 1–2 logs. In experiments developed at different water activities (0.995–0.80 a_w range) and temperatures (15–25 °C) during a 28-day period of storage, grain treated with resveratrol (200 μg/g) had significantly less ochratoxin A (OTA) than the untreated controls. OTA contamination was reduced by >60% in most of the treatment conditions.

Extracts of *Argyreia speciosa* and *Oenothera biennis* have also been assayed. Hexadecanyl p-hydroxycinnamate and scopoletin isolated from
roots of *A. speciosa* have demonstrated effective antifungal activity against the mycotoxigenic species *A. alternata* on wheat grains (more than 80% inhibition at 500 μg/g, and 100% at 1000 μg/g). Gallic acid from *O. biennis* showed activity against *F. semitectum* at 1000 μg/g (96.9% inhibition) (Shukla et al., 1999).

**Sorghum**

Essential oils of sweet basil, cassia (*Cinnamomum cassia*), coriander (*Coriandrum sativum*) and bay leaf (*Laurus nobilis*) were tested for their efficacy to control an aflatoxigenic strain of *A. parasiticus* on non-sterilized sorghum grains stored at 28°C for 7 days (Atanda et al., 2007). Sweet basil seemed to be the best option, as 5% dosage gave an optimal sorghum protective effect. The use of this oil is adequate in terms of the possibility of practical application, and is within the acceptable sensory levels of 1–5% for food consumption. Good results on fungal growth control were also obtained with the essential oils of cassia, and with the combination of cassia + sweet basil essential oils. It was also suggested that aflatoxin production could be controlled in sorghum grains by co-storing whole dry sweet basil leaves with the grains; 100 mg/g of basil leaves have been shown to reduce the total aflatoxin contamination by 90.6%.

The effect of essential oils of lemongrass, eucalyptus and crude oil of neem has been tested against *F. moniliforme*, as well as against *Colletotrichum graminicola* and *Phoma sorgina*, on sorghum grains (Somda et al., 2007). Of the three plant extracts evaluated, lemongrass essential oil was the most potent. Concentrations of 6 and 8% caused the greatest reduction of seed infection at levels comparable to synthetic fungicides such as Dithane M-45. More than 50% of *F. moniliforme* growth was reduced by lemongrass essential oil.

An emulsifiable concentrate (EC) of zimmu has been tested under field conditions to check its efficacy controlling *A. flavus*, *F. moniliforme* and *A. alternata* on sorghum grains (Karthikeyan et al., 2007). A leaf extract of zimmu, formulated to 50 EC, containing 50% (v/v) zimmu extract, using an organic solvent (cyclohexanone), an emulsifier (Tween-80) and a stabilizer (epichlorohydrin), was prepared. Foliar application of zimmu formulation 50 EC at 3 ml/l (v/v) concentration 60, 75 and 90 days after sowing significantly reduced the incidence of grain mould (about 70% reduction) and increased the grain weight and grain hardness. The plant extract compared favourably with foliar applications of the fungicide mancozeb (2.5 g/l). A significant reduction in the AFB₁ content in sorghum was observed when plants were sprayed with a 50 EC formulation at 0.3% concentration.

**Rice**

Plant extracts of different parts of *Allium cepa*, *Allium sativum*, *Azadirachta indica*, *Eucalyptus tereticolis*, *Ocimum sanctum*, *Ammona squamosa*, *Pongamia glaberrima*, *Curcuma longa* and *Syzygium aromaticum* have been assayed for their activities against aflatoxigenic *A. flavus* growth and AFB₁ production on rice (Reddy et al., 2009). Among the plant extracts tested, *Syzygium aromaticum* (5 g/kg) showed complete inhibition of *A. flavus* growth and AFB₁ production.
Curcuma longa, Azadirachta sativum and O. sanctum also effectively inhibited the A. flavus growth (65–78%) and AFB₁ production (72.2–85.7%) at 5 g/kg.

Fruits

Penicillium expansum (blue mould) is the causative agent of the mycotoxin patulin in apples and pears. Some researchers in this field have focused on the use of certain compounds of the essential oils of plants (Table 2.1), instead of applying the essential oil directly. For example, marked fungicidal action was obtained with carvacrol against Mucor piriformis at 125 μg/ml, while p-anisaldehyde stopped mycelial growth of P. expansum at 1000 μg/ml (Caccioni and Guizzardi, 1994). Allyl-isothiocyanate (AITC) can be employed successfully in modified atmosphere packaging or as a gaseous treatment before storage. Blue mould was controlled by exposing inoculated Conference and Kaiser pears for 24 h to an AITC-enriched atmosphere. At 5 mg/l, AITC showed a high fungicidal activity on pears inoculated with P. expansum at 10⁴ conidia/ml, without causing phytotoxic effects. Disease incidence appeared to be correlated with inoculum concentration and AITC treatment concentration. Increasing the P. expansum inoculum concentration at a constant AITC concentration resulted in increasing disease incidence. In fruits inoculated with the higher P. expansum concentration (10⁶ conidia/ml) and treated with 5 mg/l AITC, the infected wounds were reduced by only 20% with respect to the control. At such a high inoculum concentration the efficacy of the most active molecules is usually significantly reduced. The good results obtained with AITC treatments delayed up to 24–48 h after inoculation suggest that this compound has potential for postharvest disease control. The efficacy of AITC in controlling P. expansum in pears could allow it to be used to control blue mould infection during packing-house fruit handling. The ability of AITC to control thiabendazole-resistant strains of P. expansum is particularly useful in this context because the proportion of thiabendazole-resistant strains is usually high. The results of analysis on the skin and pulp of pears treated with AITC confirmed the extremely low concentration of AITC residue in fruit, which is unlikely to have any implications for human health. The use of AITC, produced from purified sinigrin or from Brassica juncea defatted meal, against P. expansum appears very promising as an economically viable alternative with a moderately low impact on the environment (Mari et al., 2002). The potential use of volatile fungicides to control postharvest diseases requires a detailed examination of their biological activity and dispersion in fruit tissues, and the development of a formulation that inhibits growth of pathogens without producing phytotoxic effects on fruits.

Neri et al. (2006) showed that volatile eugenol at concentrations of 74 and 984 μl/l was necessary to inhibit mycelial growth and conidial germination, respectively, in P. expansum. Apples harvested at commercial maturity were subjected to water treatment, lecithin at 50 mg/ml, eugenol-ethoxylate (2 mg/ml) and pure eugenol (2 mg/ml) combined with
50 mg/ml lecithin. All treatments were tested at 18 and 50°C. Fruits were dipped in the treatment solutions. After 2 min of treatment, fruits were stored at 2°C at normal atmosphere. Significant disease incidence reductions were observed in fruits treated with eugenol mixed with lecithin at 50°C; this combination reduced the incidence of *P. expansum* by 60–90%. The lecithin–eugenol formulation did not induce immediate or delayed phytotoxicity at room temperature. Investigation of its vapour phase properties and its applicability in the storage room will surely facilitate the application of eugenol as a control agent for long periods and may avoid the problems of phytotoxicity induced by some liquid formulations (Amiri *et al.*, 2008).

Essential oils of *Caesulia axillaris* and *Mentha arvensis* were applied at 1500 and 1000 μl/l to the storage atmosphere of *P. italicum* inoculated oranges. The *Caesulia*-oil-treated oranges showed an increased storage life of 3 days, and the *Mentha* oil-treated oranges showed an increase of 7 days. No visual symptoms of possible injury caused by the oils were observed on the peel of the fruits (Varma and Dubey, 2001).

*Aspergillus* section *Nigri* (formerly *A. niger*) is an ubiquitous fungal contaminant of foodstuffs, such as fruits, vegetables, nuts and spices. Some species in this section have been recently shown to produce ochratoxin A. Pepperfruit (*Dennetia tripetala*) extracts have been tested in tomato puree against common spoilage fungi, including *A. niger*. Extracts, as a single hurdle, failed to inhibit fungal growth when compared to counts before treatment. Moreover, the use of extracts alone would entail the use of concentrations that may affect the sensorial properties of the tomato; however, combining with heat treatment (80°C for 1 min) or NaCl addition (10 mg/g) resulted in effective treatments (Ejechi *et al.*, 1999). Cinnamon essential oil has been tested against a range of fungi isolated from tomato, including *A. niger*. Although *in vitro* experiments showed promising results in terms of colony development and fungal sporulation inhibition, when cinnamon oil was tested as a volatile in the atmosphere of stored tomatoes and peppers no major effects were observed (Tzortzakis, 2009). Tomatoes and strawberries exposed to an enriched oil vapour showed improved fruit-quality-related attributes, confirming the benefits observed after exposure to cinnamon oil vapour at different concentrations. These findings may have considerable commercial significance.

Extracts of *Zingiber officinale* and *Xylopia aetiopica* were added (1–3%) to *A. niger*, *A. flavus* or *Rhizopus stolonifer* inoculated orange and apple juices. Although growth was reduced, the extracts either alone or in combination did not impose enough stress to stop the growth of the fungi (Akpomeyade and Ejechi, 1999).

The advantage of essential oils is their bioactivity in the vapour phase and the limitation of aqueous sanitation for several commodities (e.g. strawberries and grapes) make the essential oils useful as possible fumigants for stored commodity protection. One limitation of the essential oils is the strong flavour they impart, thus restricting their applicability only to products with a compatible flavour.
Nuts

Salicylic acid, thymol, vanillyl acetate, vanillin and cinnamic acid completely inhibited the germination of fungi contaminating walnut kernels. All five compounds showed somewhat similar activity in inhibiting the growth of the potentially mycotoxigenic *A. niger*, *A. flavus* and *P. expansum* at the concentrations tested (up to 25 mM), with thymol showing the highest activity (i.e. complete inhibition of growth at 5 mM) (Kim et al., 2006).

Powders from the leaves of *O. gratissimum* and cloves of *Syzgium aromaticum* were used as protectants at 3% in combination with various packaging methods to store 3.5 kg groundnut kernel samples (9.3% moisture) artificially inoculated with *A. parasiticus*. Selected treatments were repeated with naturally infected kernels. A high level of protection was obtained with *Syzgium* powder at 3% concentration using 12% moisture kernels (Awuah and Ellis, 2002).

Calori-Domingues and Fonseca (1995) found that treatment of unshelled peanuts with grapefruit seed extract was not efficient in controlling aflatoxin production during storage. Peanuts treated with grapefruit seed extract at 5,000 and 10,000 mg/kg had mean aflatoxin contamination in the range 2,757–56,334 μg/kg and 688–5,092 μg/kg, respectively, while the control had 3,362–108,333 μg/kg. Of all of the chemicals tested only propionic acid was effective in controlling aflatoxin production. Treatments were considered efficient when the aflatoxin content (B1 + G1) remained less than 30 μg/kg.

Shelled groundnut samples with moisture contents between 7.5 and 10.5% and inoculated with conidia of *A. glaucus* and *A. parasiticus* were stored for 15–90 days at 25°C, and fumigated with synthetic food grade essential oil of mustard (*Brassica rapa*) (100 μl/l space). Deterioration of the samples was assessed by estimating the percentage of kernels colonized by fungi, the number of CFUs/kernel, and the accumulation of ergosterol and free fatty acids. The values of these variables increased with the moisture content and storage period, independent of the fumigation treatment; however, the rate of increase was significantly lower in fumigated samples (Dhingra et al., 2009).

2.5 Use of Plant Products in Active Packaging

Active packaging (AP) is an innovative food packaging concept that combines advances in food technology, food safety, and packaging and material sciences in an effort to better meet consumer demands for fresh-like, safe products. One specific application is to incorporate essential oil(s) into the packaging to prevent the growth of microorganisms.

The use of preservative food-packaging films offers several advantages compared to the direct addition of preservatives to food products, since the preservative agents are applied to the packaging material in such a way that only low levels of the preservatives come into contact with the food. Either of two approaches can be used to give packaging materials antimicrobial activities. In preservative-releasing or migrating approaches, preservatives
are introduced into their bulk mass, or applied to their surfaces, which subsequently migrate into the food or the headspace surrounding the food. In non-migrating approaches, compounds are applied to the packaging surfaces that inhibit target microorganisms when they come into contact with them.

The most widely used materials in food and drink packaging are various kinds of papers and boards, which are usually wax-coated to improve their water-resistance and increase the shelf-life of the packaged products. Adding an active compound to the wax formulation before coating creates an AP material. The shelf-life of the packaging manufactured using cinnamaldehyde-fortified-cinnamon essential oil was evaluated against *A. flavus*, and it was found to retain its total activity over the whole 71-day test period. Finally, the efficacy of the coatings was tested in trials with two varieties of strawberries. Complete protection was obtained during 7 days storage at 4°C, during which no visible fungal contamination developed and there were no apparent visible or organoleptic changes in the strawberries (Rodríguez et al., 2007).

López et al. (2007) demonstrated the potential utility of polypropylene and polyethylene/ethylene vinyl alcohol copolymer films with incorporated oregano or cinnamaldehyde-fortified-cinnamon essential oils at concentrations of 4% (w/w) as antifungal packaging materials, also against *A. flavus*. They maintain their antimicrobial properties for more than 2 months, and their use in contact with foodstuffs has been demonstrated not to be harmful to consumers’ health. The main drawback could be the organoleptical alteration of the packaged food due to the chemicals released by the active package.

AP may be an alternative to modified atmosphere packaging (MAP) or could complement it. For example, the volatile gas phase of combinations of cinnamon oil and clove oil showed good potential to inhibit growth of spoilage fungi normally found in intermediate moisture foods when combined with a modified atmosphere comprising a high concentration of CO₂ (40%) and low concentration of O₂ (<0.05%). To prevent the growth of *A. flavus*, 4000 μl of mixed oils was required to be added to the active MAP system and higher ratios of cinnamon to clove oil were more effective (Matan et al., 2006). *A. flavus* was found to be the most resistant microorganism; this is in accordance with other authors who found *A. flavus* to be the least inhibited by essential oils in different antimicrobial tests.

The effect of MAP active packaging using volatile essential oils and oleoresins from spices and herbs were tested against a range of fungi commonly found on bread (*P. commune*, *P. roqueforti*, *A. flavus* and *Endomyces fibuliger*). Mustard essential oil showed the strongest effect. Cinnamon, garlic and clove also had high activity, while oregano oleoresin only inhibited growth weakly. Vanilla (*Vanilla planifolia*) showed no inhibitory effect towards the tested microorganisms at the applied concentrations. *A. flavus* was more resistant than the other microorganisms. Mustard essential oil was investigated in greater detail. MIC for the active component, AITC, was determined for the same species and an additional three moulds and one yeast. The minimum inhibitory concentration (MIC) values ranged from 1.8 to 3.5 μg/ml gas phase. Results showed that whether AITC was fungistatic or fungicidal depended on its concentration, and the concentration of spores. When the
gas phase contained at least 3.5 μg/ml, AITC was fungicidal to all tested fungi. Results of sensory evaluation showed that hot-dog bread was more sensitive to AITC than rye bread. The minimal recognizable concentration of AITC was 2.4 μg/ml gas phase for rye bread and between 1.8 and 3.5 μg/ml gas phase for hot-dog bread. These findings showed that the required shelf-life of rye bread could be achieved by AP with AITC. AP of hot-dog bread, may nevertheless require the additional effect of other preserving factors to avoid off-flavour formation (Nielsen and Rios, 2000).

Comparisons between the effectiveness of the volatile gas phases and the liquid phases of essential oils have shown that oil in the liquid phase is more effective in preventing spoilage than when added via the gas phase. Higher volumes are required if the essential oils contact only the contaminating microorganisms in the gas phase. However, advantages of using a volatile gas phase of essential oil for food products are that it may have a lesser influence of the final taste and aroma of the product and its release may be regulated more easily.

### 2.6 Conclusions

During the past decade many publications have dealt with the inhibition of mycotoxigenic species by natural plant products. Most of them showed a high efficacy of such products as antifungals. Their final application to food products is, however, still in its infancy. Several reasons are involved:

- Different origin, varieties and extraction methods of plant products result in essential oils and oleoresins that are widely varied in their composition. This heterogeneity prevents a direct extrapolation of results, unless experiments are carried out using pure components of these essential oils and oleoresins.
- Plant products should be applied in such a way and at concentrations that do not affect grain viability or the sensorial quality of food products. Most in vitro studies used high concentrations of plant extracts and used direct contact as the screening technique, so the application of these extracts to foods was not always successful.
- Finally, safety issues should be fully addressed prior to the widespread application of such plant products.

### References


Sánchez, E., Heredia, N. and García, S. (2005) Inhibition of growth and mycotoxin...


*F. proliferatum* and *F. graminearum* on maize-based agar media. *Food Microbiology* 21, 649–656.


3 Natural Products from Plants: Commercial Prospects in Terms of Antimicrobial, Herbicidal and Bio-stimulatory Activities in an Integrated Pest Management System

J.C. PRETORIUS AND E. VAN DER WATT

Department of Soil, Crop and Climate Sciences, University of the Free State, Bloemfontein, South Africa

Abstract
The use of natural products developed from wild plants is gaining interest and momentum throughout the world in both developed and developing countries. In developing countries the use of natural plant extracts is simply the result of the inability of subsistence farmers to afford commercial synthetic pesticides. However, in developed countries this is largely due to consumer resistance towards synthetic chemicals, including antimicrobial, herbicidal and bio-stimulatory agents, believed to be potentially hazardous to the environment and human health. In this chapter an overview of the latter three pesticide groups is supplied in terms of its current ‘natural product’ status from an integrated pest management perspective as it is applied in the agricultural industry. First, some background is provided in order to cover the history of natural product development in these three pesticide categories. Second, a short synopsis of screening programmes that identified wild plants containing natural compounds which have the potential to be considered in natural product developing programmes is supplied. Lastly, the outcome of these development programmes that realized commercialized natural products is covered.

3.1 Introduction
Plant diseases cause large yield losses throughout the world and all important food crops are attacked with disastrous consequences for food security. In many cases, plant diseases may be successfully controlled with synthetic fungicides, but this is costly to African peasantry and often has disadvantages and side effects on the ecosystem (De Neergaard, 2001). It is, however,
an established fact that the use of synthetic chemical pesticides provides many benefits to crop producers. These benefits include higher crop yields, improved crop quality and increased food production for an ever increasing world population. Despite this, synthetic pesticides may pose some hazards to the environment, especially when improperly used by farmers in developing countries who lack the technical skill of handling them, and who fail to adapt to this technology easily. This may result in undesirable residues left in food, water and the environment, toxicity to humans and animals, contamination of soils and groundwater and may lead to the development of crop pest populations that are resistant to treatment with agrochemicals.

Moreover, in Africa and the Near East obsolete pesticides have become a source of great environmental concern. Some stocks are more than 30 years old and are kept in poor conditions because of inadequate storage facilities and lack of staff trained in storage management. The Food Agricultural Organization (FAO) estimated that developing countries are holding stocks of more than 100,000 tonnes of obsolete pesticides, of which 20,000 tonnes are in Africa. Many of these chemicals are so toxic that a few grams could poison thousands of people or contaminate a large area. Most of these pesticides were left over from pesticide donations provided by foreign aid programmes. In the absence of environmentally sound disposal facilities, stocks are constantly increasing (Alemayehu, 1996). Obsolete pesticide stocks are, therefore, potential time bombs. Leakage, seepage and various accidents related to pesticides are quite common and widespread. Storage conditions rarely meet internationally accepted standards. Many pesticide containers deteriorate and leak their contents into the soil, contaminating groundwater and the environment. Most stores are in the centres of urban areas or close to public dwellings. According to the World Health Organization (WHO) there are 25 million cases of acute occupational pesticide poisoning in developing countries each year (Alemayehu, 1996).

As a result of the problems outlined above, farmers in developing countries and researchers alike are seeking less hazardous and cheaper alternatives to conventional synthetic pesticides. One such alternative is the use of natural products from plants to control plant diseases in crops as part of an organic approach to Integrated Pest Management (IPM) programmes. Justification for pursuing this alternative can be found in the following statement published a decade ago by the Environmental Protection Agency (EPA) regarding the advantages of natural products from plants in the control of plant diseases:

Natural products from plants have a narrow target range and highly-specific mode of action; show limited field persistence; have a shorter shelf life and present no residual threats. They are often used as part of Integrated Pest Management (IPM) programmes; are generally safer to humans and the environment than conventional synthetic chemical pesticides and can easily be adopted by farmers in developing countries who traditionally use plant extracts for the treatment of human diseases. (Deer, 1999)

A further reason for exploring the use of plant extracts or natural products as biological pesticides more extensively can be found in the plant
Plants have evolved highly specific chemical compounds that provide defence mechanisms against attack by disease-causing organisms, including fungal attack, microbial invasion and viral infection (Cowan, 1999). These bioactive substances occur in plants as secondary metabolites, and have provided a rich source of biologically active compounds that may be used as novel crop-protecting agents (Cox, 1990). In nature some wild plants have the potential to survive both harsh biotic and abiotic environmental conditions. This has initiated the postulate that such plants might be utilized as sources for the development of natural products to be applied in agriculture by man as natural herbicides, bactericides, fungicides or products with bio-stimulatory properties in crude or semi-purified form.

It is estimated that there are more than 250,000 higher plant species on earth (Cowan, 1999) offering a vast, virtually untapped, reservoir of bioactive chemical compounds with many potential uses, including their application as pharmaceuticals and agrochemicals. It is generally assumed that natural compounds from plants pose less risk to animals and humans and are more environmentally friendly than their synthetic counterparts (Johnson, 2001). As in pharmacology, biochemicals isolated from higher plants may contribute to the development of natural products for the agricultural industry in three different ways (Cox, 1990): (i) by acting as natural pesticides in an unmodified state (crude extracts); (ii) by providing the chemical ‘building blocks’ necessary to synthesize more complex compounds; and (iii) by introducing new modes of pesticidal action that may allow the complete synthesis of novel analogues in order to counter the problem of resistance to currently used synthetic products by bacterial and fungal pathogens.

However, it is quite common that a natural compound isolated from a plant may be of great biological interest but may not be sufficiently robust for use (Steglich et al., 1990). Subsequently, a need for the modification of natural products into synthetic analogues that will give the desired effect may still exist. One can, for example, isolate a natural compound with promising antimicrobial activity and, by introducing a stable chemical structure with higher activity synthetically, develop a commercial product (Steglich et al., 1990). The alternative that is now more vigorously being pursued in organic farming systems is the application of the plant material itself in a natural form. However, to date and despite statements such as these made almost two decades ago, the use of natural plant extracts as pesticides to control pathogens in crops, for example, are not widespread while synthetic chemical pesticides still remain the major tool in pest management systems. Nevertheless, some natural products have been commercialized recently and the use of a combination of synthetic chemicals and natural products in IPM programmes will probably become more popular in future.

Another related area of organic farming systems is the potential to apply natural plant extracts as either plant growth regulators or natural herbicides. A plant growth regulator is an organic compound, either natural or synthetic, that modifies or controls one or more specific physiological processes within
a plant (Salisbury and Ross, 1992). If the compound is produced within the plant it is called a plant hormone e.g. auxins, gibberellins, cytokines, abscissic acid and ethylene. Two decades ago, Roberts and Hooley (1988) stated that the potential exists to apply a plant extract as a foliar spray in order to stimulate growth in crop plants and hence increase yields. According to the authors, a principal objective of the agricultural and horticultural industries is to manipulate plant growth and development in such a way that the quantity or quality of a crop is increased. After the late-1980s an elevated interest developed in terms of identifying natural plant compounds that possess the potential to manipulate plant growth and development over a short period, e.g. a growing season.

From a crop production perspective, the term ‘integrated pest management’, in the broad sense of the word, means to apply more than one method or product in order to control ‘pests’ that farmers have to deal with on a regular basis. The term ‘pests’, in the broad sense of the word, includes, among other things, insect and weed pests as well as viral, bacterial and fungal diseases. However, the term ‘integrated pest management’ has a different meaning when applied in either conventional cropping systems or organic agriculture. Pest control in conventional cropping systems is mostly driven by the large-scale use of many different synthetic chemicals and it cannot be denied that great success has been achieved in this way. Due to consumer resistance and pressure generated by the ‘green revolution’ towards the use of synthetic chemicals, a shift towards organic agriculture was inevitable. Restrictions in terms of synthetic chemical application in organic agriculture have, in turn, forced a shift towards the use of natural or organic products.

In conventional cropping systems integrated pest management is rather straightforward and entails the use of any registered product on the market that a farmer might choose, and this applies for any of the ‘pests’ mentioned earlier. The methods of application of these products are in many cases similar, e.g. foliar application, but might include integrated seed, soil and foliar treatments. IPM in organic agriculture is much more complex and controlled and may include sowing multiple crops, extended rotation cycles, mulching, specific soil cultivation methods (Dayan et al., 2009) and the use of organically certified natural products.

Be that as it may, the reduction in the number of synthetic products as a result of more stringent pesticide registration procedures (Dayan et al., 2009), such as the Food Quality Protection Act of 1996 in the United States, has opened the door for the vigorous pursuit of natural products from plants over the past two decades. In the meantime, many natural compounds from wild plants have been isolated, purified, identified and patented but, only a few products are commercially available.

In this chapter attention will be given to the integrated pest management concept, the rationale for considering natural compounds from plants and their potential to be applied as agrochemicals in an IPM system in the agricultural industry as well as selected areas where some progress have been made over the past three decades. In terms of the latter these will include
natural compounds with application potential as antimicrobial, herbicidal and bio-stimulatory agents.

3.2 Rationale for Considering Natural Compounds from Wild Plants to be Developed as Commercial Products

Wild plants are a valuable source for the development of new natural products with the potential to be used for disease management in organic crop production systems (Duke et al., 1995). Widespread public concern for long-term health and environmental effects of synthetic pesticides, especially in developed countries, has prompted a renewed effort to search for natural compounds of both plant and microbial origin that can be applied as alternatives to existing synthetic pesticides (Ushiki et al., 1996). However, only a small proportion has been investigated for possible use in plant disease control in agriculture.

World agriculture still encounters huge crop losses annually due to plant diseases and the situation is more serious for most subsistence farmers in developing countries that depend on non-conventional disease management practices, often with doubtful results. In contrast, crop producers in developed countries rely heavily on synthetic fungicides and bactericides to control plant diseases. Despite their efficacy against plant diseases, synthetic chemicals are considered to cause environmental pollution and are potentially harmful to human health. According to the National Academy of Sciences (Wilson, 1997), the carcinogenic risk of fungicide residues in food is more than insecticides and herbicides put together.

The long-term effect of pesticides in contaminating the environment is of particular concern, together with the fact that frequent application of fungicides has resulted in fungal mutation and, subsequently, new resistant strains (Khun, 1989). Moreover, consumer resistance towards the use of synthetic chemicals has escalated, especially in developed countries, supplying a rationale for the application of natural product alternatives in the agricultural industry (Duke et al., 1995). Currently, in many developed countries, the tendency to shift to organic farming systems has evolved under consumer pressure in an attempt to reduce the risk of pesticide application. As a result, research on the possible utilization of biological resources and its application potential in agriculture has become very relevant. A promising approach in this regard is the use of natural plant products as an alternative to synthetic chemicals due to their apparently less negative impact on the environment (Ganesan and Krishnaraju, 1995).

Conceptually and practically the use of natural plant products in agriculture is not new, but dates back to the time of Democratus (470 BC), where sprinkling of amurca, an olive residue, was recommended to control late blight disease (David, 1992). In short, plant extracts have been recognized to solve agricultural problems ever since man took to farming (Pillmoor, 1993). For example, the control of insect pests through the use of natural plant products, such as Pyrethrum extracted from the Pyrethrum plant,
Chrysanthemum cinerariefolium, and neem seed from Azadirachta indica (Richard, 2000), has a long history in plant protection.

Despite the fact that reports on the practical application of natural plant extracts towards the control of plant pathogens in modern agriculture are found less frequently in the literature (Menzies and Bélanger, 1996), a considerable number of reports on natural chemicals that are biologically active against various plant diseases is currently available. These natural compounds are usually secondary metabolites and are synthesized in plants as a result of biotic and abiotic interactions (Waterman and Mole, 1989; Helmut et al., 1994). By means of bioassay guided screening, a number of these natural plant compounds, with antimicrobial activity, have been isolated and progress has also been made towards the identification and structural elucidation of these bioactive compounds (Grayer and Harborne, 1994). Although extractable secondary metabolites have long been considered as an important source of pharmaceuticals, the evaluation of their application potential in crop production systems has been largely neglected. A wide range of activities with both positive and negative effects, including the control of microorganism, plant growth regulation (Adam and Marquardt, 1986), the induction of plant resistance to various diseases (Daayf et al., 1995; Schmitt et al., 1996) and promotion of beneficial microorganisms in the soil rhizosphere (Williams, 1992) have been reported. Despite these efforts, the isolation of plant secondary metabolites has led to very few commercial successes in the agricultural industry and more specifically in crop management practices.

An accelerated search for alternative options to synthetic fungicides, based on natural products from plants, therefore, seems to be an important consideration in light of the current restrictions in pesticide use in both developed and developing countries. This especially applies to the search for environmentally friendly bioactive components with broad-spectrum antimicrobial activity (Benner, 1993). This probably needs serious consideration in developing countries where yield losses are high as a result of low-input production systems due to the unaffordability of synthetic fungicides to local farmers.

According to the Natural Antifungal Crop Protectants Research Agency (Hall, 2002) spoilage and plant pathogenic fungi are responsible for some 20% loss of the potential global plant production for food and non-food use. The very large amount of chemical crop protectants used to control these losses can be detrimental to both the environment and human health. Therefore research has been initiated to develop and implement non-synthetic crop protectants using natural antifungal agents (green chemicals) or antifungal metabolites from plants. These natural crop protectants will be designed for use on food or non-food crops vulnerable to fungal deterioration (Hall, 2002). From an agronomic perspective, a secondary aim of research on natural plant products is to cultivate bioactive plants, as alternative agricultural crops, to serve as sources for the bioactive compounds.

Despite the inherent potential of compounds from plants to be applied as natural products in agriculture, cognizance has to be taken of problems
associated with its use in plant disease control systems that have been encountered in the past, and that have probably contributed to it not being regarded as a viable strategy in the agrochemical industry. First, claims have been made that the efficacy of plant extract compounds are not comparable to that of synthetic fungicides and lack consistency (Benner, 1993). Second, natural products have, in some cases, been reported to be phytotoxic to crop plants (Benner, 1993). Third, some natural compounds are unstable and can be broken down by UV-light or oxidation before the desired biological effects have been produced (Seddon and Schmidt, 1999). However, these arguments cannot be generally accepted as less than 10% of natural plants have been screened for their application potential and in most cases only towards one target pathogen (Hamburger and Hostettman, 1991). In light of the vast number of plant species known in the world today, the subsequent chemical diversity should allow for the identification of desired biologically active compounds with sufficient stability.

In contrast to the arguments against the use of natural plant compounds, other arguments towards its potential beneficial attributes should be considered. These include the possible reduction in the risk of fungicidal resistance, and the fact that they are potentially less toxic to humans and animals (Ganesan and Krishnaraju, 1995). Most importantly, it is envisaged that crude plant extracts might be more affordable to subsistence farmers as they are readily available and are probably cheaper to produce. Hence, attempts to develop plant-derived natural products and the consideration of its application potential in disease management systems in both developed and developing countries does not seem to be out of line.

In developing countries in particular, the consideration of applying natural plant products in their crude form should be high on the agenda. The approach has long been used in most traditional farming systems in many developing countries. Most African farmers possess substantial indigenous knowledge of insect and pathogen control. Although this knowledge is probably not scientifically based, some examples of natural insecticides applied in Ethiopian subsistence farming systems are worth mentioning. Extracts of chinaberry (Melia azedarach), pepper tree (Schiunus molle) and endod (Phytolacca dodecantra) are used to control insects in both organized agriculture and home gardens (Gebre-Amlak and Azerefegne, 1998). Crude extracts of all three plant species were reported by the authors to be effective against Busseola fusca (maize stalk borer) larvae. With regard to disease management, a crude extract of Dolichos kilimandscharicus L. (Bosha) has been used as a slurry to treat sorghum seed in the control of covered (Sporisorium sorghi; Ehrenberg) and loose (Sphacelotheca cruenta, Kuhn) kernel smuts in Ethiopia (Tegegne and Pretorius, 2007). Experimentally, treatment of sorghum seed with D. kilimandscharicus, in a powder form, provided excellent control of both pathogens and was as effective as the standard chemical, Thiram®. However, this has been practised on a small and isolated scale. It seems necessary to obtain a more scientific base through additional research in order to consider an expansion of these practices as well as to consider the economic potential of this approach.
3.3 Secondary Metabolites: Characteristics, Functions and Possible Applications in Agriculture

Except for primary metabolites such as carbohydrates, proteins, lipids and nucleic acids, plants also contain a large variety of secondary metabolites. Secondary metabolites are classified by different authors in different ways but for the purpose of this précis, a simple classification into three groups is supplied: (i) isoprenoid; (ii) aromatic; and (iii) alkaloid components (Stumpf and Conn, 1981; Dey and Harborne, 1989; Salisbury and Ross, 1992).

**Isoprenoid components**

This group of compounds is relatively diverse and three terms have been allocated to it, namely isoprenoids, terpenoids and terpenes. The term ‘isoprenoid’ is relatively descriptive in the sense that the common factor that relates these compounds is the 5C units, called isoprene units (Fig. 3.1). However, the term ‘terpene’ is probably used more often.

Under this group, known hormones such as gibberillic acid (GA), abscisic acid (ABA) and brassinosteroids as well as other components such as sterols, carotenoids, rubber and the phytol ‘tail’ of chlorophyll are classified. All of these consist of repeating isoprene units. Isoprene units join in different ways to form components with chain, ring or combined chain–ring structures (Fig. 3.2).

Terpenes are found abundantly in nature and are, as far as chemical structure is concerned, a diverse group of secondary metabolites. On the basis of the number of isoprene units, terpenes are divided into seven classes.

Hemiterpenes consist of one isoprene unit (C₅); they are not found in this form (freely) in nature, but can be found in the form of alcohols or acids (examples shown in Fig. 3.3).

---

**Fig. 3.1.** An isoprene unit.

**Fig. 3.2.** Different ways in which isoprene units can combine.
Monoterpenes, consisting of two isoprene units \((\text{C}_{10})\), form the main component of essential oils and are therefore economically important due to their aroma (perfume), e.g. menthol, camphor, geraniol and pinene (Fig. 3.4). Their application potential in agriculture lies in the fact that specific monoterpenes are growth inhibitors of higher plants (e.g. menthol and pinene) and therefore have the potential to be developed as natural herbicides.

Sesquiterpenes consist of three isoprene units \((\text{C}_{15})\) (Fig. 3.5). One of the best known sesquiterpenes is abscissic acid (ABA), which has a hormonal function. Plants showing natural resistance towards drought stress synthesize more ABA than drought-sensitive crops. Theoretically, the external application of ABA to crops has the potential to manipulate drought resistance in crops. Other sesquiterpenes have medicinal value e.g. as diuretics and as antimicrobials (e.g. kadinene from juniper berry).

Diterpenes consist of four isoprene units \((\text{C}_{20})\) and are the rarest types of terpenes in plants. Of the most important in this group is the hormone gibberellic acid (GA; Fig. 3.6). Although natural hormones are used in the horticultural and agricultural industries on a small scale as growth stimulants, it is expensive and not economically justifiable on a large scale.
Triterpenes consist of six isoprene units (C$_{30}$) and are divided into four groups, namely common triterpenes, steroids, saponins and cardiac glycosides. Common triterpenes are commonly found in plants as a wax layer on leaves and on some fruits e.g. limonene (Fig. 3.7).

Most steroids are hydrolysed on carbon 3 and are in fact all sterols. They play important roles either as hormones in plants (e.g. brassinosteroids) or vitamin precursors (e.g. 1-$\alpha$-25-dihydroxy-vitamin D$_3$ glycoside; Fig. 3.8).

Brassinosteroids (e.g. brassinolide; Fig. 3.9) have growth-stimulating and yield-increasing properties and are regarded as the secondary metabolites with great application potential in both the agricultural and horticultural industries (see below).

Fig. 3.6. Gibberellic acid.

Fig. 3.7. Limonene.

A brassinosteroid (brassinolide)  
1-$\alpha$-25-dihydroxy-vitamin D$_3$ glycoside

Fig. 3.8. Examples of triterpenes.
Other known sterols are cholesterol that acts as a precursor of other steroids in plants, and ergosterol that is rare in plants but abundant in fungi (Fig. 3.10). Usually, if the ergosterol concentration increases in plants, it is an indication of fungal infection.

Saponins are so-called triterpene-glycosides coupled to a sugar group. The molecule consists of two parts, namely the glycone (sugar) and aglycone (triterpene) moieties (Fig. 3.11). Saponins have soap properties, foam in water and have a bitter taste. They are also known for their medicinal properties in Asiatic communities.

---

**Fig. 3.9.** A typical brassinosteroid (brassinolide).

**Fig. 3.10.** Two known sterols, cholesterol and ergosterol.

**Fig. 3.11.** A typical saponin.
Tetraterpenes consist of eight isoprene units (C_{40}). The best known in this group are the carotenoids, e.g. β-carotene (Fig. 3.12). It is known as a colour pigment supplying colour to flowers, but also for its role in protecting chlorophyll against over exposure to light.

**Aromatic components**

All compounds in the aromatic group of secondary metabolites contain at least one aromatic ring (benzene ring; Fig. 3.13) in their structure, of which one or more hydroxyl groups are substituted. Thousands of aromatic compounds have already been identified in plants. The group can be divided into two sections, namely non-phenolic and phenolic aromatic compounds.

**Non-phenolic aromatic compounds**

Although most aromatic compounds contain one or more OH groups in the benzene ring, the OH groups are absent in non-phenolic aromatic compounds. For the sake of convenience, this group is further divided into two groups, namely non-phenolic amino acids and hormones, as well as tetapyroles. In the former group, the two amino acids phenyl alanine and tryptophan, also precursors of many phenolic compounds, and the hormone auxin (indole acetic acid or IAA) are best known (Fig. 3.14). As is the case for GA, auxin is also used as a growth stimulant in the horticultural industry, but on a small scale.

In the tetapyrrole group of non-phenolic aromatic compounds, chlorophyll (Fig. 3.15) is best known and consists of four pyrrole rings forming a porphyrine ‘head’ attached to a phytol ‘tail’. Another example is phytochrome that is a light-sensitive component, allowing plants to distinguish between different day lengths.

![β-carotene](image)

**Fig. 3.12.** β-carotene.

![Aromatic ring](image)

**Fig. 3.13.** A typical aromatic ring (benzene ring).
Fig. 3.14. Non-phenolic aromatic compounds.

Fig. 3.15. Non-phenolic chlorophyll and phytochrome.
Phenolic aromatic compounds

Phenols are the most abundant aromatic and naturally occurring components of plants. The phenols are classified in different ways, depending on authors. We will only briefly discuss the simple phenols, phenyl propanoids, flavonoids, tannins and kinones.

Simple phenols are all monomeric (consisting of only one aromatic ring; Fig. 3.16). However, the most general simple phenols with growth-inhibiting allelopathic properties that have the potential to be developed as natural herbicides are vanillin, vanillic acid (a benzoic acid) and hydroquinone (Fig. 3.17). p-Hydroxy-benzoic acid and vanillic acid are the most common growth-inhibiting benzoic acids involved with allelopathy and are found in maize, wheat, sorghum and barley.

Phenol is probably the precursor of all other phenolic compounds found in plants. Hydroquinone, resorcinol and catechol are found in low concentrations in plants and their functions are not fully understood. They are mostly secreted by insects as a defence mechanism against other insects and animals. Salicylic acid, on the other hand, possesses anaesthetic properties and is the active ingredient of Aspirin®. In plants a number of functions have been identified for salicylic acid, namely induction of flowering as well as the induction of ‘pathogenesis related’ (PR) proteins (peroxidase, chitinase and β-1,3-glucanase) that increases a plant’s resistance to fungal infections. When secreted by plants, it also has an allelopathic growth inhibiting effect on other plants in the environment.

Phenyl propanoids are synthesized from the aromatic amino acid phenylalanine and contained in their structure is a 3-carbon side chain coupled to a phenol, e.g. coumaric acid and caffeic acid (Fig. 3.18).
p-Coumaric acid is the direct precursor of other coumarins such as umbelliferone and scopoletin but coumarin itself is synthesized from cinnamic acid (Fig. 3.19).

The potential of phenyl propanoids to be developed into natural products for the agricultural industry is probably underestimated at present. For example, coumarin, isolated from *Mellilotus alba* (White Clover; a legume), is a strong inhibitor of seed germination and has the potential to be developed as a pre-emergence herbicide. However, depending on the concentration, it is also known to stimulate IAA activity and therefore growth. Its potential as bio-stimulant has not been researched to date. Coumarin can also combine with monosaccharide sugars such as glucose to form coumarin glycosides, e.g. umbelliferone glycoside (Fig. 3.20).

These glycosides inhibit the activity of the enzyme 6-phosphogluconate dehydrogenase, the regulatory enzyme of the oxidative pentose phosphate (OPP)-pathway, and therefore possess excellent potential to be developed as natural herbicides. Umbelliferone also has an inhibiting effect on the growth

![Fig. 3.18. Two well-known phenyl propanoids.](image)

![Fig. 3.19. Phenyl propanoids synthesized from the precursor, p-coumaric acid.](image)

![Fig. 3.20. Umbelliferone glycoside.](image)
of certain seedlings and shows potential as an herbicide. Scopoletin has a stimulating effect on seed germination but an inhibiting effect on seedling growth, indicating a potential as pre-emergence herbicide.

Flavonoids are the largest group of natural phenolic compounds found in plants. More than 5000 different flavonoids have been described. All flavonoids have one thing in common, namely a 15-carbon 'skeleton' structured in three phenyl rings (A, B and C; Fig. 3.21). Other examples are shown in Fig. 3.22.

A large variety of biological activities have been associated with flavonoids, including antiviral, anti-inflammatory, antioxidant, antidiabetic, anticancer, insect-repelling and free-radical-scavenging activities. What makes this group extraordinary from an industrial perspective are the excessive quantities found in both edible and non-edible plants as well as their potential to be developed into natural products. It is estimated that about 2% of all carbon photosynthesized by plants is converted to flavonoids and this amounts to approximately $1 \times 10^9$ tons per annum. With this enormous amount of flavonoids available, and in light of the numerous bioactivities identified to date, the time is now ripe to consolidate our knowledge of the

![Fig. 3.21. Typical flavonoid structure.](image)

![Fig. 3.22. Flavonoid examples.](image)
group and to evaluate the application potential of these compounds in the agricultural industry (Pretorius, 2003 and references therein).

Tannins are generally found in the xylem and bark of vascular plants. Two types of tannins have been distinguished namely hydrolysable and condensed tannins. When hydrolysable tannins are broken down (hydrolysed), the well known gallic and digallic acids are formed (Fig. 3.23). Tannins combine with proteins to form insoluble co-polymers and this technique is used to tan animal skins. However, tannins are toxic to humans and animals and not suitable for natural product development (Borris, 1996).

Kinones are divided in three groups, benzokinones, naphtakinones and antrakinones (Fig. 3.24). Most kinones are coloured but do not contribute to colour in plants as they are found in the inside tissue layers. The best known example of benzokinone is ubikinone (Fig. 3.25), also known as Co-enzyme Q, which acts as an electron carrier during the light reaction of photosynthesis. Juglone, the well known naphtakinone, has a strong

![Fig. 3.23. Two hydrolysable tannins.](image1)

![Fig. 3.24. Three groups of kinones.](image2)

![Fig. 3.25. Ubikinone, the best known example of a benzokinone.](image3)
inhibiting effect on seed germination and seedling growth. Antrakinone is known as an insect repellent.

Alkaloids

More than 3000 alkaloids have been isolated from plants. The best known alkaloids are morphine (isolated from the poppy flower), nicotine (tobacco) and caffeine (coffee; Fig. 3.26).

Alkaloids are best known for their medicinal properties but also for their toxicity. Their functions in plants are not well known but are possibly linked to the natural resistance of plants against insects and pathogens. Alkaloids are also known to inhibit seed germination and seedling growth of certain plants. Because of their toxicity, chances are slim that alkaloids will be considered in natural product development programmes.

3.4 Antimicrobial Properties of Plant Extracts

Plants are under constant attack from various microorganisms and fungi. Their survival is testamentary to their ability to defend themselves chemically against these attacks by producing a myriad of secondary metabolites with antimicrobial properties (Cowan, 1999; Richard, 2001). Therefore, in addition to other functions, one of the most important functions of secondary metabolites in plants is antimicrobial activity against bacteria, fungi and viruses as well as acting as deterents towards insects and predators (Lazarides, 1998; Minorsky, 2001). Failure of microorganisms to colonize wild plants has often been attributed to the presence of these inhibitory compounds within challenged tissues. However, monoculture crops have lost their ability to defend themselves against biotic stressors to a large extent.

Callow (1983) classified antimicrobial compounds (secondary metabolites) isolated from plants into two categories: (i) constitutive compounds, which are present in healthy plants; and (ii) induced compounds synthesized from remote precursors following infection. The term ‘constitutive’ includes compounds that are released from inactive precursors following tissue

Fig. 3.26. Examples of alkaloids.
damage, for example the release of toxic hydrogen cyanide from cyanogenic glycosides. Induced compounds include the types of secondary metabolites that are low molecular weight antimicrobial compounds and are synthesized by and accumulate in plants that have been exposed to microorganisms (e.g. phytoalexins).

Since plants have evolved highly elaborate chemical defences against attack, these have provided a rich source of biologically active compounds that may be used as novel crop-protecting agents. It follows, therefore, that secondary metabolites with antimicrobial activity purified and isolated from plant extracts, possess the potential to be developed into natural products. As a result, many organizations and institutions in different countries of the world are currently concentrating on natural product research. For example, the aim of the Agrochemical Discovery and Development Program of the National Centre for Natural Products Research in the USA is to identify lead compounds for the development of environmentally benign and toxicologically safe pest management agents (Borris, 1996). This programme is done in collaboration with scientists in the Natural Products Utilization Research Unit of the United States Development Agency (USDA) agricultural research service. Emphasis is on the discovery and development of compounds that are useful in the control of diseases affecting small niche crops. The research centre is devoted to improving agricultural productivity through the discovery, development and commercialization of agrochemicals derived from natural plant compounds (Johnson, 2001).

Moreover, an increasing number of scientists have become involved in intensive plant screening programmes for bioactivity and have contributed to the identification of plant species with the potential to be included in programmes for the development of natural products for the agricultural industry. It is therefore not surprising that a significant amount of evidence over the past three decades has demonstrated that plant extracts are active against plant pathogenic fungi (Lawson et al., 1998), soil-borne fungi (Awuah, 1994; Bianchi et al., 1997), bacteria (Leksomboon et al., 2001) and nematodes (Oka et al., 2000). In recent years research interest has turned towards isolating, purifying and identifying these active compounds that have application potential in plant disease control.

According to Grayer and Harborne (1994), secondary metabolites with antimicrobial properties include terpenoids (e.g. iridoids, sesquiterpenoids and saponins), nitrogen- and/or sulphur-containing compounds (e.g. alkaloids, amines and amides), aliphatics (especially long-chain alkanes and fatty acids) and aromatics (e.g. phenolics, flavonoids, bi-benzyls, xanthones and benzo-quinones). Most of these compounds have been studied for their antifungal and antibacterial activities and potential usefulness against plant pathogens in vitro (Verpoorte, 1998; Baldwin, 1999; Paul et al., 2000) and some also in vivo. Many aromatic compounds, including simple and alkylated phenols, phenolic acids, phenylpropanoids, coumarins, flavonoids, iso-flavonoids, quinones and xanthones, have been reported to show notable antifungal activities (Grayer and Harborne, 1994). For example, Bae et al. (1997) isolated flavonol diglycoside from leaves of Phytolacca americana L.
which exhibited significant antifungal activity against *Botrytis cinerea*, *Botryosphaeria dothidea* and *Colletotrichum gloeosporioides* (*Glomerella cingulata*).

Flavonoid classes most often associated with antifungal activity are flavonols, certain biflavones, chalcones and dihydrochalcones. For example, three glycosides isolated from *Terminalia alata* (*T. elliptica*) roots showed antifungal activity against the plant pathogen *Aspergillus niger* and the human pathogen *Candida albicans* at extremely low concentrations of between 25 and 32 ppm (Srivastava et al., 2001). The three new glycosides identified were: compound 1, 3,3′-di-O-methylellagic acid 4-O-β-d-glucopyranosyl-(1,4)-β-d-glucopyranosyl-(1,2)-α-L-arabinopyranoside; compound 2, 5,7,2′-tri-O-methyl-flavanone 4′-O-α-L-rhamnopyranosyl-(1,4)-β-d-glucopyranoside and compound 3, 2-α,3-β,19-β,23-tetrahydroxyolean-12-en-28-oic acid 3-O-β-d-galactopyranosyl-(1,3)-β-d-glucopyranoside-28-O-β-d-glucopyranoside (Fig. 3.27). Compound 1 was a glycoside of an ellagic acid, whereas compounds 2 and 3 were a flavanone glycoside and a triterpene saponin, respectively.

Saponins are one of several groups of compounds that originate from triterpenoids and show a wide range of biological activities. For instance, fungicidal triterpenoid saponins, which also have molluscidal activity, have been isolated from roots of *Dolichos kilimandscharicus* (Marston et al., 1988). The saponins from *Dolichos* were identified as the 3-O-β-d-glucopyranosides of hederagenin, bayogenin and medicagenic acid (Marston et al., 1988). Saponins from *Mimusops elengi* and *M. littoralis* seeds were also reported to be active against *Phytophthora palmivora* and *Colletotrichum capsici* (Johri et al., 1994).

The anti-infective potency of extracts from plants emphasizes the vast potential for natural compounds to be developed into commercial products (Duke, 1990). Although many of these plant compounds have been applied

Fig. 3.27. Three new glycosides with antifungal properties isolated and identified from *Terminalia alata* (redrawn after Srivastava et al., 2001). See text for names of compounds.
in the pharmaceutical industry (Naseby et al., 2001) and folk medicine (Duncan et al., 1999), their potential for plant disease management has not yet been fully realized. Crop production still depends heavily on synthetic-based products (Philip et al., 1995) despite consumer resistance towards their possible residual effects. For this reason the switch to organic farming, including the use of natural products in disease management systems, has become a priority (Benner, 1993; Michael, 1999). The next section provides an overview of selected plants containing compounds with antimicrobial properties, identified during the past two decades, as well as the current status of natural products that have recently been commercialized.

Plants with antifungal properties

Two decades ago Naidu (1988) assayed young and mature leaf extracts of *Codiaeum variegatum* for antifungal activity. All extracts inhibited *Alternaria alternata* and *Fusarium oxysporum* in vitro, with the young leaves being more active against *A. alternata* and the old leaves more active against *F. oxysporum*. The active secondary metabolites from the leaves extracts were identified as phenolic compounds by chromatographic analysis. Phytochemical screening of the leaves also revealed other metabolites that may be responsible for antifungal activity.

In another study in the same year Bandara et al. (1988) reported that steam distillates of the leaves of *Croton aromaticus* and *C. lacciferus* and root extracts of *C. officinalis* inhibited mycelial growth of *Cladosporium cladosporioides* in vitro. Root extracts of *C. lacciferus* were moderately active while those of *C. aromaticus* were inactive. Of the six compounds isolated from root extracts showing antifungal activity, only 2,6-dimethoxybenzoquinone obtained from the chloroform extract of *C. lacciferus* was significantly active. Comparatively small quantities of this compound were required to inhibit growth of the pathogens *Botryodiplodia theobromae* and *Colletotrichum gloeosporioides* (*Glomerella cingulata*).

Also in the same year Gonzalez et al. (1988) extracted *Alnus acuminata* nodules with either 5% NaOH or water while constituents were separated by silica gel column chromatography. The following compounds were isolated: xylose, ribose, an aromatic carboxylic acid, a fatty acid, a phenolic biarylheptanoid and a flavonoid glycoside. The flavonoid glycoside was found to inhibit the growth of *Fusarium oxysporum* and *Pythium* species.

In the 1990s a number of contributions by natural product researchers were published. Only a few are mentioned here. Ajoene, a secondary metabolite derived from garlic (*Allium sativum*), was shown to inhibit spore germination of some fungi including *Alternaria solani* and other *Alternaria* spp., *Colletotrichum* spp., *Fusarium oxysporum* and other *Fusarium* spp. that cause serious diseases in some important crop plants in India (Singh et al., 1990). In a study conducted by Hoffmann et al. (1992) a methanol extract of *Castela emoryi* was active as both a preventative and curative agent against grape downy mildew caused by *Plasmopara viticola*. An active secondary metabolite was
identified as a glycoside, 15-glucopyranosyl-glaucarubolone. Saponins from *Mimusops elengi* and *M. littoralis* seeds and crude extract of *Ammi majus* were 86–100% effective against *Phytophthora palmivora* in vitro and the saponins were 100% effective against *Colletotrichum capsici* (Johri et al., 1994). Encouraging results were obtained in 2 years of field trials using these products for the control of pathogens on *Piper betle*. No phytotoxicity was observed. Bae et al. (1997) isolated an antifungal secondary metabolite, flavonol diglycoside, from the leaves of *Phytolacca Americana L.* and identified the compound as kaempferol-3-O-β-D-apiofwanosyl-(1,2)-β-D-lucopyranoside by spectral analyses. The compound exhibited significant antifungal activity against *Botrytis cinerea*, *Botryosphaeria dothidea* and *Colletotrichum gloeosporioides* (*Glomerella cingulata*).

Earlier reports on the potential of compounds from plants to be considered in natural product research most probably played a role in the elevation of large-scale screening programmes that followed during the past decade. For example, Pretorius et al. (2002a) performed a wide search for South African plant species with fungitoxic properties against plant pathogens of economic importance in agriculture. For this study, 39 plant species, representing 20 families from the subclasses *Rosidae*, *Asteridae*, *Commelinidae* and *Liliidae*, were collected from the Blyde River Canyon Nature Reserve, Mpumalanga, South Africa. Crude extracts were prepared and bio-assayed, at equal concentrations, for their antifungal potential by determining the inhibitory effects on the mycelial growth of seven economically important plant pathogenic fungi. Statistically, significant differences between plants and plant parts were observed as well as the resistance of different fungi to treatment with different plant extracts. The most significant broad spectrum mycelial growth inhibition was obtained with extracts from two species of the subclass *Liliidae*, namely *Aristea ecklonii* and *Agapanthus inapertus*. The crude extract of *A. ecklonii* performed best of all extracts as it totally inhibited the mycelial growth of all seven of the plant pathogenic test organisms and outperformed the inhibition by a broad-spectrum synthetic fungicide (carbendazim/difenoconazole). Crude extracts of *A. inapertus* showed complete inhibition of four, and strong inhibition of the remaining three, plant pathogenic fungi.

In the same year Pretorius et al. (2002b) also performed an in vivo study on the control of black spot (Ascochyta blight) in pea leaves, caused by *Mycosphaerella pinodes*, by a crude bulb extract of *Eucomis autumnalis*. The fourth internode leaves were removed from 4-week-old pea (cv. Mohanderfer) plants, placed on moist filter paper in Petri dishes and inoculated with an *M. pinodes* spore suspension before and after treatment with the extract. The crude extract prevented *M. pinodes* spore infection of the leaves when the leaves were inoculated with spores both before and after treatment with the extract, confirming complete inhibition of spore germination. The crude *E. autumnalis* extract showed no phytotoxic effect on the leaves even at the highest concentration applied.

Equally promising was the results of a comprehensive study conducted by Chen et al. (2002) to determine the inhibitory effect of 58 plant extracts on
spore germination and the effective control of grape downy mildew (*Plasmopara viticola*). Among the plant extracts, those of *Chloris virgata*, *Dalbergia hupeana*, *Pinus massoniana*, *Paeonia suffruticosa* and *Robinia pseudoacacia* inhibited spore germination of the pathogen significantly. An *in vivo* leaf disc test showed that the infected leaf discs, treated with these five plant extracts, exhibited no disease symptoms. Their effects were the same or better than that of the traditional fungicide, liquid Bordeaux.

Pandey et al. (2002), similarly, compared the antifungal potential of leaf extracts from 49 angiosperms, collected in Uttar Pradesh, India, with commercial fungicides, by screening them against *Helminthosporium sativum* (*Cochliobolus sativus*). The leaf extract of *Mangifera indica* completely inhibited the mycelial growth of the test fungus while four plant species, *A. sativum*, *Azadirachta indica*, *Lawsonia inermis* and *Matricaria chamomila* (*Chamomilla recutita*) showed more than 90% inhibition. On assaying different parts of *Mangifera indica*, the leaf and seed extracts were found to possess the highest activity and, together with a leaf extract of *Matricaria chamomile*, performed better than the commercial fungicides.

An approach to screen for plants with antimicrobial activity against plant pathogens that often results in success is to exploit indigenous knowledge on medicinal plants and to screen these known plants for likely candidates. The rationale behind this approach is to screen traditional medicinal plants known in a specific area for their antimicrobial properties instead of randomly choosing potential candidates from the long list of currently known flowering plants, conifers, ferns or bryophytes. Rajiv et al. (2002) conducted a study to screen for the most effective extracts out of 15 medicinal plants against *Helminthosporium nodulosum* (*Cochliobolus nodulosus*) causing blight in finger millet. These included *Impatiens balsamina*, *Solanum nigrum*, *Tagetes erecta*, *A. sativum*, *A. indica*, *Datura metel*, *Emblica officinalis* (*Phyllanthus emblica*), *Eucalyptus citriodora*, *Euphorbia pulcherrima*, *Lantana camara*, *Mentha arvensis*, *Mimosa pudica*, *Nerium indicum* (*N. oleander*), *Ocimum sanctum* (*O. tenuiflorum*) and *Ricinus communis*. Extracts were sprayed on the potted finger millet plants at 15, 30, 45, 60 and 75 days after sowing. Crude extracts of *S. nigrum* and *I. balsamina* showed the highest mycelial growth inhibition, followed by *T. erecta*. Overall, the crude extract of *S. nigrum* recorded the best result *in vitro* but was found inferior to the *I. balsamina* extract in *in vivo* tests (Rajiv et al., 2002).

Besides large-scale screening programmes, data from quite a number of smaller projects that included the screening of one or more plants were published during the past decade. In most cases these smaller projects included the isolation and identification of active compounds involved, even if only the chemical group level. Although large-scale screening programmes are important to at least identify plant orders, families, genera or species with promising potential, the more concerted approach is probably preferable. Only a few approaches are mentioned here.

In their study of antimicrobial properties of plant extracts, Orlikowski (2001a) used grapefruit extract (GE; Biosept 33 SL) to control *Phytophthora* spp. Amendment of peat with GE at a concentration of 165 μg cm⁻³ resulted
in a drastic decrease in colony-forming units of the pathogen *Phytophthora cryptogea* and suppression of its development in potted gerbera (*Gerbera jamesonii*) and cypress (*Chamaecyparis lawsoniana*). About 40 μg GE ml⁻¹ inhibited approximately 50% of the mycelial growth, whereas the pathogen did not develop at all in the presence of GE at a concentration of 1000 μg ml⁻¹. The antifungal property of GE against *P. cryptogea* was attributed to the presence of the active ingredient 7-geranoxycoumarin in GE (Orlikowski et al., 2001b).

Kishore et al. (2002) reported on the antimicrobial activity of aqueous leaf extracts from *Lawsonia inermis* and *Datura metel* against *Mycosphaerella berkeleyi* causing late leaf spot in groundnuts (*Arachis hypogaea*). Field experiments were conducted at the International Crops Research Institute for the Semi-Arid Tropics (ICRISAT), Patancheru, India during 1999 and 2000 using a susceptible groundnut cultivar (TMV2). The *D. metel* extract continuously reduced disease progress up to 115 days after sowing while the severity of late leaf spot at harvest was significantly less than that of the controls. The *L. inermis* extract was slightly less effective, containing disease progress up to 95 days after sowing, but disease severity was also considerably less than that of the untreated and the positive chlorothalonil treated controls. Pod yields in plots sprayed with *L. inermis* and *D. metel* extracts were 20 and 48% higher, respectively, than in the control plots.

In the same year the aqueous extracts from bird cherry tree (*Padus avium* [*Prunus padus*]), aspen (*Populus tremula*), and celandine (*Chelidonium majus*) effectively suppressed the germination of *Puccinia triticina* (*Puccinia recondita*) uredospores (Karavaev et al., 2002). Fungitoxic activity of the extracts was attributed to the high phenolic compound content and high peroxidase activity in the leaves of these plants.

Curir et al. (2003) investigated the phenol compositions of two cultivars of carnation (*Dianthus caryophyllus*) namely ‘Gloriana’ and ‘Roland’, which were partially and highly resistant, respectively, to *Fusarium oxysporum* subsp. *dianthi*. The aim was to determine if endogenous phenols could have an antifungal effect against the pathogen. Analyses were performed on healthy and *F. oxysporum*-inoculated tissues *in vitro* as well as on plants *in vivo*. Two benzoic acid derivatives, protocatechuic acid (3,4-dihydroxybenzoic acid) and vanillic acid (4-hydroxy-3-methoxybenzoic acid), were found within healthy and inoculated tissues of both cultivars, together with the flavonol glycoside peltatoside (3-[6-O-(α-L-arabinopyranosyl)-β-D-glucopyranosyl] quercetin). These molecules proved to be only slightly inhibitory towards the pathogen. 2,6-Dimethoxybenzoic acid was detected in small amounts only in the inoculated cultivar ‘Gloriana’, while the highly resistant cultivar ‘Roland’ showed the presence of the flavone datiscetin (3,5,7,2′-tetrahydroxyflavone). The latter compound exhibited an appreciable fungitoxic activity against *F. oxysporum* subsp. *dianthi*.

Natural plant extracts have in recent years also received attention as a significant and safe resource for the control of soil-borne pathogens due to the phasing out of methyl bromide, which has played a major role as a soil fumigant worldwide (Eshel et al., 2000). Methyl bromide, the major fumigant
used, is scheduled to be phased out, because it was defined by the Montreal Protocol of 1991 as a chemical that contributes to the depletion of the ozone layer (Bowers and Locke, 2000). Presently, pre-plant soil fumigation and fungicide applications are used to control wilt diseases. Subsequently, extracts from a number of plants have been identified as possible alternatives to methyl bromide against soil-borne pathogens.

Due to environmental and safety concerns associated with pesticides, as well as the need for a replacement of methyl bromide, Bowers and Locke (2000) investigated the effect of several formulated plant extracts and essential oils on soil populations of *F. oxysporum*. *Fusarium* wilts are some of the most widespread and destructive diseases of many major ornamental and horticultural crops (Bowers and Locke, 2000). Treatment of the soil with 10% aqueous emulsions of the formulated extracts of a chilli pepper extract and essential oil of mustard mixture, a cassia tree extract and clove oil reduced populations of *Fusarium* by 99.9, 96.1 and 97.5%, respectively, 3 days after soil treatment. The same formulations also suppressed disease development in the greenhouse and resulted in an 80–100% plant stand after 6 weeks. The observed reductions in the pathogen population in soil and increase in plant stand in the greenhouse indicated that these natural plant products may play important roles in future biologically based management strategies for the control of *Fusarium* wilt diseases.

Similar results were observed with neem tree (*Azadirachta indica*) extracts against soil-borne fungi (Ume et al., 2001). It was shown that extracts from the leaves and seed kernels possess antifungal activity against *Sclerotium rolfsii* (*Corticium rolfsii*). Both leaf and seed extracts showed some effect against different growth stages of the fungus, but the effects were fungistatic rather than fungitoxic. The non-polar extracts of the seed kernels were reported to be more effective than those rich in polar terpenoids such as azadirachtin and an aqueous leaf extract was also more effective than the kernel-derived material. Neem is perhaps the most useful traditional medicinal plant in India and each part of the tree has some medicinal property that has made it commercially exploitable (Kausik et al., 2002).

Amadioha (2002) evaluated the antifungal activities of different extracts of neem, both *in vitro* and *in vivo*. The oil extract from seeds as well as water and ethanol leaf extracts of the plant were effective in reducing the radial mycelial growth of *Cochliobolus miyabeanus* in culture and in controlling the spread of brown spot disease in rice. However, the oil extract was found to be the most effective, followed by the ethanol leaf extract, in inhibiting the growth of the pathogen *in vitro* and in controlling the development of the disease *in vivo*. The oil and ethanol extracts compared favourably with carbendazim (Bavistin) at 0.1% active ingredient and had the potential to control the brown spot disease of rice *in vivo*. Additionally, Bohra and Purohit (2002) studied the effects of the aqueous extracts of 17 plant species collected from Rajasthan, India on a toxigenic strain of *Aspergillus flavus*. The neem extract recorded the highest mycelial growth inhibition of the fungus.

The antimicrobial potential of plant extracts has also been reported against the highly resistant fungi that cause soil-borne damping-off disease
in plants. The efficacy of crude, boiled water and acetone extracts of 17 plant species against *Rhizoctonia solani*, causing wet root rot disease in chickpeas, was evaluated under laboratory conditions (Kane *et al.*, 2002). The crude, boiled water and acetone extracts of *A. sativum*, the crude and boiled water extract of *Eucalyptus* sp., as well as the boiled water and acetone extracts of *Zingiber officinale* contributed to 100% inhibition of the mycelial growth of the pathogen. In the same year Prabha *et al.* (2002) reported on the antifungal properties of extracts from *Foeniculum vulgare, Coriandrum sativum, Trigonella foenum-graecum, Anethum graveolens* and *Cuminum cyminum* against three fungi, including *Fusarium oxysporum*. All extracts showed a relatively greater inhibitory effect on *F. oxysporum*, with stem extracts from *A. graveolens* exhibiting complete growth suppression, while the mycelial growth of the other two fungi was also inhibited significantly.

Om *et al.* (2001) also reported the effect of essential oils extracted from *Callistemon lanceolatus* (*Callistemon citrinus*), *Citrus medica, Eclipta alba, Hyptis suaveolens* and *Ocimum canum* (*O. americanum*) against *Rhizoctonia solani*, the cause of damping-off disease of tomato and chilli (*Capsicum annuum*). The essential oils of *Citrus medica, E. alba* and *O. canum* completely inhibited the growth of the fungus within 24 h. The essential oils of *C. lanceolatus* and *O. canum* controlled the damping-off disease of tomato by 57 and 71%, and that of chilli by 40 and 83%, respectively. The same effect was also observed by applying crude, boiled water and acetone extracts from *A. sativum*, and a boiled water extract of *Eucalyptus* sp., as well as boiled water and acetone extracts of *Zingiber officinale* (Kane *et al.*, 2002).

In some cases plant extracts not only inhibit fungal mycelial growth, but also spore germination. Chen *et al.* (2002) reported that *Chloris virgata, Dalbergia hupeana, Pinus massoniana, Paeonia suffruticosa* and *Robinia pseudoacacia* extracts inhibited spore germination of grape downy mildew (*Plasmopara viticola*) and the effect was comparable to that of a traditional fungicide, liquid Bordeaux. Other work also demonstrated that leaf extracts of *Lawsonia inermis* and *Datura metel* possess antifungal activity against *Mycosphaerella berkeleyi*, causing late leaf spot in groundnuts (Kishore *et al.*, 2002). Particularly, the *D. metel* extract continuously reduced disease progress up to 115 days after sowing while the severity of late leaf spot at harvest was significantly less than that of the controls.

Plant seeds also contain compounds with antimicrobial properties. Seed extracts of 50 plant species, belonging to different families, were evaluated for their ability to inhibit the growth of *Trichoderma viride* in vitro (Bharathimatha *et al.*, 2002). Of the various seed extracts, that of *Harpullia cupanioides* (Roxb.), belonging to the family *Sapindaceae*, displayed very high antifungal activity. The seed extract of *H. cupanioides* strongly inhibited the growth of *Rhizoctonia solani, Curvularia lunata* (*Cochliobolus lunatus*), *Colletotrichum musae* and *Alternaria alternata* and retained its antifungal activity even after heating at 100°C for 10 min or autoclaving at 121°C for 20 min. Rodriguez and Montilla (2002) reported on the in vitro and in vivo antimicrobial effect of a *Citrus paradisi* seed extract (Citrex) on *F. oxysporum lycopersici* causing tomato wilt. Five treatments were evaluated: (i) immersion of plant roots in a solution of
Citrex before transplant; (ii) weekly application to the foliage; (iii) weekly application to the soil; (iv) weekly application to the foliage and to the soil; and (v) immersion of plant roots at transplant plus weekly application to the soil. The control was infested soil without application of the product. Treatments (i) and (iii) reduced wilting by 85%, indicating that it is possible to control soil-borne pathogens with the *C. paradisi* seed extract.

Extremely promising, from a natural product development perspective, is that many plant extracts compare favourably with commercially synthesized fungicides. For example, leaf extracts of *Azadirachta indica*, *Atropa belladonna*, *Calotropis procera*, *Ocimum basilicum*, *Eucalyptus amygdalina*, *Ailantus excelsa* (*Ailanthus excelsa*) and *Lantana camara*, at different concentrations, were compared to the fungicides Bavistin (carbendazim), Dithane M-45 (mancozeb), captan, thiram and Topsin M (thiophanate-methyl) at standard concentrations against *F. oxysporum* inducing fenugreek wilt under greenhouse conditions. Seeds of fenugreek were separately soaked overnight in each leaf extract as well as the fungicide solutions (Gupta and Bansal, 2003). All the leaf extracts, except that of *Ailantus excelsa*, significantly inhibited the mycelial growth of *Fusarium* compared to the untreated control. Maximum germination of fenugreek seeds was observed with Bavistin (93.33%), followed by *Atropa belladonna* (90.66%), *Azadirachta indica* (87.99%), *L. camara* (87.99%), *C. procera* (85.99%), *O. basilicum* (85.33%) and *E. amygdalina* (82.40%). Dithane M-45 (80.00%), Captan (86.66%), thiram (86.66%) and Topsin M (86.66%) were on par with the leaf extracts.

An approach adopted by Solunke *et al.* (2001), following the increasing availability of data in the literature on plants with antifungal activity, was to evaluate the potential of plant extracts to be applied in IPM programmes. The authors conducted a study to manage sclerotium rot (*Sclerotium rolfsii* [*Athelia rolfsii*]) of potato using a commercial fungicide, carbendazim, separately and together with plant extracts. Sensitivity of fungal isolates (SRP-1, SRP-2, SRP-3 and SRP-4) against carbendazim was determined beforehand. Subsequently, aqueous extracts of *Azadirachta indica*, *Allium cepa*, *Glossocardia bosvallea* and *Vinca rosea* (*Catharanthus roseus*) were mixed with carbendazim in solution and used to treat potato slices. Based on the minimum inhibitory concentration of carbendazim against the four isolates, SRP-4 appeared to be tolerant while SRP-1 was sensitive. The percentage control efficacy (PCE) of carbendazim alone and in mixture with plant extracts were tested against the tolerant isolate, SRP-4. Using carbendazim in combination with plant extracts increased its PCE. Application of carbendazim along with *A. indica* and *G. bosvallea* recorded a PCE of 100%. Carbendazim with *V. rosea* and with *A. cepa* recorded PCEs of 90.77 and 80.53%, respectively. The results showed that it is possible to reduce the selection pressure of carbendazim when combined with plant extracts.

Finally, an aspect that needs special reference is that the antimicrobial efficacy of plant extracts compare favourably with that of commercial fungicides in controlling plant diseases. In fact, research into antimicrobial activities of plant extracts has offered some potential solution to disease control in the absence of effective chemical control. For example, few commercial
fungicides have been effective in inhibiting teliospore germination of *Tilletia indica*, the causal agent of Karnal bunt of wheat. This disease is becoming more widespread, in part, because of the lack of effective chemical control. Various extracts of native plants from Sonora, Mexico were evaluated to determine their antifungal activity against *T. indica*. Dichloromethane and methanol extracts were incubated with the fungus to measure the inhibition of mycelial growth. Dichloromethane extracts from *Chenopodium ambrosiodes* and *Encelia farinosa* reduced radial mycelial growth significantly, but total inhibition occurred at a relatively high concentration of 500 mg ml\(^{-1}\) of the dichloromethane extract from *Larrea tridentata*. Teliospores subjected to treatment with the latter plant extract showed no viability when transferred to fresh culture media, confirming the extract’s potential to be applied as controlling agent for *T. indica* (Rivera et al., 2001).

**Plants with antibacterial properties**

Already in the 1990s, the application of natural plant extracts under both greenhouse (Blaeser and Steiner, 1999; Nikolov et al., 1999; Scholz et al., 1999) and postharvest (El-Ghaouth et al., 1995; Bhaskara et al., 1998) conditions against various pathogens confirmed the potential of natural compounds from plants to be developed into commercial products. Although the number of natural products applied in biological control systems is currently a relatively small percentage of the total world market, it is predicted to increase substantially. This implicates the possible decrease of pesticide application in agriculture in the future. In turn, this approach could create a significant market opportunity for alternative products to be applied on a larger scale in organic crop production systems.

A vast number of reports on large-scale screening programmes to evaluate wild plants for antibacterial activity are available in the literature; we refer to only a few. The antibacterial and antifungal activities of 38 plants belonging to 17 families were tested by Ghosh et al. (2000). The solvent extracts of different morphological parts of these plants were tested against 14 bacterial and 18 fungal strains. Out of these, *Alpinia mutica*, *Cephalandra indica*, *Croton bonplandianum*, *Curcuma amada*, *Holarrhena antidysenterica*, *Moringa oleifera* and *Zingiber spectabile* were found to contain antimicrobial properties (Ghosh et al., 2000). Khan and Omoloso (2002) studied the antibacterial and antifungal activities of methanol extracts of *Harpullia petiolaris* leaves, stems, root barks and heartwoods (collected from Papua New Guinea). Antibacterial activities were found to be highest in fractions of root bark, petrol and dichloromethane fractions of stem bark, the petrol fraction of heartwood and the butanol fraction of leaves. Antifungal activity was only observed in the petrol fractions of the root bark and stem heartwood.

Ethanol and water extracts of leaves, flowers, shoots, bark and fruits of 30 herbal and woody plant species were tested for *in vitro* growth inhibition of *Erwinia amylovora* by Krupinski and Sobiczewski (2001) using an agar diffusion method. Active extracts were found in 23 species, while in 13 of these
the active substances were found for the first time. The highest growth inhibition of this bacterium was recorded for extracts of *Aloe arborescens*, *Juglans regia*, *Rhus typhina* (*R. hirta*), *Salvia officinalis* and *Satureja hortensis*. In almost all cases ethanol appeared to be a better solvent of active plant substances against *E. amylovora* than water.

A similar approach was followed by Morais et al. (2002) in screening crude extracts of 45 known medicinal plants against bacterial pathogens of tomato. The antibacterial activity of crude extracts was tested against *Xanthomonas campestris* pv. *vesicatoria*, *Ralstonia solanacearum* and *Clavibacter michiganense* subsp. *michiganense*. Some assays were also performed to verify the capability of these plant extracts to show antibiosis. Five of the 45 extracts showed significant activity against the test bacteria, confirming the potential of using either these extracts or active substances contained in them as natural products under field conditions. In the same year, Devanath et al. (2002) compared the antibacterial effect of extracts from three medicinal plants (*Psidium guajava*, *Aloe vera* [A. barbadensis] and *Datura stramonium*) to two standard fungicides (Streptocycline and Blitox or copper oxychloride) against *Rhizoctonia solanacearum* in vitro. The aqueous extract of *Aloe vera* was most effective in suppressing the growth of *R. solanacearum* followed by the extract of *Psidium guajava*.

Zeller et al. (2002) reported on the effect of an extract from *Hedera helix* against fire blight on pome fruits, caused by *Erwinia amylovora*. The highest growth inhibition of this bacterium was recorded for extracts of *Aloe arborescens*, *Juglans regia*, *Rhus typhina* (*R. hirta*), *Salvia officinalis* and *Satureja hortensis*. In almost all cases ethanol appeared to be a better solvent of active plant substances against *E. amylovora* than water. Also using the bacterium *E. amylovora* as a test organism, Jin and Sato (2003) searched for secondary metabolites in aqueous extracts from succulent young shoots of pear (*Pyrus*). Aqueous extracts of the tissue of succulent young shoots exhibited strong antibacterial activity against *E. amylovora*. The active compound was isolated from the extract by steam distillation *in vacuo*, purified through charcoal powder column chromatography and identified as benzoquinone (2,5-cyclohexadiene-1,4-dione) by NMR spectra, mass spectra and HPLC analysis. In the same year, Pretorius et al. (2002a) demonstrated the broad-spectrum antibacterial activity of crude extracts from *Acacia erioloba*, *Senna italic* and *Buddleja saligna* against the plant pathogens *Agrobacterium tumefaciens*, *Clavibacter michiganense* pv. *michiganense*, *Erwinia carotovora* pv. *carotovora*, *Pseudomonas solanacearum* and *Xanthomonas campestris* pv. *phaseoli*.

Additionally, plant extracts with antibacterial properties can provide an alternative to certain antibiotics. Zeller et al. (2002) reported on such alternatives to the antibiotic streptomycin for the control of fire blight on pome fruits, caused by *E. amylovora*, which is of great economic importance for German and European fruit producers. An antagonistic preparation, BIOFRO, showed a control efficacy of up to 60% and the plant extract from *Hedera helix* revealed a high efficacy in the field in combination with a low concentrated copper compound and a metal salt. The control of fire blight in this manner was comparable to that by the antibiotic streptomycin under
artificial and natural infection conditions. The latter is important in light of the fact that the use of copper-containing antimicrobials is phasing out in Europe due to recent legislation, while the use of antibiotics, such as streptomycin, is highly opposed.

**Current status of antimicrobial products from plant extracts**

Extracts from various plant species appear to have promising potential for their application as natural products in the agricultural industry against both plant pathogenic bacteria and fungi and to be integrated in plant disease management systems. However, to date, the number of commercially developed natural plant products that emerged from screening programmes is alarmingly low. The natural plant product Milsana®, extracted from the giant knotweed (*Reynoutria saccharinensis*), is probably best known (Daayf et al., 1995). The product has been reported to control powdery mildew, caused by *Sphaerotheca fuliginea*, in the long English cucumber under greenhouse conditions, and also showed broad spectrum activity against powdery mildew of tomato, apple and begonia as well as downy mildew of grapevine and rust of bean (Daayf et al., 1995). It was concluded by Petsikos et al. (2002) that Milsana® can substantially contribute to the management of cucumber powdery mildew in organic or integrated farming systems.

A volatile natural product, Carvone™, derived from dill and caraway seed, has been developed to inhibit the growth of storage pathogens and to suppress sprouting of potatoes in the warehouse (Moezelaar et al., 1999). Carvone™ is currently marketed as Talent® in the Netherlands. Additionally, Fungastop™ and Armorex™ II, two natural products developed in the USA (Soil Technologies Corp.), are commercially available for the control of various plant diseases in agriculture.

Dayan et al. (2009) supplied an excellent summary of new natural antimicrobial products that were recently commercialized for use in either conventional or organic agricultural or both industries. To name a few, these include Bla-S™ (against rice blast disease in eastern Asia), Kasugamin™ (against rice blast and other crop diseases in Japan), Mildiomycin™ (against powdery mildews mainly in Japan), Delvolan™ (against fungal diseases of ornamentals) and Validacin™ (used for *Rhizoctonia* spp. control on a variety of crops). All of these products are fermentation secondary products from Actinomycetes, mostly *Streptomyces* spp., commercialized for use as agricultural fungicides in Japan, and to a lesser extent in other parts of the world.

Several plant essential oils are marketed as fungicides for organic farmers (Dayan et al., 2009). These include E-Rase™ from jojoba (*Simmondsia californica*) oil, Sporan™ from rosemary (*Rosmarinus officinalis*) oil, Promax™ from thyme (*T. vulgaris*) oil, Trilogy™ from neem (*A. indica*) oil and GC-3™ being a mixture of cottonseed (*Gossypium hirsutum*) oil and garlic (*A. sativum*) extract. According to Dayan et al. (2009), few scientific papers deal with these products or the actual active components, and their modes of action against individual plant pathogens are largely unknown.
A fairly new approach to microbial disease control is via systemic acquired resistance (SAR) or, in other words, the activation of natural defence mechanisms within the plant via elicitors (Dayan et al., 2009). Harpin protein that induces SAR in plants is sold as Messenger™ or ProAct™. Brassinosteroids that induce the synthesis of PR proteins that resist fungal infection in crops, are sold as ComCat® (Roth et al., 2000). The latter product seems to be used more often as a bio-stimulatory agent; an aspect that will be dealt with later in this chapter.

These past successes and the public’s current concern over the impact of synthetic pesticides on the environment ensures a continued, if not an increased, interest in searching nature for environmentally friendlier pest management tools (Dayan et al., 2009).

3.5 Natural Bio-herbicides

The herbicide component of all pesticides sold increased from less than 20% in the 1950s to almost 50% of the market in the 1980s (Jutsum, 1988) and this has since risen to over 60%. Today, herbicides account for more than half of the volume of all agricultural pesticides applied in the developed world and their use has also contributed to the concern of consumers towards the potential health and environmental impact they may have (Dayan et al., 2009). However, almost three decades ago, McWhorter and Chandler (1982) estimated that weeds contribute to a significant 12% loss in worldwide crop production, emphasizing the need to control weeds. These two perspectives, namely the need to control weeds and the negative attitude of consumers, have in part fuelled the current elevated interest in the discovery of natural products to be applied as an environmentally friendly method of weed control.

However, the complexity of the environment in terms of weed control and especially the possible side effects of herbicides or biological control agents on non-targeted plants, calls for a comprehensive study on control strategies, whether biological, chemical, cultural or a combination of these in an integrated weed management system. The biological approach to weed control can be separated into three distinct strategies: conservation, inundative and classical depending on the setting (e.g. range, row crops, urban), the extent of the infestation and the biology of the system (McFadyen, 1998; Goeden and Andrés, 1999). According to the authors, conservation biocontrol refers to situations where a natural biocontrol agent is already present and is able to control the weed but requires assistance in the form of cultural practices or integrated management decisions that enable the agent to thrive. Although conservation strategies are less common in the biological approach to weed control than in the biocontrol of insects, examples do exist (Goeden and Andrés, 1999).

Inundative biocontrol involves the release of large numbers of a biological control agent at a time when weed populations are expected to escape control or exceed a critical economic or competitive threshold. When the
agent is already present at a level that does not provide adequate, continuous control of the target, this strategy is known as augmentation biocontrol (Goeden and Andrés, 1999). In general, inundative biocontrol relies on the released organisms themselves to control the target without any expectation of continued control by future generations of the agent (Elzen and King, 1999). In an inundative strategy the agent may need to be released or applied several times during a single crop cycle in the event of re-growth or re-emergence of the target weed. Thus, inundative strategies typically apply to relatively high-input systems.

Classical biocontrol, sometimes referred to as inoculative biocontrol, involves the practice of identifying co-evolved natural enemies from the native range of a target weed species and releasing them into the invaded range to reduce the presence of the weed to acceptable levels (McFadyen, 1998). In classical biocontrol, the agents are expected to reproduce and proliferate on the target weed and disseminate throughout its invaded range, reaching an ecological equilibrium with the target weed and providing continuous, perpetual control. Successful control depends almost wholly on damage caused by the descendants of the released individuals rather than by the released individuals themselves (Elzen and King, 1999). Classical biocontrol is generally practiced in low-input systems. Biologically based weed control can also take the form of weed-resistant properties in crop plants, akin to host-plant resistance versus insect and pathogen pests.

Allelopathy, the production by a plant of secondary metabolites that inhibit growth of nearby plants, is a phenomenon that has been studied for its potential utility in weed control for many years (Rector, 2008). This implies the use of natural compounds from plants, referred to as allelochemicals, in natural product development programmes. The term allelopathy is derived from two Greek words ‘allelos’ and ‘patos’ meaning ‘to suffer on each other’ (Delabays and Mermillod, 2002). According to the authors, allelopathy is defined as a chemical process whereby certain plants release natural compounds into the environment that can either stimulate or inhibit the growth and development of surrounding plants. In nature the latter is more likely, as a form of competition for growing space, where allelochemicals are released from the roots of one plant and absorbed by the roots of surrounding plants preventing them from growing in the same area. There are several ways in which an allelopathic plant can release its protective chemicals. These include: (i) volatilization, where a chemical is released in the form of a gas through the leaves and, on absorption, sensitive surrounding plants are stunted or die; (ii) leaching of allelochemicals from decomposing absced leaves preventing surrounding plants from establishing in the same area; and (iii) exudation of allelochemicals into the soil through the roots, preventing surrounding plants from prospering (Delabays and Mermillod, 2002).

Despite its long history, little progress has been made in incorporating allelopathy into mainstream weed management programmes due to a failure to provide adequate weed control while maintaining other agronomic qualities of the crop (Belz, 2007). There is a strong possibility that formulation has played a key role in the failure of bio-herbicides in the market and their...
efficacy in the field. This is understandable when the bottom line criterion for any natural product developed from plant extracts, including natural herbicides, is considered. This criterion is that the product must be effective, safe and have consistent results and must have an adequate shelf life of at least 1 year.

Despite the apparent failure to develop bio-herbicides from plants or other biological sources at present (see current status later in this chapter), the need to do so is increasing due to weeds becoming more resistant towards the commercially available synthetic herbicides (Dudai et al., 1999; Duke et al., 2000; Tworkoski, 2002). For example, in New Zealand the problems posed by invasive weeds are among the most severe in the world with an estimated cost of NZ$100 million each year (Juliena et al., 2007). Of all the weeds currently identified in New Zealand, only a third has been targeted by biological control. The latter emphasizes the need to integrate either biological control agents or chemical bio-herbicides or both into a broader management programme for weeds.

**Plants with herbicidal properties**

The greatest potential for developing natural herbicides probably lies in the plant kingdom, a largely untapped reservoir of natural compounds with allelopathic herbicidal properties. Although little success in terms of natural product development has been realized, extensive research has been done in the past to screen for the growth inhibitory activity of extracts from many plant species (Wu et al., 2002). Only a few recent examples are supplied to emphasize the principle.

Nie et al. (2002) reported that extracts of *Wedelia chinensis* reduced seed germination, inhibited seedling growth, resulted in yellowing leaves and reduced resistance to disease in weeds such as *Cyperus difformis*, *Paspalum thunbergii*, *Alternanthera sessilis* and *Cynodon dactylon* at relative low concentration of 0.4 g FW (fresh weight) ml⁻¹ water. This study confirmed the potential of *W. chinensis* extracts sprayed before crop emergence to control the germination of weed seeds. Another study by Randhawa et al. (2002) showed that a sorghum extract reduced seed germination and seedling growth of the weed *Trianthema portulacastrum* substantially at high concentrations (75–100%) but promoted shoot length of the weed at low concentrations (25%).

Similar contrasting results were reported for the effects of extracts from eight lucerne cultivars on seed germination as well as on root and hypocotyl development of lettuce seedlings (Tran and Tsuzuki, 2002). Extracts from some lucerne cultivars had a stimulatory effect in terms of seed germination as well as root and hypocotyl growth, whereas others showed the direct opposite effect, confirming that crop plants can also be affected by plant extracts aimed at controlling weed growth. Singh et al. (2003) confirmed this phenomenon by showing that aqueous leaf leachates of *Eucalyptus citriodora* inhibited the germination and seedling growth of all test crops (*Vigna radiata*, *V. mungo* and *Arachis hypogaea*) investigated. Further,
in their study of bioactivity of plant extracts, Deena et al. (2003) demonstrated the inhibitory effect of leaf, stem and root leachates from *Andrographis paniculata* on germination and seedling growth in rice. From this it became clear that the bioactivities of plant extracts are unpredictable and may give different and often contrasting results with regard to inhibition or promotion of growth and development in other plants. The reaction of crops to treatment with plant extracts may depend on the interaction between different types of plant species or even on the concentration of the extracts (Channal et al., 2002a).

Research into the allelopathic activity of plant extracts has resulted in the identification of active ingredients responsible for both inhibition or stimulation of either seed germination or seedling growth. In this respect, Chung et al. (2002) reported on the inhibitory effect of ferulic, p-hydroxybenzoic, p-coumaric and m-coumaric acids isolated from three rice cultivars on the growth of barnyard grass. This suggested that these compounds may be, at least, a key factor in rice allelopathy on barnyard grass, and the information presented may contribute to the development of natural herbicides.

Similar active allelochemicals were isolated by Sasikumar et al. (2002). In their study on the allelopathic effects of *Parthenium hysterophorus* leachates on cowpea, pigeonpea, greengram, blackgram and horsegram, the authors reported significant seed germination inhibition for all test crops. Gas chromatographic analysis showed the presence of phenolic acids, namely caffeic, p-coumaric, ferulic, p-hydroxybenzoic and vanillic acids in the leachates from different plant parts (leaf, stem, flower and root) of *P. hysterophorus*. A mixture of allelopathic compounds in bioassays significantly inhibited the germination and vigour index of all test crops. However, leachates from flowers had no inhibitory effect on the germination of blackgram and greengram seeds.

Kato and Kawabata (2002) isolated a growth-inhibiting compound from the acetone extract of 30-day-old lemon balm (*Melissa officinalis*) shoots by means of silica gel column chromatography. This uncharacterized compound inhibited the growth of cress seeds at concentrations higher than 0.3 µg ml\(^{-1}\). Iqba et al. (2002) showed that living buckwheat reduced weed biomass compared to plots without buckwheat. A laboratory study revealed that root exudates from buckwheat (collected from Aomori, Japan) suppressed root and shoot growth of the weeds *Trifolium repens*, *Brassica juncea*, *Amaranthus palmeri*, *Echinochloa crus-galli* and *Digitaria ciliaris* but also that of lettuce, and reduced weed dry weight. Fagomine, 4-piperidone and 2-piperidinemethanol were isolated from a chloroform extract and identified as the active ingredients.

Several allelochemicals have also been characterized from *Helianthus annuus* that inhibit seed germination and seedling growth of *Amaranthus albus*, *Amaranthus viridis*, *Agropyron repens* (*Elymus repens*), *Ambrosia artemisiifolia*, *Avena fatua*, *Celosia cristata* (*C. argentea* var. *cristata*), *Chenopodium album*, *Chloris barbata* (*Chloris barbata*), *Cynodon dactylon*, *Digitaria sanguinalis*, *Dactyloctenium aegyptium*, *D. ciliaris*, *E. crus-galli*, *Flaveria australasica*, *P. hysterophorus*, *Portulaca oleracea*, *Sida spinosa*, *Trianthema portulacastrum* and *Veronica*
persica (Macias et al., 2002). The inhibitory effects of this crop may be utilized for weed management to attain reduced herbicide usage in sustainable agricultural systems (Azania et al., 2003).

Previous studies by Salamci et al. (2007) confirmed that the essential oils of T. aucheranum and T. chiliophyllum, characterized by the relatively high content of 1,8-cineole, camphor, borneol and α-terpineol, exhibited potent inhibitory effects on seed germination and seedling growth of A. retroflexus. All commercialized essential oils act as non-selective, contact herbicides that can provide good but transient weed control. The use of essential oils for weed control in organic agriculture seems promising, but these natural herbicides all act very rapidly and their efficacy is limited by the fact that they probably volatize relatively quickly (Dayan et al., 2009). Other oils such as pine and clover oils have also been used in organic farming systems, but with limited success because the relatively high rate of use required for control makes it expensive compared to only one treatment of glyphosate with the same or even better control of weeds (Dayan et al., 2009).

**Current status of natural herbicides**

Although several natural products from various sources are probably currently under development and targeted against specific weeds across the globe, very little literature is available on the use and environmental impact of natural products in organic agriculture and little success can be reported at present. According to Babua et al. (2003), reasons why so many promising bio-herbicides have failed to reach the commercial phase probably include: (i) the economics of patenting and registration; (ii) inadequate or non-commercial market sizes; and (iii) technological constraints, especially relating to formulation chemistry. Discovery and development of a synthetic chemical herbicide can easily cost US$30 million (Heiny and Templeton, 1993) or more. It is generally expected that the development of a natural product herbicide should cost less. Indeed, two notable successes include COLLEGO™ and BIOMAL™, developed from exotic pathogens, where the development costs were US$1.5 million and US$2.6 million respectively. The costs involved with the development of these two examples of natural products can probably not be accepted as a rule and there are no guarantees that prospective entrepreneurs will experience the same. However, from an ecological perspective natural products are much more favoured (Heiny and Templeton, 1993) as a result of added advantages over classical synthetic weed control agents, including their narrow host ranges that reduce their impact on non-targeted plants in the environment (Rector, 2008), and this alone serves as a driving force for natural product developers to continue with this entrepreneurial business enterprise. Additionally, the quickly expanding organic agriculture industry does not allow synthetic pesticides, including herbicides (Anonymous, 2009), and this provides more momentum for the natural product industry.
In an excellent recent review by Dayan et al. (2009), a number of natural compounds from which bio-herbicides have been commercialized for weed control in organic agriculture have been listed. A few examples include corn gluten meal (e.g. WeedBan™, Corn Weed Blocker™ and Bioscape Bioweed™), a mixture of essential oils and other organic compounds (e.g. Burnout™, Bioorganic™, Weed Zap™ and GreenMatch™) as well as pelargonic acid mixed with related short-chain fatty acids and paraffinic petroleum oil (e.g. Scythe™). However, despite the examples of natural products mentioned above, a tripeptide obtained from the fermentation culture of the actinomycete *Streptomyces hygroscopis* and registered as Bialaphos™ is regarded by Dayan et al. (2009) to be the only true commercialized natural product herbicide to date. It is a pro-herbicide that is metabolized into the active ingredient L-phosphinothricin (Fig. 3.28) in the treated plant.

Bialaphos™ and phosphinothricin inhibit the enzyme glutamine synthetase which is necessary for the production of glutamine and for ammonia detoxification. The elevated ammonia levels in tissues of treated plants stops photosynthesis and results in plant death. Both Bialaphos™ and phosphinothricin are broad-spectrum post-emergence herbicides that can be used for total vegetation control in many agricultural settings or in non-cultivated areas and to desiccate crops before harvest (Dayan et al., 2009).

The list of commercialized bio-herbicides has expanded substantially during the past two decades. However, their mere existence must be considered in view of the following very valid comments by Dayan et al. (2009): (i) as opposed to traditional synthetic herbicides, none of the natural herbicidal compounds allowed for use in organic agriculture are very active and they must, therefore, be applied in relatively large quantities that may lead to undesirable effects on the environment and the soil fauna and microbes, which is in direct opposition with the philosophical positions and purpose of those who practice organic agriculture; (ii) the use of organic weed management tools may be enhanced in the context of an integrated pest management programme that includes sowing multiple crops, extended rotation cycles, mulching, and soil cultivation and cover; (iii) existing natural herbicides show very little crop selectivity and still require laborious application methods to ensure they do not come in contact with the desired crop; and (iv) organic weed management methods may be possible in small-scale farming and high-value crops but do not seem feasible in the production of the agronomic crops such as grains grown in large-scale farming enterprises.

![Fig. 3.28. L-phosphinothricin (redrawn from Dayan et al., 2009).](image-url)
3.6 Natural Compounds from Plants with Bio-stimulatory Potential

Allelochemicals found in plants are probably all secondary metabolites that are distinctive from primary metabolites in that they are generally non-essential for the basic metabolic processes such as respiration and photosynthesis (Richard, 2001). They are numerous and widespread, especially in higher plants (Pillmoor, 1993), and often present in small quantities (1–5%) as compared to primary metabolites (carbohydrates, proteins and lipids). Approximately 88,000–100,000 secondary metabolites have been identified in all plant forms, showing both structural and activity diversity (Verpoorte, 1998). Ecologically, these chemicals play essential roles in attracting pollinators, as adaptations to environmental stresses and serve as chemical defences against insects and higher predators as well as microorganisms (Rechcigl and Rechcigl, 2000). Although the purpose of the production of secondary metabolites in plants has long been argued among researchers, it is now universally accepted that they are produced as a result of abiotic (Beart et al., 1985) and biotic stresses (Bourgaud, et al., 2001), probably as part of a plant defence arsenal. Besides the role secondary metabolites play in plant metabolism, the growth promotion or inhibitory properties of certain natural compounds from plants have been extensively researched (Wu et al., 2002).

Current status of plant products with bio-stimulatory potential

Already, at the end of the millennium, two successful natural products developed in Moldavia (formerly part of the Soviet Union) are Moldstim™ and Pavstim™, extracted from hot peppers (Capsicum annum L.) and leaves of Digitalis purpurea L., respectively (Waller, 1999). Both products have been used on a large scale as plant-growth regulators and for disease control. These developments are excellent examples of how natural plant resources can be exploited and applied in agriculture.

However, from an agricultural perspective, plant extracts containing growth-promoting substances have always been of interest to the research community in terms of the role they could play in addressing future food security issues. The ideal breakthrough would be to identify a plant or plants that contain bio-stimulatory substances promoting growth and resistance to pathogens, as well as yields in agricultural and horticultural crops. At this point it seems appropriate to consider recent discoveries of bio-stimulatory compounds from plants that have the potential to adhere to the ‘ideal breakthrough’ criterion in terms of their application potential as natural products in the agricultural industry.

Extractions from numerous plant species, with bio-stimulatory properties, were identified and evaluated for their commercial potential. Channal et al. (2002b) reported on seed germination as well as seedling growth enhancement of sunflower and soybean by leaf extracts from three tree species
Terefa (2002) reported similar effects for *P. hysterophorus* extracts on tef (*Eragrostis tef*) while Neelam *et al.* (2002) demonstrated similar effects for *Leucaena leucocephala* extracts on wheat (*Triticum aestivum*). However, none of these studies revealed that treatment with the different plant extracts had any effect on the final yields of the crops under investigation.

In this regard, a report by Ferreira and Lourens (2002) demonstrating the effect of a liquid seaweed extract (now trading as a natural product under the name Kelpak™) on improving the yield of canola must be regarded as significant. Kelpak™ applied singly or in combination with the herbicide Clopyralid® at various growth stages of canola (*Brassica napus*) was assessed in a field experiment conducted in South Africa during 1998–1999. Foliar application of 2 L Kelpak ha⁻¹, applied at the four-leaf growth stage, significantly increased the yield of the crop. The active compounds in Kelpak™ are auxins and cytokinin.

In the same year, a study directed towards identifying bio-stimulatory properties in plant extracts was performed by Cruz *et al.* (2002a). The authors treated the roots of bean, maize and tomato with an aqueous leachate of *Callicarpa acuminata* and followed the *in vitro* effects on radicle growth, protein expression, catalase activity, free radical production and membrane lipid peroxidation in the roots. The aqueous extract of *C. acuminata* inhibited the radicle growth of tomato but had no effect on root growth of maize or beans. However, expression of various proteins in the roots of all treated plants was observed. In treated bean roots the expression of an 11.3 kDa protein by the leachate, showing a 99% similarity with subunits of an α-amylase inhibitor found in other beans, was induced. In treated tomato an induced 27.5 kDa protein showed 95% similarity to glutathione-S-transferases of other Solanaceae species. Spectrophotometric analysis and native gels revealed that catalase activity was increased twofold in tomato roots and slightly in bean roots, while no significant changes were observed in treated maize roots. Luminol chemiluminescence levels, a measure of free radicals, increased fourfold in treated tomato roots and twofold in treated bean roots. Oxidative membrane damage in treated roots, measured by lipid peroxidation rates revealed an almost threefold increase in peroxidation in tomato while no effect was observed in maize or beans (Cruz *et al.*, 2002a).

The significance of this study lies in the fact that various metabolic events can be manipulated in plants by treatment with certain plant extracts. What has to be established by researchers is whether these altered metabolic events contribute towards positive or negative physiological changes within the treated plants. The rationale for this type of research lies in the search for natural compounds to be applied in sustainable yield-improving, as well as weed-, pest- and disease-controlling, management systems (Singh *et al.*, 2001). According to the authors, natural compounds isolated from some plants show strong bio-herbicidal activity at high concentrations but at low concentrations these extracts can promote crop seed germination and seedling growth, hence showing a potential to be applied as bio-stimulatory agents or growth-promoting substances in agriculture. There is general
consensus amongst scientists that research in this regard should concentrate on both the inhibitory and stimulatory effect of plant extracts on seed germination, seedling growth and the physiology of other test plants in order to verify the action at hand (Khan et al., 2001; Ameena and George, 2002; Cruz et al., 2002b; Duary, 2002; Obaid and Qasem, 2002).

Probably the most effective compounds to enhance crop yield, crop efficiency and seed vigour have been identified as brassinosteroids (BRs; Mandava, 1979; 1988), first extracted from rape (Brassica napus L.) pollen (Adam and Marquard, 1986). In a recent mini-report, Zullo and Adam (2002) confirmed the prospective agricultural uses of BRs. The assumption of their application potential was made from data collected over the past three decades and only a few examples are presented here. Yield increases that were in most instances significant were reported, as cited by Zullo and Adam (2002), in beans and lettuce (Meudt et al., 1983), rice (Lim, 1987), maize (Lim and Han, 1988), wheat (Takematsu et al., 1988), chickpea (Ramos, 1995) and tomato (Mori et al., 1986). Many other examples of BR use for increasing crop yield can be found in the literature (Kamuro and Takatsuto, 1999; Khripach et al., 1999; Khripach et al., 2000).

Besides their yield-improving effects, BRs have been shown to increase plant growth in crops (Rao et al., 2002) and especially root growth (Müssig et al., 2003), to increase resistance in crops towards low-temperature injury (Kamuro and Takatsuto, 1999) and to increase resistance of potato to infections by Phytophthora infestans and Fusarium sulfureum (Kazakova et al., 1991). Although many BRs, such as 24-epibrassinolide, are commercially available and employed in some countries, more accurate studies on dosage, method and time of application, its suitability for the plant or cultivar, and association with other phytohormones are needed, because many of the results were obtained by experiments performed in greenhouses or small fields (Zullo and Adam, 2002).

A report on a prototype bio-stimulatory natural product developed from a BR-containing extract of Lychnis viscaria came from Roth et al. (2000). In 2003, after 12 years of intensive research under laboratory, greenhouse and field conditions at the University of the Free State, South Africa, a product was listed in Germany as a plant-strengthening agent under the trade name ComCat™ and commercialized by a German company, Agraforum AG. Foliar applications of ComCat™ have been demonstrated to enhance consistently root development in seedlings and final yields in a number of vegetable, fruit and row crops, as well as to induce resistance in crops towards abiotic and biotic stress conditions, and the mechanisms of action were elucidated on both a metabolic and genetic level (unpublished results, Pretorius, J.C. and van der Watt, E., University of the Free State, South Africa). Recently, significant yield increases in tomato, preharvest treated with ComCat™, were reported by Workneh et al. (2009). The authors also claimed more than 70% shelf life extension and higher marketability in tomato fruit harvested from plants treated with ComCat™ during the vegetative growth phase compared to the untreated control under ambient storage conditions. Preharvest ComCat™ treated tomatoes contained lower total soluble sugar levels at
harvest and showed better keeping quality in terms of physiological weight loss and juice content compared to untreated controls. In light of the diverse positive effects of ComCat™ on agricultural and horticultural crops, the product largely adheres to the ‘ideal candidate’ criterion stated earlier. Three BRs have been identified as the main active components of ComCat™ and these include 24-epi-secasterone, 24-epicastasterone and brassinolide (Fig. 3.29).

The future of commercialized bio-stimulants seems positive in light of the elevated costs of fertilizer. In this regard, research in terms of the use of bio-stimulants in combination with fertilizer levels lower than the recommended standard for different crops seems to be important in an attempt to lower the input costs that have become a gloomy issue for farmers recently.

3.7 Conclusions

Discovery programmes by the agrochemical industry are mostly driven by large-scale synthetic programmes followed by screening to identify potential new bio-pesticides, including antimicrobials and herbicides. Most companies have a more modest effort to evaluate natural products from outside sources and, to a lesser extent, from in-house isolation efforts. Although the literature is replete with reports of the isolation and characterization of phytotoxins from many sources, and many of these compounds have been patented for potential use, the use of natural or natural-product-derived herbicides in conventional agriculture is limited (Dayan et al., 2009).

Since the Second World War, traditional agricultural practices have included the use of synthetic chemicals for the management of plant pathogens, pests and weeds. This has, without any doubt, increased crop production but with some deterioration of the environment and human health (Cutler, 1999). Research indicates that even if one never uses pesticides, one can still be exposed to them by being a consumer of commodities that others have treated with pesticides, e.g. through food.
In addition to the target pathogen, pesticides may kill various beneficial organisms and their toxic forms can persist in the soil. The increasing incidence of resistance among pathogens towards synthetic chemicals is also a cause for serious concern. The above is not only of major concern to the developed countries, where consumer preferences are for organically produced foods, but also in the developing world, such as Africa, where synthetic pesticides are too expensive for subsistence farming. Because of these problems there is a need to find alternatives to synthetic pesticides.

Among the various alternatives, natural plant products that are biodegradable and eco-friendly are receiving the attention of scientists worldwide. Such products derived from higher plants and microbes are relatively bioefferacious, economical and environmentally safe and can be ideal candidates for use as agrochemicals (Macias et al., 2002). Additionally, the manufacturers of natural bio-stimulants applied in agriculture claim increased production, profit increases, cutting of operating costs and reduced fertilizer costs with no detrimental effect to the environment (Chen et al., 2002). A number of plants showing the potential to act as donor plants for these natural products have been outlined in this chapter.

References


4 Antimicrobials of Plant Origin to Prevent the Biodeterioration of Grains

K.A. Raveesha

Department of Studies in Botany, University of Mysore, Manasagangotri, India

Abstract

A significant portion of stored food becomes unfit for human consumption due to the biodeterioration of grains. The incessant and indiscriminate use of synthetic chemicals in crop protection has been one of the major factors in polluting soil and water bodies. Thus, there is a need to search for effective, efficient and eco-friendly alternative methods for preventing the biodeterioration of grains during storage. Antimicrobials of plant origin are an important alternative, which could be better exploited to prevent grain biodeterioration. Fungi are significant destroyers of food so the biodeterioration of grains can be prevented by inhibiting fungal growth. Of late, many plant extracts have been screened for antifungal activity. Decalepis hamiltonii Wight & Am. (Asclepiadaceae) and Psoralea corylifolia L. (Leguminosae) have revealed highly significant antifungal activity. The antifungal active compounds from these plants have been isolated by antifungal activity guided assays and characterized using NMR, IR and mass spectral studies. The biomolecules responsible for the activity were identified as 2H-Furo[2,3-H]-1-benzopyran-2-one in P. corylifolia and 2-hydroxy-4-methoxybenzaldehyde in D. hamiltonii. In vitro and in vivo evaluations of these biomolecules have shown promising inhibitory activity of important biodeterioration-causing fungi. Comparative evaluation of the bioactive compounds with those of the routinely used chemical fungicides is highly encouraging. Results suggest the potential of these biomolecules for commercial exploitation to develop eco-friendly herbal remedies for preventing the biodeterioration of grains during storage.

4.1 Introduction

Storage of food is a necessity to ensure the availability of food throughout the year. Stored foods are prone to postharvest loss in quality and quantity due to infestation by different groups of organisms. Biodeterioration may be defined as the quality and quantity loss of stored food caused by organisms. The organisms broadly responsible for such deterioration are microbes, insects and rodents. Among microbes, fungi are significant destroyers of
food, particularly species of *Aspergillus* and *Penicillium*. Grain produced is not a grain until it is consumed without quality loss (Neergaard, 1977). In spite of the developments in the methods of food preservation, nearly 30% of the food produced is lost during storage, due to poor handling and storage practices.

The incessant and indiscriminate use of chemical pesticides in agriculture has resulted in drug resistance, residual toxicity, and has caused soil and water pollution. This has necessitated the search for natural eco-friendly alternatives, which are biodegradable and non-toxic to non-target species. Plants are a repository of novel biomolecules with various biological activities. Among the 250,000–500,000 species of plants available on earth, the number of plants screened phytochemically is a small percentage, among these the number of plants screened for various biological activities is infinitesimally small. In recent years there have been serious efforts to screen plants for various biological activities and the scientific endeavour is focused mainly on utilizing plants for human health and least towards plants for plant health. Considering the fact that large amounts of synthetic pesticides known to cause environmental pollution are used in present-day agriculture, there is an urgent need to search for natural eco-friendly alternatives. Antimicrobials of plant origin appear to be one of the safest and eco-friendly alternatives. Hence, there is a need to search for antimicrobials of plant origin to manage field crop loss in general and to prevent biodeterioration of grains during storage in particular.

Clinical microbiologists have two reasons to be interested in antimicrobials of plant origin. First, it is very likely that these phytochemicals or biomolecules will find their way into the arsenal of prescribed antimicrobial drugs. Second, the public is becoming increasingly aware of the problems with and side effects from the over prescription and traditional use of antibiotics (Cowan, 1999).

Agricultural microbiologists have many more reasons to be interested in antimicrobials of plant origin: (i) it is very likely that these phytochemicals may find their way into the array of antimicrobial drugs prescribed; (ii) it is known that the effective life span of any antimicrobial is limited, hence newer antimicrobials are necessary; (iii) it may help to overcome the rising incidence of drug resistance amongst pathogenic microbes and the mechanism of action could be different; (iv) the phytochemicals present in plant extracts may alleviate the side effects that are often associated with synthetic antimicrobials; (v) phytomedicines usually have multiple effects on the plant body and their actions are often growth promoting, more systemic and beyond the symptomatic treatments of disease; and (vi) it may help in developing cost effective remedies that are affordable to the population (Cowan, 1999; Doughari, 2006).

Finding healing powers in plants for human health needs is an ancient idea and practice. Searching herbal remedies for crop protection in general and prevention of biodeterioration in particular is recently gaining importance. Agricultural microbiologists around the world are evaluating a number of plant extracts for antimicrobial activity against important plant
pathogens *in vitro*. Some attempts are also being made to identify the potential of plant extracts to prevent biodeterioration of grains during storage.

The body of literature available in the area of antimicrobials of plant origin is voluminous and concerns different areas of study. In the present context, the literature reviewed concerns mainly the antifungal agents of plant origin with specific reference to important biodeterioration-causing fungi. The body of literature available may be broadly categorized under the following headings:

- *In vitro* evaluation of plant extracts for antifungal activity against important biodeterioration-causing fungi.
- *In vitro* evaluation of the active compounds for antifungal activity against important biodeterioration-causing fungi.
- Isolation and identification of the antifungal active compounds from plants.

4.2 *In Vitro* Evaluation of Plant Extracts for Antifungal Activity against Important Biodeterioration-causing Fungi

Screening plant extracts for antimicrobial activity is the first step towards the isolation of the active component. Water and/or different organic solvents, singly or in combination, are generally used in the preparation extracts.

**Aqueous extracts**

Antifungal activity assays of leaf extract obtained from *Ocimum sanctum*, *Adhatoda vasica*, *Emblica officinalis*, *Saussurea lappa*, *Glycyrrhiza glabra*, *Zingiber officinale*, *Piper longum*, *Piper nigrum*, *Onosma bracteatum*, *Tinospora cordifolia*, *Fagonia cretica* and *Terminalia chebula* were tested against *Aspergillus flavus* at 10% and 50% concentration. *P. longum* and *Z. officinale* showed significant antifungal activity (Farooq and Pathak, 1998). Crude extracts of 40 Iranian and Canadian plants were tested for antifungal activity against several species of *Aspergillus*. Of these, 26 plants (65%) showed activity and the spectrum of activity was wide in case of *Diplotaenia damavandica*, *Heracleum pessicum*, *Sanguisorba minor* and *Zataria multiflora* (Sardari *et al.*, 1998).

Sinha and Saxena (1999) conducted an antifungal activity assay of leaf extract of *Allium cepa* and *Allium sativum* (garlic) against *Aspergillus niger* and reported that the garlic was more effective in inhibiting the germination of spores and mycelial growth of the fungus. Mahmoud (1999) evaluated the antifungal activity of five different concentrations of aqueous extract of *Lupinus albus*, *Ammi vis naga* and *Xanthium pungens* against *A. flavus* and production of aflatoxins and reported the inhibition of mycelial growth of *A. flavus* at 2, 4, 6, 8 and 10 mg/ml.

Aqueous extracts of 50 plants belonging to 27 families were screened for antifungal activity against *A. flavus* and *A. niger* and it was found that only...
four plants, namely *Trachysper neumammi*, *Allium sativum*, *Syzygium aromaticum* and *Plectranthus rugosus* were effective against both species of *Aspergillus* (Singh and Singh, 2000). Aqueous extract of *Terminalia australis* has been reported to be effective in inhibiting *Aspergillus* strains by Carpano et al. (2003).

Aqueous extracts of *Aloe barbadensis*, *Datura stramonium*, *Zingiber officinale*, *Murraya koenigii* and *Azadirachta indica* were evaluated against species of *Aspergillus* by employing the poisoned food technique and seed inoculation method. All the plant extracts showed significant inhibitory activity. *D. stramonium* and *A. indica* showed higher activity (Sharma et al., 2003). The extracts of *Toona ciliata* (stem bark) and *Amoora rohituka* (stem bark) exhibited significant *in vitro* antifungal activities against *A. flavus* at 20 and 30% concentration (Chowdhury et al., 2003).

**Solvent extracts**

Welsh onion ethanol extract was tested against *A. flavus* and *A. parasiticus* for mycelial growth inhibitory activity and aflatoxins production (Fan and Chen, 1999). Sharma et al. (2002) evaluated an alcoholic extract of *Semecarpus anacardium* L. against *Aspergillus fumigatus* at different concentrations (20–400 μg/ml) and observed complete inhibition at 40 μg/ml.

Petroleum ether and methanolic extract of *Eupatorium ayardana* were tested for antifungal activity at 250, 500, 750 and 1000 μg/ml against *A. niger* and *A. flavus*. Petroleum ether extract showed higher antifungal activity than the methanolic extract (Gupta et al., 2002). An ethyl acetate soluble fraction of acidified aqueous mother liquor and buffer soluble fraction of neutral mother liquor of stem bark of *Alangium salvifolium* were tested for antifungal activity against species of *Aspergillus* by Katyayani et al., (2002) and reported significant activity at 10 mg/ml concentration.

The methanolic extract of stem bark of *Ailanthus excelsa* partitioned with chloroform recorded significant antifungal activity against *A. niger*, *A. fumigatus*, *Penicillium frequentans*, and *Penicillium notatum* at 300, 90, 70, and 140 μg/ml concentrations, respectively (Joshi et al., 2003). Moderate antifungal activity of ethanolic extracts of the trunk bark of *Zanthoxylum fagara*, *Z. elephantiasis* and *Z. martinicense* was observed against *A. niger*, and *A. flavus* at 500 and 1000 μg/disc (Hurtado et al., 2003). Ethanolic extract of seeds of *Piper guineense* and other solvent fractions obtained by column chromatography tested against *A. flavus*, revealed highly significant antifungal effect (Ngane et al., 2003). Methanol and methyl chloride extracts of 20 Indonesian plants were tested for antifungal activity against *A. fumigatus* at 10 mg/ml by the poisoned food technique. Extracts of six plants, viz. *Terminalia catappa*, *Swietenia mahagoni*, *Phyllanthus acuminatus*, *Ipomoea spp.*, *Tylophora asthmatica* and *Hyptis brevipes* recorded significant antifungal activity (Goun et al., 2003).

Extracts of aerial parts of *Achillea clavennae*, *Achillea holoferica*, *Achillea lingulata* and *Achillea millefolium* (hexane:ether:methanol = 1:1:1) were tested for antifungal activity by disc diffusion assay against *A. niger*. All four species
Antimicrobials to Prevent Biodeterioration of Grains

exhibited antifungal activity against tested strains (Stojanovic et al., 2005).

Organic solvent leaf extracts of two Moroccan Cistus L. species Cistus villosum L. and Cistus monspeliensis L. (Cistaceae) used in traditional medicine were tested for their antifungal properties against A. fumigatus. The extracts differed in their antifungal activities. C. villosum extracts exhibited higher activity than C. monspeliensis (Bouamama et al., 2006).

Antifungal activity of Trapa natans L. fruit rind, extracted in different solvents with increasing polarity was observed and 1,4-dioxan, chloroform, acetone, dimethylformamide, ethanol, and water did not reveal any activity against A. niger (Parekh and Chanda, 2007).

4.3 In Vitro Evaluation of the Active Components for Antifungal Activity against Important Biodeterioration-causing Fungi

Plants possess unlimited ability to produce secondary metabolites and more than 12,000 of them have been isolated, which is probably less than 10% of the total. Useful antimicrobial phytochemicals are phenolics and poly phenols, quinones, flavones, flavonoids and flavanols, tannins, coumarins, terpenoids and essential oils, alkaloids, and lectins and polypeptides. Cowan (1999) has critically reviewed the antimicrobials of plant origin and has listed the plants with antimicrobial activity.

Many secondary metabolites have been identified and many more are yet to be discovered. There is growing evidence that most of these compounds are involved in the interaction of plants with other species, primarily in the defence of the plant from plant pests. Secondary compounds represent a large reservoir of chemical structures with biological activity (Duke, 1990). This resource is largely untapped for use as pesticides.

Considering the advantages of organic pesticides over synthetic pesticides, nowadays, attempts are made by many workers to screen plants for antimicrobial activity, isolate and characterize the bioactive compounds from different parts. Such attempts to isolate antimicrobials of plant origin and test their efficacy against different storage fungi to prevent biodeterioration of grains are, however, very few.

The high terpene hydrocarbon content in the oils of chamomile, lavender, eucalyptus, and geranium are responsible for their antifungal activity against A. niger and Aspergillus ochraceus (Lis-Balchin et al., 1998). Antimicrobial compounds, such as 3-0-methylveracevine, 3-0-[3-(2,2,2-trifluoroethoxy)]-5-(methoxybenzoyl) veraveine 3-0-(3,5-diiodobenzoyl) veracevine, 3-0-(3-thienoyl) veracevine, isolated from the seeds of Schoenocaulon officinale showed highly significant antifungal activity against A. flavus and A. niger (Oros and Ujvary, 1999).

Mathekga et al. (2000) isolated an acylated form of a phloroglucinol from Helichrysum caespititium. The structural elucidation revealed that the compound was 2-methyl-4,2′-4′(6′-trihydroxy-3′-(2-methylpropanoylphenyl)-2'-0-enylacetate). This compound completely inhibited the mycelial growth
of *A. niger* and *A. flavus* at 1.0 μg/ml. Bioactive compounds 12β-hydroxysandarocopimar-15-one and 2-propionoxyo-β-chesorcylic acid isolated from methanolic extract of leaves of *Trichilia heudelotti* showed highly significant antifungal activity against *A. niger* at 100 μg/ml (Aladesanmi and Odediran, 2000).

Investigations on the antifungal active methanol fraction of the root of *Epinetrum villosum* (Exell) Troupin (Menispermaceae) led to the isolation of the bisbenzylisoquinoline alkaloid cocsoline, which displayed significant antifungal activity with a minimum inhibitory concentration (MIC) for *A. flavus* and *A. niger* of 31.25 g/ml (Otshudi et al., 2005).

Phytochemical analysis of the leaves of *Vernonia amygdalina* yielded two known sesquiterpene lactones, vernolide and vernodalol, that exhibited significant antifungal activity. Vernolides exhibited high activity and the 50% lethal concentration (LC50) values ranged from 0.2 to 0.4 mg/ml for *P. notatum*, *A. flavus*, *A. niger* and *Mucor hiemalis*. Vernodalol showed moderate inhibitory activity against *A. flavus*, *A. niger* and *P. notatum* with LC50 values of 0.3, 0.4 and 0.5 mg/ml, respectively (Erasto et al., 2006).

### 4.4 Isolation and Identification of the Antifungal Active Component from Plants

The isolation and identification of antimicrobials of plant origin involve the following stepwise approach:

- Selection of the plant, followed by the selection of the plant part.
- Selection of appropriate solvent for extraction.
- Separation and purification of the active component.
- Characterization and structural elucidation of the active component.
- *In vitro* evaluation of the active component for antimicrobial activity against test fungi.
- *In vivo* evaluation of the active component for antifungal activity.

Employing bioactivity-directed fractionation and isolation (BDFI) for a specific antimicrobial activity against biodeterioration-causing fungi is advantageous. Two plants have been extensively studied using this method, namely *Psoralea corylifolia* and *Daecalepis hamiltonii*. The active component responsible for antifungal activity has been isolated, characterized and the activity has been demonstrated *in vitro*. Further investigations have been done to prove its efficacy to prevent biodeterioration *in vivo*.

#### Potential of 2H-furo[2,3-H]-1-benzopyran-2-one isolated from *Psoralea corylifolia* L. to prevent the biodeterioration of maize

*Psoralea corylifolia* L. (Leguminosae) is an annual herb (Fig. 4.1) reported to have medicinal properties. In traditional medicine, the seeds (Fig. 4.2) are used in the treatment of psoriasis, leucoderma and inflammatory disease of
Antimicrobials to Prevent Biodeterioration of Grains

Fig. 4.1. *Psoralea corylifolia* L. (plant).

Fig. 4.2. *Psoralea corylifolia* L. (seeds).
the skin. An antifungal activity guided assay of different solvent extracts revealed that petroleum ether and methanol extracts were highly active. Hence a combination of petroleum ether and methanol was employed for the isolation of the antimicrobial active component from the seeds of *P. corylifolia* (Kiran and Raveesha, 2004).

*Isolation and characterization of the antifungal active component*

Powdered seeds of *P. corylifolia* were refluxed in a petroleum ether and methanol mixture [9:1(v/v)] in a Soxhlet apparatus for 8 h at 60°C. An excess of solvent was removed by distillation under reduced pressure. The concentrated extract was cooled for 48 h at 5°C to obtain the pure compound as transparent, colourless, rectangular prism-shaped crystals (Fig. 4.3). The average yield of the compound was 5 mg per 25 g of seed. The melting point was 138°C. The purity of the compound was confirmed using thin-layer chromatography (TLC) and the Rf value was 0.47.

The bioactive compound was subjected to infra red (IR), 1H-NMR, 13C-NMR (Al-Fatimi et al., 2006) and gas chromatography–mass spectral (GC–MS) analyses (Yanez et al., 2005) for structural elucidation.

The IR spectrum showed an absorption band in the region of 1652.9 cm⁻¹ for C–O-stretching. Further absorption bands at 1550.7 cm⁻¹ and 1454 cm⁻¹ were due to the presence of a coumarin ring oxygen and a furan ring oxygen, respectively.

In 1H-NMR spectra, the signal due to C₃–H and C₄–H of coumarin appeared at δ 6.41 as a doublet and at δ 7.81 as a singlet. The aromatic protons

![Fig. 4.3. Stereo micrograph of the active compound [2H-furo[2,3-H]-1-benzopyran-2-one] isolated from seeds of *P. corylifolia*, showing transparent, colourless, rectangular, prism-shaped crystals.](image)
Antimicrobials to Prevent Biodeterioration of Grains

(C7 + C8) are mingled together and appeared at δ 7.7 as a multiplet. The signal due to the C3' and C2 protons appeared at 6.84 and 7.49 as a doublet, respectively.

13C-NMR data of the bioactive compound showed peaks at δ 146.85(C2), 143.8 (C4), 119.77(C3), 115.5(C7), 114.76(C8), 2 106.3(C3'), and 99.86 (C2'), which are inconsistent with structure.

GC–MS analysis showed a molecular ion peak at M/z 186.17 consistent with the molecular formula C11H6O3. The peak at M/z 158 was due to the formation of the coumarin cation. The recorded chromatogram of the plot matched with the chromatogram of an already known compound, 2H-furo[2,3-H]-1-benzopyran-2-one. Figure 4.4 presents the molecular structure of the bioactive compound.

In vitro evaluation of the antifungal active component

Ten species of Aspergillus, viz. A. flavus, A. niger, A. terreus, A. tamarii, A. flavus oryzae, A. fumigatus, A. candidus, A. ochraceous, A. flavipes and A. flavus columnaris, and two species of Penicillium, viz., P. chrysogenum and P. notatum, isolated from maize seeds and known to cause biodeterioration of grains served as test fungi for the antifungal activity assay using the poisoned food technique.

The poisoned food technique is as follows. Malt extract salt agar (MESA) medium amended with different concentrations of the bioactive compound were prepared and poured into sterile Petri plates and allowed to cool and solidify. Mycelium discs (5 mm diameter) of 7-day-old cultures of species of Aspergillus and Penicillium were placed at the centre of the plates and incubated at 25 ± 1°C for 7 days. The MESA medium without the bioactive compound served as a control. The colony diameter was measured. Similarly the fungicides Captan (C9H8Cl3NO2S) and Thiram (C6H12N2S4) were also tested against all the test fungi at the recommended dose of 2000 ppm concentration for comparative evaluation. The percentage inhibition of mycelial growth if any was determined by the formula PI = C – T/C × 100; where C is the diameter of control colony and T is the diameter of treated colony (Pinto et al., 1998). MICs for each of the test fungi were determined on the basis of the concentration needed to inhibit totally the test fungi (Fig. 4.5).

The total inhibition of A. flavus was observed at 100 ppm. A. niger and A. fumigatus were totally inhibited at 500 and 600 ppm, respectively. A. flavus oryzae and A. flavus columnaris were totally inhibited at 700 ppm. A. ochraceous and A. flavipes were totally inhibited at 900 ppm. Total inhibition of

Fig. 4.4. Molecular structure of the bioactive compound, 2H-furo [2,3-H]-1-benzopyran-2-one, isolated from seeds of P. corylitolia.
A. tamarii, A. terreus and A. candidus was not observed even at 1000 ppm. *Penicillium notatum* and *P. chrysogenum* were totally inhibited at 800 ppm and 900 ppm concentration, respectively.

The concentration of the bioactive compound needed for total inhibition of *Aspergillus* and *Penicillium* species was much lower than the recommended dose of the test fungicides.

**In vivo evaluation of the active component to prevent the biodeterioration of maize**

Maize grains naturally infected with diverse species of *Aspergillus* and *Penicillium* were treated with 250, 500, 1000 and 1500 ppm concentration of the bioactive compound. Untreated seeds served as a control. The treated and untreated seeds were stored at room temperature (30 ± 2°C) for 4 months and the moisture content of the seed sample was maintained at 13.5% (Janardhana et al., 1999). Samples were drawn at regular intervals of 30, 60, 90 and 120 days from each treatment and subjected to seed mycoflora analysis employing the standard method (ISTA, 1999), determination of protein content (Lowry et al., 1951) and carbohydrate content (Dubios et al., 1956) to assess the level of biodeterioration.

Results revealed a significant reduction in the seed mycoflora in all treatments with a total elimination of seed-borne fungi including species of *Aspergillus* and *Penicillium* in the grains treated with 1000 ppm and 1500 ppm concentration of the bioactive compound in all the storage periods tested. No
change in protein and carbohydrate content was observed in the grains treated with 1000 and 1500 ppm even after 4 months of storage, suggesting that the active compound, 2H-furo[2,3-H]-1-benzopyran-2-one isolated from seeds of *P. corylifolia* L. could be exploited to prevent the biodeterioration of grains.

**Potential of 2-hydroxy-4-methoxybenzaldehyde isolated from *Decalepis hamiltonii* Wight & Arn. to prevent biodeterioration of paddy**

*Decalepis hamiltonii* Wight & Arn., a member of the family Asclepiadaceae, is an important medicinal plant widely used in traditional medicine. The rhizome (Fig. 4.6) of this plant is largely used in South India for pickling.

An antifungal activity assay of different solvent extracts of the fresh rhizome of this plant revealed highly significant activity in the petroleum ether extract against seed-borne fungal pathogens (Mohana *et al*., 2006). Further experimentation conducted to isolate and characterize the antifungal active principle from the petroleum phenolic fraction using chloroform as a...
solvent for TLC revealed the presence of seven bands. An antifungal activity assay of each of these bands revealed that band five with an Rf value of 0.77 showed significant antifungal activity, whereas the other bands did not show any antifungal activity. Light blue fluorescence at 365 nm was observed.

The active principle was isolated and subjected to ¹H-NMR, ¹³C-NMR and MS analysis to confirm the identity of the compound. The ¹H-NMR analysis of the compound showed NMR peaks at δ 3.85 (s, -OCH₃), 6.52 (dd, J = 2 Hz; 3-H), 6.55 (d, J = 7 Hz; 5-H), 7.40 (d, J = 7 Hz; 6-H), 9.70 (s, CHO), 11.6 (s, -OH) functional groups. ¹³C-NMR analysis of the compounds showed eight carbon signals 135.6 (1-CH), 108.7 (3-CH), 167.2 (C of carbonyl), 101.05 (5-CH), 164.8 (2-C), 115.5 (C), 194.7 (6-CH), and 56.09 (CH₃) and its identity was confirmed by MS analysis [m/z (% abundance): 57(48), 95(46), 108(24), 121(20), 151(100), 152(70)]. The strong molecular ion peak (m/z, 152) and stronger M-1 ion peak (m/z, 151) observed were characteristic of an aromatic aldehyde. The melting point of the active compound is 46°C. Results revealed that the active compound responsible for the activity was 2-hydroxy-4-methoxybenzaldehyde (Fig. 4.7), reported in the literature by Nagaraju et al. (2001).

The active component isolated was subjected to an in vitro antifungal activity assay by the poisoned food technique and in vivo experiments to evaluate the potential of this active compound to prevent the biodeterioration of paddy during storage.

An in vitro antifungal activity assay against important seed-borne fungi associated with paddy known to cause biodeterioration during storage revealed a highly significant inhibitory activity against the test fungi. Complete inhibition of the test fungi was observed at 650 μg/ml of the compound (Table 4.1). Further in vivo experimentation done to assess the efficacy of the active principle to prevent biodeterioration of paddy up to 90 days of storage revealed a high potency of the compound to prevent biodeterioration of grains. The percentage incidence of seed-borne fungal species decreased significantly in the samples treated with 1 g/kg of the active compound. Comparative efficacy studies revealed that the concentration of the active compound needed to prevent growth of fungi responsible for biodeterioration of paddy was much less than that of thiram (2 g/kg) (Table 4.2).

![Fig. 4.7. Molecular structure of the bioactive compound, 2-hydroxy-4-methoxybenzaldehyde isolated from the rhizome of *Decalepis hamiltonii* Wight & Arn.](image-url)
## Table 4.1

The antifungal activity of 2-hydroxy-4-methoxybenzaldehyde isolated from *D. hamiltonii* and that of thiram against phytopathogenic fungi isolated from paddy.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Concentration of active compound (µg/ml)</th>
<th>Alternaria alternata</th>
<th>Drechslera tetramera</th>
<th>Fusarium oxysporum</th>
<th>Fusarium proliferatum</th>
<th>Pyricularia oryzae</th>
<th>Trichoconis padwickii</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>40</td>
<td>3.25 ± 0.3</td>
<td>3.34 ± 0.2</td>
<td>11.47 ± 0.3</td>
<td>12.72 ± 0.4</td>
<td>0.00 ± 0.0</td>
<td>2.10 ± 0.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>60</td>
<td>6.09 ± 0.5</td>
<td>6.6 ± 0.6</td>
<td>24.33 ± 0.3</td>
<td>23.35 ± 0.1</td>
<td>5.66 ± 0.4</td>
<td>3.61 ± 0.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>80</td>
<td>11.33 ± 0.4</td>
<td>19.72 ± 0.4</td>
<td>39.31 ± 0.4</td>
<td>42.30 ± 0.4</td>
<td>10.34 ± 0.2</td>
<td>8.84 ± 0.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>16.71 ± 0.5</td>
<td>24.20 ± 0.6</td>
<td>53.05 ± 0.3</td>
<td>51.63 ± 0.2</td>
<td>14.36 ± 0.4</td>
<td>11.88 ± 0.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>100</td>
<td>21.82 ± 0.7</td>
<td>34.60 ± 0.5</td>
<td>56.90 ± 0.5</td>
<td>57.58 ± 0.4</td>
<td>17.77 ± 0.4</td>
<td>12.64 ± 0.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>150</td>
<td>34.34 ± 0.7</td>
<td>45.89 ± 0.6</td>
<td>68.53 ± 0.3</td>
<td>68.06 ± 0.5</td>
<td>22.64 ± 0.2</td>
<td>24.67 ± 0.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>200</td>
<td>43.07 ± 0.6</td>
<td>67.10 ± 0.3</td>
<td>71.26 ± 1.2</td>
<td>79.06 ± 0.3</td>
<td>26.60 ± 0.3</td>
<td>26.55 ± 0.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>250</td>
<td>59.94 ± 0.7</td>
<td>86.69 ± 0.4</td>
<td>83.14 ± 0.4</td>
<td>86.21 ± 0.3</td>
<td>42.76 ± 0.7</td>
<td>31.41 ± 0.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>300</td>
<td>64.78 ± 0.7</td>
<td>91.35 ± 0.5</td>
<td>90.07 ± 0.4</td>
<td>92.78 ± 0.6</td>
<td>56.57 ± 0.6</td>
<td>37.18 ± 0.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>350</td>
<td>76.14 ± 0.5</td>
<td>100.0 ± 0.0</td>
<td>98.33 ± 0.7</td>
<td>100.0 ± 0.0</td>
<td>63.54 ± 2.3</td>
<td>41.75 ± 1.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>400</td>
<td>91.49 ± 1.1</td>
<td>100.0 ± 0.0</td>
<td>100.0 ± 0.0</td>
<td>100.0 ± 0.0</td>
<td>67.94 ± 0.4</td>
<td>49.56 ± 0.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>450</td>
<td>100.0 ± 0.0</td>
<td>100.0 ± 0.0</td>
<td>100.0 ± 0.0</td>
<td>100.0 ± 0.0</td>
<td>78.19 ± 0.5</td>
<td>65.00 ± 0.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>500</td>
<td>100.0 ± 0.0</td>
<td>100.0 ± 0.0</td>
<td>100.0 ± 0.0</td>
<td>100.0 ± 0.0</td>
<td>85.88 ± 0.7</td>
<td>76.19 ± 0.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>550</td>
<td>100.0 ± 0.0</td>
<td>100.0 ± 0.0</td>
<td>100.0 ± 0.0</td>
<td>100.0 ± 0.0</td>
<td>89.79 ± 0.6</td>
<td>90.08 ± 0.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>600</td>
<td>100.0 ± 0.0</td>
<td>100.0 ± 0.0</td>
<td>100.0 ± 0.0</td>
<td>100.0 ± 0.0</td>
<td>97.57 ± 0.3</td>
<td>100.0 ± 0.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>650</td>
<td>100.0 ± 0.0</td>
<td>100.0 ± 0.0</td>
<td>100.0 ± 0.0</td>
<td>100.0 ± 0.0</td>
<td>100.0 ± 0.0</td>
<td>100.0 ± 0.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Thiram</td>
<td>100.0 ± 0.0</td>
<td>100.0 ± 0.0</td>
<td>100.0 ± 0.0</td>
<td>100.0 ± 0.0</td>
<td>100.0 ± 0.0</td>
<td>100.0 ± 0.0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Data given are mean of four replicates ± standard error.

Analysis of variance (ANOVA) d.f. = 15 at $P < 0.0001$. 

---

It seems there are inconsistencies in the data representation and some values are not clearly presented. The table needs to be reviewed and corrected for a clear interpretation.
Table 4.2. Effect of 2-hydroxy-4-methoxy-benzaldehyde isolated from *D. hamiltonii* and thiram on seed-borne fungi of paddy stored up to 90 days.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Storage periods (days)</th>
<th>Untreated</th>
<th>0.5 g/kg active compound</th>
<th>1 g/kg active compound</th>
<th>Thiram (2 g/kg)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>0</td>
<td>30</td>
<td>60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Alternaria</em> spp.</td>
<td></td>
<td>22 ± 0.5</td>
<td>26 ± 0.5</td>
<td>28 ± 0.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Aspergillus</em> spp.</td>
<td></td>
<td>42 ± 0.8</td>
<td>51 ± 1.2</td>
<td>64 ± 0.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Curvularia</em> spp.</td>
<td></td>
<td>28 ± 0.6</td>
<td>27 ± 0.5</td>
<td>31 ± 0.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Drechslera</em> spp.</td>
<td></td>
<td>41 ± 0.8</td>
<td>40 ± 0.8</td>
<td>44 ± 0.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Fusarium</em> spp.</td>
<td></td>
<td>36 ± 0.3</td>
<td>42 ± 0.7</td>
<td>49 ± 0.9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Penicillium</em> spp.</td>
<td></td>
<td>21 ± 0.4</td>
<td>34 ± 0.8</td>
<td>42 ± 0.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Pythium</em> spp.</td>
<td></td>
<td>22 ± 0.5</td>
<td>26 ± 0.8</td>
<td>27 ± 0.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Triticum</em> spp.</td>
<td></td>
<td>23 ± 0.7</td>
<td>25 ± 0.5</td>
<td>21 ± 0.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Triticum</em> padwickii</td>
<td></td>
<td>13 ± 0.4</td>
<td>16 ± 0.8</td>
<td>21 ± 0.5</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Per cent incidence is based on four replicates with 100 seeds each, F = 321.64; P < 0.001.
The evaluation of the bioactive compound to understand the impact on the nutritional quality of the paddy grains stored up to 90 days revealed that 1 g/kg treatment is effective in preventing biodeterioration of paddy grains without affecting the nutritional quality in terms of dry matter loss, lipid, carbohydrate and protein content (Fig. 4.8a–d), suggesting that 2-hydroxy-4-methoxy-benzaldehyde is an important antimicrobial of plant origin that could be exploited to prevent biodeterioration of grains during storage (Mohana et al., 2009).

Even though a few antimicrobial active components have been isolated and characterized by earlier workers, evaluations of these to assess their potency to prevent biodeterioration of grains are lacking. The active compounds isolated from the seeds of *P. corylifolia* L. and from the rhizome of *D. hamiltonii* Wight & Arn. have been successively evaluated to assess their potency to

![Fig. 4.8.](image-url) (a–d) Comparative efficacy of the bioactive compound 2-hydroxy-4-methoxy-benzaldehyde isolated from *D. hamiltonii* (0.5 g/kg and 1 g/kg) and thiram (2 g/kg) on fungi inducing nutritional losses in paddy grains stored up to 90 days.
prevent the biodeterioration of grains during storage. *D. hamiltonii* is an important edible plant and thus has an additional advantage as a herbal, eco-friendly remedy for the prevention of grain biodeterioration. Further investigations on the standardization of methods for high yield of the active compounds, toxicological aspects, development of formulations, treatment procedures and a package of practices to be adapted may pave the way for commercial exploitation.

4.5 Conclusion

Plants have been over exploited for human health needs while under exploited for plant health needs. One of the possible reasons for this may be the high-input cost that could be made good in human health care, while it may be difficult in plant health care. Considering the cost of environmental pollution and other related damages caused by the use of chemical pesticides in crop protection, the development of eco-friendly natural pesticides is a necessity. Screening plants for antimicrobial activity against phytopathogens in general and against biodeterioration-causing fungi in particular is the first step towards this goal. Subsequent to demonstrating the science behind the antimicrobial activity, research needs to be focused on developing an appropriate, cost-effective package of practices employing biotechnological approaches. Some of the possible approaches to decreasing the cost of production are: (i) identify the gene responsible for the production of the active component and considerably enhance the yield of the active component through bioengineering; (ii) isolate and identify the endophytes, if any, associated with the production of the active compound and develop fermentative methods for the large-scale production of the active component; (iii) develop a package of practice, preferably utilizing the edible plant part pieces or powder directly as an amendment in an appropriate quantity during grain storage; and (iv) the chemical synthesis of the active compound.

References


Some Natural Proteinaceous and Polyketide Compounds in Plant Protection and their Potential in Green Consumerization

L.A. SHCHERBAKOVA

Russian Research Institute of Phytopathology, Moscow, Russia

Abstract

Plant protection from diseases with the use of natural compounds, which are indigenous and biodegradable in the environment, fits the purpose of green consumerization. Natural compounds controlling plant pathogens belong to different chemical classes and are produced by a wide range of organisms. The structural and functional diversity of these compounds provides a great potential in crop protection technologies in correspondence with green consumerization objectives. Disease prevention by natural compounds results from either direct or plant-mediated influences on targeted pathogens. Some natural substances affecting causative agents directly do not produce a biocidal effect but specifically attack pathways related to their pathogenicity. Biogenic compounds influencing plants induce resistance or enhance tolerance to diseases. They elicit natural defence responses in plants and, unlike chemical pesticides, do not promote the occurrence of resistant forms in targeted pathogens. Two bacterial proteins, CspD and MF3, that have elicitor properties have been well documented to provide resistance against various phytopathogens and play a promising role in green consumerization. Fungal polyketides, statins, inhibiting a pathogenicity-related pathway in melanin-producing fungi are considered as prospective candidates for developing biopesticides and reducing the impact of plant diseases without killing pathogenic microorganisms.

5.1 Introduction

Plant diseases continue to cause considerable damage to global agriculture resulting in yield losses and deterioration of agricultural products, including their contamination with hazardous substances, e.g. mycotoxins, which induce toxicological problems in people and animals. Despite amazing progress achieved in crop protection due to breeding for resistance to diseases
and availability of effective agrochemicals, a number of problems are faced in managing the diseases successfully. The resistant cultivars provide only partial plant protection from a disease because of the occurrence of new pathogenic races that are able to overcome the resistance. Sometimes, breeding for resistance is too complicated because of the diversity and high variability of plant pathogens and the variety of defence responses at different stages of pathogenesis and plant development.

Chemical protection gives a powerful tool for effective control of many disease-causing agents, but its implementation has a range of undesirable side impacts. Thus, the use of chemical pesticides is associated with environmental risks, such as pollution of soil, water and crop plants with xenobiotic pesticide residues, killing beneficial microorganisms or insects, thereby interfering with the natural management of pests and pathogens, a reduction in biological diversity, and so on. Sometimes, chemical pesticides are not always effective and many treatments with several fungicides are needed to control some fungal pathogens. As a result of continual pesticide application on plants and stored agricultural products, toxic residues of chemical pesticides may appear and accumulate in food. Lastly, perhaps the most disturbing consequence of chemical protection is the development of pesticide resistance in pathogens that makes a protective effect changeable and insufficiently effective. The health and ecological problems related to chemical pesticides are now receiving a great deal of attention. Recognition of these problems has created the phenomenon of green consumerization.

The biocontrol of phytopathogens as an additional or alternative plant protection method looks more natural and environmentally compatible than chemical treatments. The use of non-pathogenic or beneficial microorganisms and/or natural compounds, which are native and biodegradable in the environment, is the main objective of green consumerization. A few hundred biocontrol products based on numerous beneficial strains predominantly of *Trichoderma*, *Bacillus*, *Pseudomonas*, *Agrobacterium*, *Streptomyces* and *Gliocladium* species are produced, commercialized and used as biopesticides and/or biofertilizers.

Natural compounds effectively controlling plant pathogens and pests are represented by a diversity of substances belonging to different chemical classes and produced by a wide range of living organisms (Varma and Dubey, 1999). Currently, the list of these natural compounds is growing longer from year to year. Many natural products have already been used or recommended as biopesticides (e.g. various secondary plant metabolites such pyrethrins, glucosinolate-sinigrin-producing allyl isothiocyanate, carvone, azadirachtin, rotenone, ryania, nicotine, some essential oils and other volatile plant substances). The plant-mediated mode of action of some natural compounds, which does not establish contact with pathogens, decreases the risk of resistant pathogenic form selection. Because the search for natural substances fitting phytosanitary regulations and environmentally compatible cropping methods is a continuous active process, novel compounds are being discovered in plants, animals and microorganisms and are marketed in place of
chemical pesticides in order to be adopted by so-called ‘cottage industry’ or
governmentally regulated farming.

The disease-preventing effect of natural compounds that are used or can
be used for crop protection is a result of a direct or plant-mediated influence
on targeted pathogens. Affecting phytopathogens directly, the compounds
interrupt pivotal metabolic pathways and/or disrupt vitally important struc-
tures that have as a consequence the death of the pathogens (biocidal effect).
Some natural substances or their analogues do not produce lethal effects to
plant pathogens but specifically influence pathways related to pathogenicity
or/toxigenesis, e.g. mycotoxin production (Kumar et al., 2008; Shukla
et al., 2008). Such non-biocidal suppressors can impair the pathogenicity for
plants as well as the toxic risk for people and animals. In the case of a
plant-mediated mode of action, natural compounds elicit and activate
defence responses in plants that result in induced resistance to diseases (e.g.
Shcherbakova et al., 2007; 2008; Odintsova et al., 2009). Lastly, some of bio-
genic compounds influencing plants do not induce resistance but enhance
tolerance to pathogens (sometimes by improving the physiological state of
plants). The structural and functional diversity of natural compounds as well
as their abundance provide a great potential for bringing plant protection
technologies in line with green consumerization.

The main goal of this chapter is to analyse properties of a few chemically
and functionally different natural compounds and demonstrate their pro-
spective as promising candidates for new plant protection products with sig-
nificant potential in relation to green consumerization. The chapter will focus
on the characterization of two proteinaceous compounds of bacterial origin,
the elicitor properties of which provide disease resistance, and also on fungal
statins as natural compounds, which inhibit a pathogenicity-related path-
way in melanin-producing fungi and can be used for developing biopesti-
cides that reduce the harmful impact of crop diseases without killing
pathogenic organisms. In addition, microbial and plant proteinaceous com-
pounds that have been previously well documented to be promising for
green consumerization will be briefly surveyed.

5.2 Proteinaceous Compounds of Microbial and Plant Origin in
the Biocontrol of Plant Pathogens

Proteins are abundant and ubiquitous natural compounds strongly associ-
ated with all living organisms, hence it is possible to believe their involve-
ment in plant protection will not conflict with green consumerization
principles. Because proteinaceous compounds are important constituents of
a plant immune system and take part in the natural plant defence against
pathogens, scientists have emphasized their potential for plant protection for
a long time. Basically, two general approaches to the practical realization of
the protective potential of these compounds are the formulation of producers
(biocontrol or non-pathogenic microorganisms) or the engineering of trans-
genic plants. The compounds synthesized by formulated biocontrol agents
interact with pathogenic microflora or induce resistance in plants. Constitutive or inducible expression of protein-encoding genes transferred into plants confer them resistance to many economically important diseases.

Several groups of microbial and plant proteinaceous substances that have well-established potentialities in plant protection will be very briefly reviewed below. The antipathogenic properties of two proteins, which were isolated from biocontrol bacteria and relatively recently studied as putative elicitors of disease resistance in plants, will be described in more detail.

The biocontrol potential of proteinaceous compounds will be considered almost exclusively by using examples of fungal and bacterial pathogens. Their antipest properties will be not covered within the scope of this chapter. Nevertheless, it should be emphasized that many proteins and peptides discussed in this section (microbial peptides, defensins, proteinase inhibitors and lectins) are well known as biological insecticides or nematicides of great potentiality. Biopesticides based on microbial peptides or transgenic plants carrying genes of defensins, lectins and proteinase inhibitors are good tools for the fight against pests of plants.

### Antimicrobial peptides produced by microorganisms and plants

The generation of antimicrobial peptides is one of the widespread natural defence mechanisms of innate immunity of living organisms, and these compounds are interesting targets for green consumerization. Plants, including agricultural crops, produce numerous defensive peptides. Microorganisms, including those used in plant protection, synthesize and excrete antimicrobial peptides that are often responsible for the biocontrol effect. In several authors’ opinions, peptides have advantages over more elementary organic antimicrobial compounds when used for plant protection goals. Because the peptide molecules contain from 10 to 50 (sometimes up to 85) amino acid residues, they can more specifically interact with their protein targets in causative agents (Park et al., 2009). Biopesticidal peptides can work against pathogens by inhibiting nucleic-acid and protein biosyntheses and enzyme activity or by interacting with the plasmalemma and destroying its integrity (Huang, 2000).

### Antimicrobial peptides from biocontrol microorganisms

Peptides possessing antimicrobial effects have been reported to be produced by bacteria, fungi, plants, invertebrates and vertebrates (Garcia-Olmedo et al., 1998; Zasloff, 2002; Degenkolb et al., 2003; Bulet et al., 2004; Nybroe and Sorensen, 2004; Carvalho and Gomes, 2009). According to the recent review focused on antimicrobial peptides related to plant-disease control (Montesinos, 2007), about 900 antimicrobial peptides are produced by living organisms via ribosomal or non-ribosomal synthesis. Biocontrol microorganisms have been reported to use both types of the peptide synthesis (Finking and Marahiel, 2004; Montesinos, 2007) and generate a wide range of these compounds. Antimicrobial peptides of microorganisms
Proteinaceous and Polyketide Compounds in Plant Protection

(AMPM) have been classified into several groups of linear and cyclic peptides (fungal defensins, bacteriocins, peptaibols, cyclopeptides and pseudopeptides) based on their most essential structural characteristics, and have been inventoried according to name, composition and producer microorganisms (Montesinos, 2007).

The efficacy of the natural antimicrobial peptides produced by biocontrol microorganisms towards various plant pathogenic bacteria, fungi and oomycetes in vitro and in vivo has been well documented (Table 5.1).

Table 5.1. Instances of plant pathogens sensitive to antimicrobial peptides of microorganisms.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Targeted plant pathogens</th>
<th>Group of effective AMPM</th>
<th>Reference</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Fungi</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Alternaria spp.</td>
<td>Pseudopeptides</td>
<td>Stein, 2005</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Botrytis cinerea</td>
<td>Cyclopeptides</td>
<td>Lavernicocca et al., 1997</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Fungal defensins</td>
<td>Ongena et al., 2005</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Peptaibols</td>
<td>Vila et al., 2001</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Pseudopeptides</td>
<td>Moreno et al., 2003</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Moreno et al., 2005</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Xiao-Yan et al., 2006</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Stein, 2005</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bipolaris sorokiniana</td>
<td>Peptaibols</td>
<td>Xiao-Yan et al., 2006</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Colletotrichum spp.</td>
<td>Peptaibols</td>
<td>Xiao-Yan et al., 2006</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Erysiphe sp.</td>
<td>Cyclopeptides</td>
<td>Selim et al., 2005</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fusarium avenaceum</td>
<td>Cyclopeptides</td>
<td>Selim et al., 2005</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fusarium oxysporum</td>
<td>Peptaibols</td>
<td>Xiao-Yan et al., 2006</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fusarium solani</td>
<td>Cyclopeptides</td>
<td>Stein, 2005</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fusarium spp.</td>
<td>Fungal defensins</td>
<td>Vila et al., 2001</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Moreno et al., 2003</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Moreno et al., 2005</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Leptosphaeria maculans</td>
<td>Cyclopeptides</td>
<td>Pedras et al., 2003</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Magnaporthe grisea</td>
<td>Fungal defensins</td>
<td>Moreno et al., 2003</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Pseudopeptides</td>
<td>Moreno et al., 2005</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Stein, 2005</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Moniliina fructicola</td>
<td>Cyclopeptides</td>
<td>Gueldner et al., 1988</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Podosphaera fuca</td>
<td>Cyclopeptides</td>
<td>Romero et al., 2007</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Podosphaera sp.</td>
<td>Cyclopeptides</td>
<td>Stein, 2005</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rhizoctonia solani</td>
<td>Cyclopeptides</td>
<td>Asaka and Shoda, 1996</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Peptaibols</td>
<td>Bassarelo et al., 2004</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Pseudopeptides</td>
<td>Nielsen and Sorensen, 2003</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Ongena et al., 2005</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Xiao-Yan et al., 2006</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Stein, 2005</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sclerotinia sclerotium</td>
<td>Cyclopeptides</td>
<td>Pedras et al., 2003</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sclerotium cepivarum</td>
<td>Peptaibols</td>
<td>Gouland et al., 1995</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Continued
Antimicrobial peptides from plants

A broad family comprising antimicrobial peptides produced by plants is called defensins. One of their functions in plants is the involvement in defence mechanisms against pathogens, pests and abiotic stresses (Terras et al., 1995; Lay and Anderson, 2005). These are basic peptides structurally and functionally related to the defensins of mammalia and insects. Molecular masses of plant defensins that are characterized at present range from 5 to 7 kDa. Their primary structure is formed with 45–55 amino acid residues. Two structural characteristics of the defensins, the presence of a pattern of conserved cysteine residues and a domain with extremely variable amino acid sequence, are typical components for mature peptide molecules of plant defensins. With rare exceptions, defensins found in plants have a similar globular spatial structure that is stabilized by a structural motif formed using disulfide bonds between eight cysteine residues. Possibly, defensins can aggregate in vivo into dimers or oligomers (Terras et al., 1992). A certain correlation is observed between the primary structure and antimicrobial activity of some plant defensins. In general, the incorporation of basic amino acids (viz. arginine) that add positive charge to a peptide molecule resulted in a considerable increase in the antimicrobial activity (Terras et al., 1992; De Samblanx et al., 1997; Landon et al., 2000).

In the overwhelming majority of cases, plant defensins possess inhibitory activity against fungi; however, the growth of Gram-negative bacteria is also arrested after exposure to these peptides (Terras et al., 1993; Segura et al., 1998; Wong et al., 2006). An analysis of publications by Carvalho and Gomes (2009) showed many damaging plant pathogens of economically important crops can be inhibited in vitro with plant defensins. Various fungal species (Alternaria brassicola, Alternaria solani, Botrytis cinerea, Cladosporium coloeciae,
Proteinaceous and Polyketide Compounds in Plant Protection

Cladosporium sphaerospermum, Colletotrichum lindemuthianum, Diploidia maydis, Magnaporthe grisea, Mycosphaerella arachidicola, Mycosphaerella fijiensis, Nectria haematococca, Penicillium digitatum, Penicillium expansum, Phaeoisariopsis personata, Physalospora piricola, Rhizoctonia solani, Septoria tritici, Verticillium albo-atrum, V. dahliae, and the toxigenic species Fusarium culmorum, F. decemcellulare, F. graminearum, F. oxysporum, F. verticillioides and Aspergillus niger; two species of oomycetes (Phytophthora infestans and P. parasitica) and also bacteria, viz. C. michiganensis and Ralstonia solanacearum, are among them. Effective concentrations of plant defensins differ depending on the tested peptides and the targeted pathogens (values of IC50, a protein concentration that is required for 50% growth inhibition, vary from 1–100 μg/ml). The level of antimicrobial activity may be regulated with bivalent ions (Terras et al., 1992; 1993; Osborn et al., 1995; Segura et al., 1998; Wong and Ng, 2005). Along with the growth inhibitory effect, some plant defensins cause morphological changes in fungal mycelia (Carvalho and Gomes, 2009).

Studies on the mode of action of antimicrobial plant defensins are in progress. There are confirmed hypotheses that an interaction with the cell membrane of microorganisms resulting in ion efflux and reactive oxygen species (ROS) generation significantly contributes to the mechanisms responsible for antifungal properties of plant defensins. Besides antimicrobial activity, plant defensins possess a range of biological functions (Lay and Anderson, 2005; Carvalho and Gomes, 2009).

The availability of antimicrobial peptides produced by plants or microorganisms through ribosomal synthesis for crop protection has been demonstrated by an increased disease resistance of transgenic plants expressing fungal and plant defensin genes (Montesinos, 2007; Carvalho and Gomes, 2009). Several agricultural crops, e.g. tobacco, tomato, rice, aubergine, papaya and canola, which are transformed with these genes and produce the corresponding peptides, have little or no disease development in laboratory, greenhouse or field experiments. A number of peptides produced by microorganisms are insecticidal or nematicidal. The ability of plant defensins to inhibit α-amylase and proteases can contribute to plant defence against pest insects (Lin et al., 2007).

Enzymes, proteinase inhibitors, lectins and PR proteins

Lytic enzymes

To obtain nutrients, microorganisms synthesize various lytic enzymes that can attack polymeric compounds of different origin. Biocontrol agents can use these enzymatic activities on plant pathogens. Microbial chitinases, glucanases and proteases are lytic enzymes of most importance for the biocontrol of phytopathogens. These enzymes hydrolyse chitin, β-glucans and proteins, which can result in direct suppression of pathogen development or generate products that function as resistance inducers. For instance, biocontrol isolates of Trichoderma harzianum and Trichoderma atroviride produce endochitinase, β-1,3-glucanase and alkaline proteinase, which degrade plant
pathogenic fungi \textit{in vitro}, halt their growth \textit{in planta} and play a role in mycoparasitism (Elad \textit{et al}., 1982; Benitez \textit{et al}., 1998; Lorito, 1998; Chernin and Chet, 2002). Oligosaccharides or chitosan derived from fungal cell walls exposed to microbial glucanases and chinases elicit a cascade of defence responses in plants: generation of ROS, induction of pathogenesis-related proteins (PR proteins) (including plant chitinases and glucanases), phytoalexins and lignification (Dyakov and Ozeratskovskaya, 2007).

The potential of lytic enzymes for plant-disease management was well demonstrated by studying chinolytic systems in the biocontrol bacteria \textit{Bacillus cereus}, \textit{Pantoea agglomerans}, \textit{Pantoea dispersa}, and fungi, especially in the widely used biocontrol fungus \textit{Trichoderma}. Chitinases produced by \textit{Trichoderma} are effective on virtually all chitinous pathogens, non-toxic for plants and possess higher antifungal activity than such enzymes isolated from other sources. The antifungal activity of chinases from \textit{Trichoderma} can reach the level of some chemical pesticides (Lorito, 1998; Bonaterra \textit{et al}., 2003; Chang \textit{et al}., 2003; Gohel \textit{et al}., 2004).

Along with use of enzyme-producing biocontrol agents, there are several other application strategies for chinolytic enzymes. The most conventional approach consists of conferring resistance via engineering transgenic plants containing heterologous chitinase and glucanase genes. Overexpression of these genes in response to pathogen invasion can cause higher levels of the enzymes in the plant cells followed by a faster and effective neutralization of the pathogen. Indeed, transgenic broccoli, potato and tobacco plants expressing the \textit{T. harzianum} endochitinase gene have been found to show resistance against \textit{A. alternata}, \textit{A. solani}, \textit{B. cinerea} and \textit{R. solani}. Transgenic tobacco and cabbage, carrying a bean chitinase gene were protected against \textit{R. solani}. Transgenic cucumber, rice, grapevine, strawberry and wheat transformed with chitinase genes from rice (\textit{Oryza sativa}) were resistant to \textit{B. cinerea}, \textit{R. solani}, \textit{M. grisea}, \textit{Sphaerotheca humuli} and \textit{F. graminearum}, respectively (Gohel \textit{et al}., 2006). Expression of exochitinase genes in transgenic apple trees confers resistance to apple scab (\textit{Venturia inaequalis}), a pathogen which is controlled by multiple applications of chemical fungicides during the growing season (Bolar \textit{et al}., 2000). These results show the broad potential for the microbial chitinase transgenesis into plants for controlling fungal phytopathogens. The additional strategies are related to fermentation and different ways of improving the enzyme producers (Gohel \textit{et al}., 2006).

Other cases suggesting feasibility of crop protection with enzymes can be illustrated by the examples of constructing transgenic potato carrying glucose oxidase gene from \textit{A. niger} or apple, potato and tobacco plants expressing the bacteriophage T4 lysozyme gene (Wu \textit{et al}., 1997). Glucose oxidase is an enzyme involved in generating plant ROS. Expression of the glucose oxidase gene led to accumulation of peroxide ions in plant tissues that increased resistance to fungal diseases, e.g. to late blight (\textit{P. infestans}), wilt (\textit{Verticillium dahliae}) and early blight (\textit{A. solani}). Lysozymes are widespread enzymes that hydrolyse peptidoglycan of bacterial cell walls. Apple plants with the T4L gene showed significant resistance to the fire blight agent \textit{E. amylovora} (Ko \textit{et al}., 2000), while potato and tobacco was resistant to
E. carotovora subsp. carotovora (During et al., 1993). However, lysozyme excretion can have adverse effect on soil microbiota. Thus, the growth of B. subtilis has been observed to be suppressed in rhizosphere transgenic T4 lysozyme-producing potato plants (Ahrenholtz et al., 2000).

**Lectins**

Plant lectins are a heterogeneous collective of proteins that specifically bind carbohydrates in a reversible way and take part in phytopathogen recognition. Interacting with like components, lectins can attach to the cell surface. The structure and functions of these compounds are discussed in detail (e.g. Chrispeels and Raikhel, 1991). Lectins are well known naturally occurring insecticides of widespread effect. Some free lectins strongly affect microbe growth in plants and probably contribute to inhibiting pathogenesis. There are chitin-specific lectins synthesized in the phloem and translocated via vessels. These findings suggest that lectins are potential antifungal agents.

**Proteinase (protease) inhibitors of plant origin**

Plant inhibitors of proteinases are a large group of peptides or small proteins able to bind proteolytic enzymes of different organisms with competitive inhibition of their activity. In plants, they are abundant in seeds and storage organs, where their content can be up to 10% of water-soluble proteins. These compounds are considered as reserve proteins and regulators of protein status or enzyme activity in plants. The proteinase inhibitors differ in substrate specificity, have various isoforms, and their oligomers can combine or dissociate with an influence on the inhibitor properties.

A defensive function of proteinase inhibitors towards insects was initially revealed when insects, after feeding, became inactive as a result of trypsin inactivation. Protease inhibitors of plant origin were also shown to be active against plant pathogenic nematodes. Since many phytopathogenic fungi and bacteria secrete extracellular proteolytic enzymes, which play an important role in pathogenesis (Valuyeva and Mosolov, 2004), plants use inhibition of such enzymes as a defence strategy towards these microorganisms (Ryan, 1990; Habib and Khalid, 2007).

There are now ample data on protease inhibitors effective against phytopathogens in vitro and in vivo. For instance, inhibitors from potato inactivate proteinases secreted by F. solani or F. sambucinum into cultural liquid. Inhibitors from buckwheat and pearl millet suppress spore germination and the growth of many fungi including Aspergillus flavus, Aspergillus parasiticus, F. moniliforme, F. oxysporum, A. alternata and Trichoderma reesei. Inhibitors of proteinases are accumulated in response to pathogen invasion and prevent disease development (e.g. in tomato inoculated with P. infestans). In some cases, correlation between disease resistance and the constitutive inhibitors is found (e.g. between wheat resistance to smut, or lupine and soybean to fusarial wilt). Cells of potato tubers treated with elicitors, such as salicylic or arachidonic acids, are able to excrete potatin and three chymotrypsin inhibitors (Habib and Khalid, 2007).
At least 14 genes encoding different protease inhibitors alone or in combination with other heterologous genes have been reported to be transferred into cultured plants, which showed increased resistance predominantly to insects (Valuyeva and Mosolov, 2004). Plant protease inhibitors have also been used to engineer resistance against viruses in transgenic plants. For example, expression of the gene encoding the cysteine proteinase inhibitor from rice, oryzacystatin, by transgenic tobacco was found to confer resistance against tobacco etch virus and potato Y virus, replication of which depends on cysteine proteinase activity (Valuyeva and Mosolov, 2004; Habib and Khalid, 2007).

In the green consumerization context, it is important that some of the available proteinase inhibitors are inactive for non-pathogenic microorganisms and do not inhibit activity of proteinases of animal origin. Thus, chestnut cystatin, which strongly inhibits the protease activity and the growth of pathogenic B. cinerea, Colletotrichum graminicola, and Stagonospora nodorum, has no effect on the protease activity and the growth of the saprophyte Trichoderma viride (Pernas et al., 1999), and a proteinase inhibitor extracted from bean seeds specifically suppresses serine proteinase of pathogenic C. lindemuthianum but does not influence animal trypsin and chymotrypsin activity (Valuyeva and Mosolov, 2004). Non-specific antipathogenic activity of protease inhibitors suggests that transgenic crops producing inhibitors of insecticidal or nematicidal proteinases may be incorporated into integrated systems of plant protection against pests and pathogens. A further advantage of this approach is the possibility that inhibitory activity against proteinases could be combined with the insecticidal activity of lectins, resulting in a synergistic antipathogenic effect.

**PR proteins**

Plants have numerous defence mechanisms that are activated in response to pathogen attacks, abiotic stresses and chemicals that mimic pathogen challenge. Production of proteins related to pathogenesis (PR proteins) is one such inducible mechanism (Van Loon et al., 1994; Van Loon et al., 2006). These proteins are not detectable at all or are present only at basal concentrations in healthy plant tissues. Since the term PR proteins based on the above characteristics was often used for all constitutive plant proteins for which content or increasing activity was induced by microorganisms, the new term ‘inducible defence-related proteins’ was recently introduced (Van Loon et al., 2006).

PR proteins consist of a large variety of families with members that differ in occurrence, expression and biological activities; they are divided into 17 classes (Sels et al., 2008). A range of the above-mentioned plant proteins and peptides such as chitinases, β-1,3-glucanases, peroxidase, defensins and proteinase inhibitors are PR proteins and vice versa; some typical PR proteins are antimicrobial and inhibit pathogen growth in vitro. For instance, tobacco PR-1a is antifungal, and tomato proteins of the PR-1 family inhibit zoospore germination and reduce pathogenicity of P. infestans. The ability to disrupt
fungal membranes has been shown for toumatin-like proteins (permatins) of the PR-5 class. Overexpression of PR protein genes in plants renders disease resistance. For example, the high level expression of PR-1 in transgenic tobacco plants promotes control of *Perenospora tabacina* and *Phytophthora nicotiana* (Dyakov and Ozeratskovskaya, 2007).

Biochemical functions of PR proteins, their role in defence mechanisms, engineering of transgenic plants with enhanced resistance to plant pathogens and characteristics of individual PR proteins have been comprehensively surveyed by many researchers (Van Loon, 1985; Loon and Van Strien, 1999; Van Punja, 2001; De Lucca *et al*., 2005; Edreva, 2005; Van Loon *et al*., 2006; Sels *et al*., 2008).

**Proteinic inducers of plant resistance as a promising strategy for green consumerization**

The protective effect of some natural compounds against plant diseases results from the induction of plant resistance to pathogens rather than from biocidal activity towards the causative agents. This strategy is worthy of special consideration because it avoids a direct effect on a pathogen and involves a plant-mediated mode of action. This activates the natural defence responses of plants, minimizing the probability of the targeted pathogens developing resistance.

Active defence mechanisms are initiated in plants upon recognition of structural and chemical characteristics particular to a pathogen, collectively referred to as pathogen-associated molecular pattern (PAMPs). The PAMP components represented by compounds of different chemical origin were named as general elicitors (or general inducers). These elicitors initiate a conserved set of plant defence responses such as ROS production, deposition of callose, protein phosphorylation, and transcriptional activation of early response genes, resulting in PAMP-triggered immunity or induced resistance. Natural compounds conferring disease resistance on plants in the manner of general elicitors is of interest because of the non-specific character of the induced resistance – lots of pathogens can be controlled with one active compound. The success of applying elicitor compounds is directly dependent on understanding their properties and mechanisms of action. As well as all other biogenic or abiotic, general or specific inducers, proteinaceous elicitors produced by plant pathogens (e.g. glicoproteins, flagellins, elongation factor Tu, elicin and transglutaminases from *Phytophthora* spp., proteins and peptides from *Cladosporium flavum*, monolicollin, cold shock proteins, harpins etc.) are the subject of genetic and biochemical research of signalling pathways and molecular mechanisms underlying plant resistance to diseases. Non-protein small compounds (plant signalling molecules and hormones) participating in signalling as well as chemical compounds that have been found to mimic elicitors are also being studied in this way. Transgenic plants with genes encoding microbial elicitors (e.g. elicin) are created for research purposes using biotechnological methods.
Regarding the application, general elicitors to plant protection, chitosan, arachidonic, salicylic and β-aminobutyric acids may be referred to as examples of active ingredients that have been formulated and introduced into agricultural practice as commercial biogenic non-protein inducers of plant resistance. For instance, a supplement of tomato growth substratum with chitosan suppressed the root rot caused by *F. oxysporum f. sp. radicis-lycopersici* (Lafontaine and Benhamou, 1996). Moreover, several chitosan formulations collectively known as ‘chitozars’, which are effective against root rots, late blight and powdery mildew on cereals, potato and legumes, have been included in biological protection systems of these crops in Russia. Among protein elicitors, bacterial harpins are the most important. Harpins (hypersensitivity response and pathogenicity) are components of a transport system used by bacteria to transfer proteins through bacterial and plant membranes. In the bacterial genome, harpins are products a *hrp*-gene cluster. One of the first harpins studied was HrpN, the product of *hprN* gene expressed in *E. amylovora*. HrpN has been shown to be an acidic glycine-rich thermostable protein with a molecular mass of 44 kDa that induces resistance in *Arabidopsis* (Wei and Beer, 1996). Harpin has been commercialized and marketed as a product that enhances resistance of some field, ornamental and vegetable crops to many diseases, and that stimulates plant growth and flowering.

In the coming years, we can expect the agricultural use of other elicitor proteins for increasing plant resistance to diseases both by engineering of plants containing elicitor protein genes and by exposure of plants to protein elicitor-based products. Two bacterial proteins with plant-protecting activity are considered below as examples of very promising compounds for developing both resistant transgenic crops and products for plant treatment.

**Cold shock protein CspD as an elicitor of disease resistance in plants**

Cold shock protein D (CspD) isolated from *Bacillus thuringiensis* culture broth is a thermostable low molecular weight protein (molecular mass 7.2 kDa). The *B. thuringiensis* gene encoding CspD was cloned and sequenced (*CspD*, #AY272058 in GenBank). Nucleotide and amino acid sequences of CspD show high homology with other bacterial CSPs (Dzhavakhiya et al., 2000, Kromina and Dzhavakhiya, 2004).

CSPs are highly conserved proteins produced by various bacteria constitutively or in response to cold shock. They have also been studied in plants, e.g. in *Arabidopsis*, tobacco and wheat. CSPs are involved in cell growth and adaptation to low temperatures. They bind nucleic acids and are considered to be putative translation anti-terminators. Bacterial CPSs contain a specific conserved cold shock domain (CSD), which occurs in CSPs from other organisms. For instance, a fragment of high homology to bacterial CSD was found in a family of plant CSPs referred to as glycine-rich proteins (GRPs). Expression of *grp*-genes is dependent on the level of plant hormones (indolyl acetic, salicylic, abscisic acids), illumination and the plant development phase, and is upregulated by cold and wounding. The synthesis of GRPs can
Proteinaceous and Polyketide Compounds in Plant Protection

also be enhanced upon pathogen attack both in compatible and incompatible plant–pathogen combinations. Alien CSPs are recognized by plants as components of PAMP and elicit resistance to some pathogens. Thus, CSPs from Micrococcus lysodeikticus non-specifically induced defence responses in plants. It was found that a peptide consisting of 15 amino acid residues (csp15) that represented a consensus sequence of RNA-binding PNP-1 and RNP-2 motifs was responsible for eliciting activity towards some Solanaceae plants (Felix and Boller, 2003). The peptide csp15 induced an ‘oxidative burst’ in tobacco (Nicotiana tabacum, cv. Havanna 425) and potato (Solanum tuberosum), but was ineffective towards rice and cucumber cells.

CspD from B. thuringiensis has been reported to induce resistance both in monocotyledonous and dicotyledonous crops against a wide range of pathogens: from filamentous microorganisms (fungi and oomycetes) to viruses (Dzhavakhiya et al., 2000). For instance, CspD applied by dropping onto wheat leaves or by spraying potato and rice seedlings with water- or bovine serum albumin (BSA)-stabilized CspD solutions produced resistance against S. nodorum, P. infestans and M. grisea, respectively. Effective crop protection was observed in both greenhouse and field experiments. Exposure of tobacco plants to CspD induced resistance to tobacco mosaic virus (TMV) and potato X-virus. Peptide csp15 of CspD protein (VKWFNAEKGFGFITP) also showed resistance-inducing activity on plants and in model plant–pathogen systems. Treatments of tobacco leaf halves with 1–10 μmol csp15 in 0.1% BSA a day before inoculation with TMV resulted in a drastic reduction of lesion spot number on the treated halves as compared to 0.1% BSA-treated (control) halves or whole control leaves of the same plant (Kromina and Dzhavakhiya, 2004).

Several tests were carried out to identify which host defence responses to the pathogen challenge are activated by CspD and csp15. Applying csp15 to the surface of discs cut from potato tubers (cv. Istrinskiy, R1) increased the hypersensitive response of potato cells to the incompatible P. infestans race r4 with a decreased number of dead cells and induced accumulation of salicylic acid in the tuber tissues. Both CspD and csp15 have no fungitoxicity. Addition of the peptide to the suspension of cultured tobacco cells activated the H+ pump and caused a reversible change in the extracellular pH. The resistance induced with csp15 or CspD in plants has a systemic character (Kromina and Dzhavakhiya, 2004).

To transfer the CspD gene into tobacco plants, the pBilt7 plasmid, containing the CspD expression cassette (P35S/CspD/pACaMV), on pBin19 vector background was constructed and transformed into A. tumefaciens. As a result, seven lines of cv. Xanthi (NN) and five lines of cv. Samsung (nn) were produced. Expression of CspD in these lines was confirmed by real-time PCR. The transgenic tobacco plants had the same habitus as control plants and produced fertile progeny. The transgenic lines showed increased resistance to Alternaria longipes and TMV that coincided with the range of antipathogenic activity observed for the elicitor protein per se. Importantly, the level of CspD expression coincided with the resistance level to the both pathogens among all tested lines as well as inside any one line. These findings lead to the
assumption that disease resistance of transgenic tobacco is due to defence responses that are elicited with CspD synthesized inside the plant (Kromina and Dzhavakhiya, 2006).

The above results can be used in breeding programmes for production of crop cultivars with resistance against a wide range of phytopathogens or CspD-based biopesticides providing complex protective effects against fungi, oomycetes and viruses.

MF3 protein, bacterial peptidyl-prolyl cis/trans isomerase, conferring plant resistance to pathogens

The thermostable protein MF3 (16.9 kDa) is produced by biocontrol Pseudomonas fluorescens isolate 197. After cloning and sequencing the MF3-encoding gene from P. fluorescens 197, a full primary structure of the protein was determined, and high homology between amino acid sequences of MF3 and peptidyl-prolyl cis/trans isomerases of the FK506-binding protein (FKBP) type was found (Dzhavakhiya et al., 2005; Shumilina et al., 2006).

Peptidyl-prolyl cis/trans isomerases (PPIases) are enzymes that accelerate the slow cis/trans isomerization of the peptide bond between proline residues and the adjacent amino acid in protein. Initially, de novo synthesized polypeptides have the trans conformation, which stabilizes the polypeptide chain, but to form the native protein structure, about 7% of the peptide bonds formed with proline residues need to be isomerized into the cis conformation. PPIases take part in the renaturation of denatured proteins, in protein synthesis de novo and in the formation of biologically active conformations of some polypeptides. PPIases are highly conservative enzymes produced by prokaryotes, eukaryotes, viruses and phages. They have been classified into three families, referred to as cyclophilins, FKBP, which regulate signal systems of eukaryotic cells, and parvulins.

In plants, FKBP were initially detected in Vicia fava, Triticum aestivum and Arabidopsis thaliana. It was found that A. thaliana contains 23 FKBP and FKBP-like low- or high-molecular weight proteins. Plant PPIases of the FKBP type control plant fertility, cell division and differentiation as well as the perception of plant hormones. Plant FKBP are expressed both constitutively and in response to various stresses such as wounding, salinity or heat shock. PPIases produced by phytopathogens can contribute significantly to the pathogenic process. For instance, the plant pathogenic fungi M. grisea and B. cinerea produce cyclophilins. Mutations in the cyclophilin genes impair virulence of these fungi. The M. grisea mutants form low-turgor appressoria unable to penetrate through leaf cuticle. Deletion of the cyclophilin gene does not influence M. grisea growth in vitro but affects formation of fungal conidia (Viaud et al., 2002).

It is likely that PPIases are involved in plant–pathogen relationships. On the one hand, some pathogens are in need of host plant PPIases for establishing the infection process. On the other hand, interaction of plant PPIase with pathogen proteins can result in induction of disease resistance. Thus cysteine proteinase AvrRpt2, that is transported by Pseudomonas syringae to
Arabidopsis cells during pathogen invasion must be folded with the plant cyclophylin ROC1 to form an active conformation able to cleave plant proteins. Along with other proteins, the activated bacterial protease cleaves protein RIN4, which is combined in Arabidopsis in an inactive complex with a signal protein RPS2. Proteolysis of RIN4 releases RPS2 that triggers defence responses (Mackey et al., 2003). PPIases of one organism have been reported to inhibit the growth of another organism by means of competitive binding with a receptor, and probably some PPIases can suppress growth of cultured plant pathogens. For instance, cyclophylin C-CyP isolated from Chinese cabbage (Brassica campestris L. ssp. pekinensis) inhibits in vitro growth of several fungi including Rhizoctonia solani, B. cinerea, F. solani and F. oxysporum (Lee et al., 2007).

Various experiments have shown that MF3 induced resistance in various monocotyledonous and dicotyledonous plants against several fungal and viral pathogens. MF3 was found to protect tobacco against TMV, potato Y virus and A. longipes, and barley against Bipolaris sorokiniana. At the same time, this protein did not influence TMV infectivity, was not fungitoxic and had no phytotoxicity towards tobacco plants and cereals. Moreover, treatment of barley and wheat seeds, naturally infected by B. sorokiniana and F. culmorum, with MF3 promoted formation of a well-developed root system in the diseased barley and wheat seedlings, that conferred plant tolerance to root rots and was consistent with growth-stimulatory functions for PPIases in plants (Dzhavakhiya et al., 2005; Shumilina et al., 2006).

Comparative analysis of MF3 with 45 proteins of different homology levels revealed two conserved sequences in the MF3 polypeptide chain. Proteolysis with trypsin inside one of these conserved sequences produced fragments that did not induce resistance to TMV in tobacco leaves. These data allowed the assumption that the analysed sequence contained a motif responsible for the resistance-inducing activity of MF3. Such a motif, IIPGLEKALE GKAVGDDLEVAVEPEDAYG, was detected and named MF3-29 because it was found to consist of 29 amino acid residues. This fragment was necessary and sufficient for induction of tobacco resistance to TMV. Biological tests on isolated tobacco leaves showed that treatments of tobacco leaves with chemically synthesized oligopeptide MF3-29 at concentrations 0.5, 5 and 50 nM were as effective against the virus as the whole protein at the same concentrations.

In order for products based on protein elicitors to effectively control plant pathogens, they have to access plant receptors recognizing PAMPs. The large size of the molecules or hydrophobic barriers on the plant surface (such as cuticle) can impede physical contact or chemically mediated recognition of elicitor proteins and the subsequent induction of defence responses in plants. To solve this problem, special molecular carriers facilitating elicitor transport to plant cells should be developed. Various polycationic molecules, especially chitosan, which are used now for the delivery of large biological molecules (DNA or proteins) to their outer or intracellular receptors, look promising as putative carriers of proteinaceous elicitors. Experiments with the wheat leaf spot agent S. nodorum and turnip mosaic virus (TuMV)
demonstrated that MF3 integration with chitosan, a non-toxic and biodegradable natural polymer with elicitor properties, enhanced resistance-inducing activity of MF3, and enlarged the scope of the antipathogenic action of this protein. No inhibitory effect on fungal growth in vitro was observed if MF3, chitosan or the MF3–chitosan complex was added to culture media. Neither the protein nor chitosan applied separately on wheat leaves protected plants against S. nodorum. However, leaf treatment with the MF3–chitosan complex before plant inoculation with the pathogen significantly reduced disease severity. Spraying cabbage seedlings (cv. Krautman) with the MF3–chitosan-complex resulted in at least a week’s delay in TuMV accumulation, whereas virus spread was not delayed in seedlings sprayed with MF3 alone or chitosan alone (Shumilina et al., 2005).

Rape lines (cv. Westar) with an mf3 gene insertion showed increased resistance to fungal pathogens Plasmodiophora brassicae and TuMV. Most of the transgenic plants carried more than one gene insertion. The bacterial protein concentrations in some lines amounted to 37 pg/mg of fresh weight. An increased level of rape resistance to TuMV was kept independently of MF3 variation in plant tissues. Identically high resistance was observed at eight different protein concentrations in transgenic lines. This may suggest that tiny amounts of MF3 are sufficient for conferring plant resistance to the virus. It was shown that five transgenic lines of the six that were resistant to TuMV also expressed an enhanced endurance to P. brassicae for 50 days after inoculation. The disease symptoms were significantly less severe on roots of transgenic plants as compared to symptoms developing on non-transgenic rape roots or roots of transgenic lines that had lost the mf3 insertion. It is believed that the best lines obtained may be included in breeding programmes for creating rape cultivars with resistance against both pathogens (Dzhavakhiya et al., 2005; Shumilina et al., 2006).

Thus, the wide range of elicitor activity of CspD and MF3, as well as the possibility to use general approaches of biocontrol, gene engineering technology and plant treatments in CspD- and MF3-based plant protection demonstrate the great potential of proteinaceous elicitors of natural defence mechanisms for the environmentally safe control of phytopathogens. Toxicology studies and in-house laboratory tests demonstrated that the proteins are non-toxic to animals and plants. Both of these compounds are patented as new proteins with plant protecting properties (EP0868431A1 and PCT WO2005/061533 A1). Due to the systemic character of the resistance induced with CspD and MF3, the resistance spreads to the whole plant even if only the seeds or leaves are treated. After a single treatment with the protein solutions, induced resistance remained effective for not less than 3 weeks. In many cases this can cover the period of highest risk infection. The large-scale introduction of transgenic cultivars resistant to a certain pathogen is sometimes limited because different pathogens dominate when the climatic and soil conditions change. Moreover, there is the problem of unpredictable seasonal alteration of pathogens, which decreases the effect of pre-sowing treatments. Crop engineering or/and developing new products based on general elicitors such as CspD or MF3 inducing ‘universal’ resistance would promote
overcoming these limitations. Searching for novel proteins and peptides would promote progress in this field. Finding elicitor activity in MF3 protein belonging to PPIases that were never meant to be designated as disease resistance inducers shows desired properties may be discovered during screening of natural biologically active compounds which were previously studied and characterized as non-hazardous for people and the environment. This presents additional prospects for developing new biocontrol products complying with green consumerization requests.

5.3 Statins as New Promising Candidates for Biopesticides

One of the effective plant disease management strategies is based on the control of metabolic relationships in a plant–pathogen system. This can be reached by using compounds that alter or partially block specific pathways of biosynthesis in plants or microorganisms, resulting in derangements in the trophic relationships of pathogens with host plants, or in the production of microbial metabolites related to pathogenicity. Such imbalances may not cause the rapid death of pathogens but can lead to a reduction of their vital capacity or/and impair their pathogenic properties. Similar metabolic effects may be caused by plant inhibitors of fungal and bacterial proteases as described above, as well as by the inhibitors of insect and nematode enzymes. Statins, secondary metabolites of microbial origin belonging to the polyketide group, represent another class of natural compounds that have recently been discovered to modulate metabolic plant–pathogen interactions. The metabolic pathway targeted by statins is sterol biosynthesis.

Sterols are well known to be ubiquitous and important components of outer membrane and intracellular membranes of eukaryotic organisms and to play essential roles in their physiology. These compounds are required for growth, development and reproduction of plant pathogens. A number of organisms including insects, nematodes and oomycetes are not able to synthesize sterols or even their precursors. Sterol-dependent phytopathogens obtain free sterols or intermediates from host plants and may be controlled by compounds inducing alterations in content, availability or composition of plant sterols.

Currently, several chemical fungicides are available that inhibit the synthesis of ergosterol in fungi. They prevent cellular membrane formation, stop fungal growth and may suppress sporogenesis in established infection agents. However, statins are natural inhibitors of sterol biosynthesis that presumably can cause similar effects. Statins were found to be produced by different microorganisms, predominantly by filamentous fungi. They inhibit the enzyme β-hydroxy-β-methylglutaryl-CoA reductase (HMG-CoA reductase) and prevent sterol biosynthesis at the level of conversion of HMG-CoA to mevalonic acid. Statins are widely applied in medicine as drugs against atherosclerogenic diseases because they effectively decrease the blood cholesterol level. Thus, the biological compatibility and safety of statins are well proven.
Recently, studies were made to investigate the potential of two statins, lovastatin and compactin, in plant protection against diseases (Dzhavakhiya and Petelina, 2008; Ukraintsteva, 2008). In these studies, both statins were obtained by means of microbial synthesis using the ‘superproducer’ strains *Aspergillus terreus* 45-50 (lovastatin) and *Penicillium citrinum* 18-12 (compactin); these statins were examined in greenhouse and field experiments with plant treatments and in vitro tests on several pathogenic fungi. As statins are insoluble in water, the authors used aqueous solutions of the statin sodium salts that are referred to below as compactin and lovastatin.

The studied statins were found to possess fungicidal activity in vitro against a number of plant pathogenic fungi. The addition of lovastatin at concentrations from 0.001 to 0.1% to agar media inhibited growth of *M. grisea*, *S. nodorum* and *Coletotrichum atramentarium*. Compactin arrested in vitro growth of *Cladosporium cucumerinum*, *S. nodorum* and *M. grisea* at the same concentration range. In addition, 0.001% compactin solution significantly reduced germination of *S. nodorum* spores while the 0.01% solution completely suppressed spore germination in this fungus. Among tested plant pathogens, the fungus *M. grisea*, rice blast agent, showed the highest sensitivity to both statins (for lovastatin IC$_{50}$ was about 0.003%), while *S. nodorum* was most resistant to lovastatin (IC$_{50}$ = 0.02%) and *C. cucumerinum* tended to compactin resistance. Besides a growth-inhibitory effect, the presence of the statins in nutrition media resulted in a discolouration of fungal mycelia in all fungi, especially in *M. grisea* and *C. atramentarium* exposed to lovastatin. This observation suggested suppression of fungal melaninogenesis. In all experiments, dicolouration-inducing concentrations of the statins were at least tenfold lower than growth-inhibiting concentrations.

The studied statins were revealed to possess disease-preventing properties. They delay and decrease disease development on treated plants when applied simultaneously or prior to inoculation with pathogens. Lovastatin and compactin protected wheat against *S. nodorum* and tobacco from *A. longipes*. In addition, lovastatin showed protective activity against *M. grisea* on rice, whereas compactin was effective against *Puccinia graminis* on wheat and *P. infestans* on potato. Both fungicidal and protective effects were strongly dose-rate dependent, but fungitoxic concentrations also made a toxic impact on plants, whereas protection from diseases was provided by far lower concentrations that were non-phytotoxic. Thus, almost total or 27–36% *S. nodorum* growth inhibition in vitro was observed at 0.1% and 0.01% lovastatin concentrations in nutrition media, respectively. Both doses showed phytotoxicity on wheat leaves, but only the higher concentration caused retardant effect on growing plants. When 0.1% lovastatin solution was used for wheat seed soaking for 1.5–2 h, reduction of seedling length averaged 50%, and 0.01% concentration caused no inhibitory influence on plant growth. A considerable reduction of the disease index was found after application of only 0.0005% lovastatin solution on isolated wheat leaves. The applied concentration did not suppress *S. nodorum* germination and in vitro growth but prevented disease development with 94 and 72% protection efficacy at 3 and 7 days after inoculation, respectively. This suggests that a mechanism other
Proteinaceous and Polyketide Compounds in Plant Protection

than fungicidal activity contributes to the protective effect of statins (Dzhavakhiya and Petelina, 2008).

The resistance of fungi to extreme environmental conditions and biotic stresses is largely determined by their ability to produce protective high-molecular-weight pigments. One of the common fungal pigments in cell walls is melanin. Melanin is a coloured polymer produced by many plant pathogenic fungi, including *M. grisea*, *S. nodorum*, *C. lagenarium* and *C. atramentarium*, through the pentaketide pathway and depends on the availability of acetyl-CoA. Melanin plays a significant role in the infectivity of these fungi. For instance, the ability of the rice pathogen *M. grisea* to penetrate into tissues of the host plant is directly associated with the presence of melanin in the fungus. Strains of *M. grisea* and *C. lagenarium* defective in melanin formation lose pathogenicity and are incapable of forming mycelial overgrowth in host plants. Revertants restoring wild-colour type regain pathogenicity (Dzhavakhiya et al., 1990).

Interestingly, antimelanogenic compounds, aminoalkylphosphinates, a family of phospho-analogues of natural amino acids, suppress biosynthesis of melanin and some toxic metabolites in the polyketide pathway of *M. grisea*, and are also fungicidal. The aminoalkylphosphinates serve as analogues of alanine, a precursor to pyruvic acid that is required for melanin biosynthesis. Exposure of fungi to the phospho-analogues of amino acids inactivates pyruvate dehydrogenase, thus inhibiting synthesis of acetyl-CoA and melanin (Zhukov et al., 2004) as well as aflatoxins (Khomutov, Khurs, Shcherbakova, Mikityuk, Dzavakhiya and Zhemchuzhina; unpublished data). The discovery that non-fungicidal lovastatin and compactin concentrations can induce mycelium de-pigmentation and decrease disease severity on plants suggests that their protective effect may be associated with impairing pathogenicity due to an effect on melanin biosynthesis in causative agents. Statins and fungal melanin are both polyketides. Thus, the metabolism of the two compounds is interrelated, and it is not improbable that statins can negatively mediate a stage of the polyketide pathway involved in the melanization of plant pathogenic fungi.

Although the mode of protective action of statin is required for understanding and further research, first small-plot field trials suggest they may be of certain interest from a practical point of view. For example, one preplanting treatment of potato tubers by soaking in 0.1% compactin solution for half an hour resulted in a 1-month delay of late blight (*P. infestans*) emergence on plants and a slower course of disease. Only extremely high statin concentrations of 0.5% undesirably influenced plant physiological characteristics. By the end of the growing season, an insignificant reduction of potato late blight was observed on plants arising from the treated tubers, but these plants produced fewer diseased tubers. There is reason to suppose that lovastatin and compactin possess anti-phytoviral activity (Ukraintseva, 2008).

Further research of the mechanisms responsible for protective activity could help statins take a fitting place among the biopesticides of tomorrow. Lovastatin and compactin per se might serve as base molecules for biochemical engineering of active analogues, and the approaches used to studying their plant-protecting properties might be implicated in screening of other
pathogen-controlling compounds within the statin group and their derivatives. Such screening might lead to the detection of new natural polyketides with high protective activity that would not have an adverse effect on plants. Since the agricultural application of statin-based formulations does not demand as high a level of statin purification as that in the pharmacological industry, using a relatively simple isolation procedure (Dzhavakhiya, 2008) and the ‘superproducer’ strains suggests that statin-based plant-protection technology would be a more economical and ecologically safe strategy than any method using chemical pesticides.

5.4 Conclusion

The disease-preventing effect of natural compounds is a result of a direct or plant-mediated influence on targeted pathogens. The compounds can affect phytopathogens directly, interrupting pivotal metabolic pathways and results in the death of the pathogens (biocidal effect). Some natural substances or their analogues specifically influence pathways related to pathogenicity and toxigenesis. In the case of a plant-mediated mode of action, natural compounds elicit and activate defence responses in plants that result in induced resistance to diseases. In addition, some biogenic compounds influencing plants do not induce resistance but enhance tolerance to pathogens by improving the physiological state of plants. The structural and functional diversity of natural compounds as well as their abundance provide a great potential for bringing plant-protection technologies in line with green consumerization.

References


Proteinaceous and Polyketide Compounds in Plant Protection


harvest fungal infestation of food commodities. *Innovative Food Science and Emerging Technologies* 9, 575–580.


Proteinaceous and Polyketide Compounds in Plant Protection


6 Natural Products as Allelochemicals in Pest Management

ROMAN PAVELA

Crop Research Institute, Prague, Czech Republic

Abstract
Allelochemicals are one of the most plentiful groups of substances in the vegetable kingdom. The significance and use of these chemicals in nature are as varied as allelochemicals themselves. Allelochemicals also include a group of substances called allomones. These substances are created by plants as a defence against phytophagous insects and comprise repellents, anti-ovipositors and antifeedants. This group of plant metabolites can be of practical use in many areas of human activity. This chapter deals with possibilities of using plant extracts containing allomone in the protection of plants against pests. Substances with antifeedant effects, in particular, appear to be highly promising for the development of new, environmentally safe insecticides. In this chapter, we have therefore focused mostly on this group of substances and critically considered the perspective of using antifeedant substances in plant protection.

6.1 Introduction
Plants have developed alongside insects since the very beginning of their existence. Thanks to their common history, very fragile mutual relationships have formed between individual plant and insect species, which we are trying to clarify today using scientific approaches. On the one hand, plants utilize insects, especially as their pollinators, and on the other, insects use plants as the source of their food. Therefore, for balanced mutual interactions between plants and insects, communication and mutual influence must exist between them to prevent uncontrolled excessive reproduction of any species in order to maintain equilibrium in the ecosystem with maximum possible biodiversity. Plants thus created many strategies in the course of their co-evolution to protect themselves efficiently against insect pests, and the insects try to circumvent such strategies. Understanding their mutual relationships helps us not only to understand the world around us but also provides information that may lead to a practical use.
As mentioned above, there are many types of plant–insect interactions; however, the interaction between plants as a source of food and phytophagous insects as their pests is one of the most interesting and important ones for practical applications in agriculture. In this case, it is a relationship between ‘food’ on one hand and ‘consumer’ on the other; the plants were forced to develop numerous defensive mechanisms to prevent uncontrolled destructive pest attacks. The most important defensive plant mechanisms include the synthesis of biologically active compounds, the so-called secondary metabolites. First, such substances may provide direct insecticide effects, causing mortality of phytophagous insects, and/or second, they may exert indirect insecticide effects, only influencing insect behaviour in some manner. Knowledge of such relationships leads not only to useful information necessary for cultivating plants with resistance, but also to the direct utilization of extracts in cultural plant protection using the so-called botanical insecticides.

Although the first group of compounds, i.e. those with direct insecticidal activity, has been used by humans as extracts for millennia, both in fighting phytophagous pests as well as against parasites or storage pests, the other group of compounds, generally called allelochemicals, has become the subject of more profound interest only in recent decades (Pavela, 2007a).

The term allelochemicals (from Greek allelon: ‘one another’) is used to describe the chemicals involved in interspecific interactions. It is defined as a chemical significant to organisms of a species different from its source. Allelochemicals are divided into four subgroups, depending on whether the emitter, the receiver, or both benefit in the interaction.

- An allomone (from Greek allos – ‘another’; horman – ‘to stimulate’) is defined as a chemical substance, produced or acquired by an organism, which evokes in the receiver a reaction adaptively favourable to the emitter, e.g. a plant emits allomones to deter herbivores.
- A kairomone (from Greek kairos – ‘opportunistic’) is defined as a chemical substance, produced or acquired by an organism, which evokes in the receiver a reaction adaptively favourable to the receiver but not to the emitter, e.g. secondary plant compounds help herbivores in finding plants to feed on.
- A synomone (from Greek syn – ‘with or jointly’) is defined as a chemical substance, produced or acquired by an organism, which evokes in the receiver a reaction adaptively favourable to both the emitter and the receiver. This group of allelochemicals includes floral scents and nectars that attract insects and other pollinators and substances that play an important role in symbiotic relationships.
- An apneumone (from Greek a-pneum – ‘breathless or lifeless’) is defined as a substance, emitted by a non-living material, which evokes a reaction adaptively favourable to the receiving organism, but detrimental to another organism that may be found in or on the non-living material. For example, parasites or predators are attracted to non-living substances in which they may find another organism, their host or prey, by apneumones released from the non-living substance.
In many cases not a single semiochemical has an effect on its own but different groups of chemicals in a precisely defined mixture act in an effectively combined manner. In general, it can be said that the whole group of allelochemicals may find its application in plant protection. Nevertheless, metabolites falling in the allomone group represent the most studied group with the most potential at present.

6.2 Allomones – A Prospective Group of Substances for Alternative Plant Protection

As explained above, this group of substances includes plant metabolites that have some type of negative effect on insect behaviour providing benefit to the plants. The chemicals can be divided as follows according to their mode of action:

1. Repellents
2. Anti-ovipositors
3. Antifeedants

Repellents are substances that directly deter insects from settling on the plant. They include an entire group of simple aromatic hydrocarbons, which may be released into the environment, thus having a direct effect on insect chemoreceptors (Koul, 2005). Repellency often tends to be connected with anti-oviposition, as such substances deter females from settling on nutritive plants and prevent oviposition at the same time. However, anti-oviposition need not always be connected with repellency. It may be connected with antifeedancy very often – when upon settling on the plant, the female finds that the plant cannot provide food of good quality or acceptable for its descendants, and thus she flies off to seek a more suitable plant. The group of substances with an anti-oviposition effect includes a whole range of chemicals from simple aromatic terpenes, phenols or alkaloids to molecules falling in the group of polyphenols or limonoids (Koul, 2005).

The last group of substances – antifeedants – deter phytophagous insects against food consumption. This group of substances has been studied on a large scale in recent times and the use of such substances in plant protection against pests is connected with their significant potential. This group of chemicals also range from simple aromatic terpenes, phenols or alkaloids to molecules falling in the group of polyphenols or limonoids. At present, there are high expectations for this group of substances due to their practical use in plant protection (Isman, 1994; Koul, 2005; Pavela, 2007b).

The good prospects for the practical use of antifeedants are based on several factors. Most of the repellent substances fall into the group of aromatic hydrocarbons, which are volatile in the environment and their efficiency time is therefore reduced depending on period of application and dosage used. Numerous substances belonging to the polyphenols and higher terpenes are included in the category of antifeedants, which may have a much longer persistence time, thereby extending the efficiency time.
of products (Pavela and Herda, 2007a,b). Moreover, their antifeedant efficiency is often connected with further biological activity such as growth inhibition and cumulative mortality.

Allomones with antifeedant activity include a high percentage of substances that also meet the following requirements for development of new botanical insecticides:

- They are natural plant metabolites, safe for health and the environment;
- Such substances provide specific effects on individual pest species – they thus show high selectivity;
- Mixtures of substances with synergistic effects can be obtained, which prevent the development of pest resistance;
- Antifeedant substances usually show other biological effects such as growth inhibition, mortality and reduced fertility of surviving individuals, which increase the practical efficiency of the products (Isman, 2002; Koul, 2005).

All these characteristics increase the prospects for the use of antifeedant substances in plant protection. However, products based on allomones should be applied as a preventative measure, for example, at the time of pest invasion or its initial occurrence or at the time of larval incubation. Although a large number of biologically active substances and extracts from plants with antifeedant effects have been tested, only a limited number of products have been subjected to a detailed field application and in the development of plant protection products (Isman, 1994).

6.3 Current State of Antifeedant Research

The history of the research of substances that show antifeedant effects dates back to the 1930s. As early as 1932, Metzger and Grant tested about 500 plant extracts against Popilla japonica, although results were not substantially encouraging. Later, Pradhan et al. (1962) evaluated extracts of the Indian neem tree, Azadirachta indica, that prevented feeding by the desert locusts. Although terrestrial plants produce a diverse array of secondary metabolites, probably more than 100,000 unique compounds (Isman, 2002), today, about 900 compounds have been identified to possess feeding deterrence against insects (Koul, 2005).

In addition to various compounds isolated from plants or synthesized as insect antifeedants, several studies demonstrate the antifeedant efficacy in metabolite mixtures of plant essential oils or total extracts against a variety of insect species.

In recent years studies have revealed the antifeedant potential of plant essential oils against postharvest pests, aphids, thrips, lepidopterans, termites and mite pests (Hori, 1999; Hou-Houamin et al., 2002; Koul, 2005; Isman, 2006). Similarly, during the past few years much emphasis has been placed on demonstrating the antifeedant efficacy in total plant extracts (Mancebo et al., 2000a,b; Wang et al., 2000; Pavela, 2004a,b; Zhang et al., 2004;
Debrowski and Seredynska, 2007) as they seem to exhibit the activity as multicomponent systems. However, it is also well known that antifeedants show interspecific variability (Isman, 1993). The existence of such interspecific differences, as shown for many insect species, is encouraging with a view to searching selectively for specific feeding deterrents.

As already indicated, present research provides very important information on plant substances and their antifeedant efficiency. Nevertheless, it must be noted that the antifeedant efficiency of a significant number of known antifeedant compounds is dependent on the exposure period and their concentration. After a long exposure period, some of these compounds lose their antifeedant efficiency due to the development of resistance in the insects consuming the contaminated food (Koul, 2005). Nevertheless, such compounds may have other biological effects, at the same time, such as cumulative mortality or perhaps larval growth inhibition.

However, it should be emphasized that most of the antifeedant research is in the preliminary trial stage, although the activity of more than 900 compounds and several hundreds of plant extracts are known (Koul, 2005). However, it is expected that in the near future some novel efficacious plant-based compounds will be formulated as antifeedants, from the huge biodiversity provided by nature. Attention is currently being paid to promote the indigenous antifeedant plants by extolling their practical application to the farmers.

6.4 Mechanism of Antifeedant Action

Food selection among insect herbivores is a highly specialized phenomenon. While olfactory and physical aspects of plants or their organs can be important in insect host finding and acceptance (Miller and Strickler, 1984), the choice of food is based primarily upon contact chemoreception of various allelochemicals (Frazier, 1986; Stadler, 1992). In particular, dietary experience has influenced the ability of insects to taste plant chemicals that may have served as signals of suitability or unsuitability. Certain dietary constituents appeared to suppress the development of taste sensitivity to deterrents in an insect (Renwick, 2001). Avoidance of allelochemicals, when looked at from a behavioural point of view, is the outcome of interactions with chemoreceptors characterized by broad sensitivity to a spectrum of deterrents (Mullin et al., 1994).

According to Schoonhoven et al. (1992), there are four basic reasons why the chemosensory perception of feeding deterrents by phytophagous insects warrants special attention:

- Feeding deterrents are apparently more important in host-plant recognition than phagostimulants.
- A huge number of feeding deterrents exist, with variable molecular structures adding to their diversity.
- There are fewer deterrent receptors.
- Different deterrents may elicit different behavioural reactions, indicating the presence of a differential sensory coding system.
Studies of the chemosensoric insect system are only at the initial point of research, and knowledge of the mode of action of the substances is superficial and should be studied in detail. Such a lack of knowledge is particularly caused by the fact that suitable technologies for chemosensoric investigations have been available only relatively recently, making it possible to perform reliable measurements of response to substance at insect chemoreceptors.

Although research of chemoreceptors is important for a general understanding of efficiency of individual antifeedant substances, from the practical point of view, experiments based on simple biological tests are those mostly used in antifeedancy studies.

Bioassays against insects have been used for decades as a means of elucidating the activity of many chemical components or extracts. The major goals achieved by employing bioassay techniques are to determine the roles of naturally occurring chemicals, identify the mechanism of resistance in crop plants and to find various insect control agents. The basic design to study deterrents is to present to an insect a substrate with the candidate chemical and to measure the response of the insect. Therefore, substrate choice and presentation are important factors for a successful bioassay. Both natural and artificial substrates are used, depending upon the goal of the experiment. On one hand one may emphasize that artificial substrates offer uniformity, but at the same time studies have shown that thresholds for the same deterrent may vary as much as 1000 times between natural and artificial substrates (Schoonhoven, 1982), perhaps due to differences in porosity or uptake rates by the insect. For sucking insects, the principal artificial substrate used has been a chemically defined liquid presented between natural or artificial membranes (Koul, 2005).

However, whatever the substrate may be, it is important that no textural differences should occur between the control and test substrates. Colour differences may also influence insects during testing. Care is needed to ensure the least hindrance with the presentation to the insect chemoreceptors, which should be in the usual way. Natural substrates could be whole plant, leaves, leaf discs, or specialized substrates such as twigs, blocks of wood, board, and paper towel discs. Artificial substrates usually include agar-based artificial diets, simple liquid-based artificial diets, styropors, or discs of foamed polystyrene, or polyurethane, and glass fibre discs (Koul, 2005).

Leaf discs are commonly used in preference or consumption bioassays with chewing insects. These assays are important in estimating the biological potential of the antifeedant effect of plant extracts in screening studies, and they correspond as much as possible to the conditions of the practical application. However, it must be emphasized that these assays are short term. For the purpose of practical use, further biological assays must be performed in extracts or substances showing the best biological activity, which will be of a long-term nature and will provide evidence on the practical applicability of the substances or extracts in plant protection. Nevertheless, such assays are irreplaceable as screening assays.

Individual types of biological assays used for evaluating antifeedant efficiency are discussed by Koul (2005). However, in general, such assays can
be divided into two groups according to the mode of the experiment: a choice assay or a no-choice assay.

The principle is that insects can choose either control or treated discs (choice) or insects may be exposed to the test substance only (no choice). The no-choice situation often is more representative of our agricultural system, especially for monophagous species, but at the same time it is very sensitive (Fig. 6.1).

The general procedure adopted in this test is that measured leaf discs are punched out from substrates and treated either on one side or both sides with a known quantity of test material in a carrier solvent. It is preferable to use emulsified solutions in water in order to avoid interference with leaf disc texture due to solvents (Isman, 2002). A method has been described by which leaf surfaces can be covered with a uniform amount of a test chemical for bioassay with leaf-feeding insects. Chemicals are dissolved in gelatine solutions, which can be sprayed evenly and which will adhere well to many leaf surfaces. Upon accurate application, the dosage per leaf area can be determined, which is an important practical viewpoint for the application itself.

After application, the leaf discs are dried at room temperature and then fed to candidate insects. Usually the arenas used are Petri dishes of variable sizes in which one treated and one control disc is placed (choice), or both the leaf discs are treated (no choice). In certain experiments five to ten treated and untreated leaf discs are used and placed alternately in the Petri dishes in a choice situation. The number of larvae introduced into each arena is variable depending upon the size and stage of the larvae used. There is also considerable variation in the duration of experiments, both long term and short

Fig. 6.1. No-choice test with extract obtained from Leuza carthamoides against larvae Leptinotarsa decemlineata, 48 h after application of 1% extract.
term. The consumption in each experiment is measured using various digitizing leaf area meters.

The bioassay is conducted for a very short duration (2 to 8 h) or until 50% of either disc is consumed. Several formulas and ways of denomination are presented in the literature for calculating the biological effect (Koul, 2005). Nevertheless, the following formula to calculate feeding deterrence provides the highest accuracy:

\[
\text{Feeding deterrence (\%) } = \frac{(C - T)}{(C + T)} \times 100,
\]

where C and T are the consumption of control and treated discs, respectively (Koul, 2005; Pavela et al., 2008).

As mentioned above, no-choice assays are most important from the practical point of view, because they are closest in nature to practical application. It is thus advisable to favour such assays.

When 90–100% feeding deterrence is obtained in the assays, efficient concentration (EC50 and EC95) can be determined in subsequent assays, which is another important parameter for the mutual comparison of extract or substance efficiency. Moreover, it is also of equal importance to determine the time during which the given insect does not consume food treated with EC95 as insects may become habituated to antifeedant substances or the biologically active substances may be degraded due to the action of the environment (Koul, 2005). The insects can thus overcome the initial resistance against food treated with antifeedant substances, which may cause the products to lose their primary efficiency. However, it must be emphasized that in this respect, information on the period during which the insect does not consume food treated with antifeedant substances is very sporadic, and therefore the experiments must be completed with such information.

### 6.5 Current Practical Use of Antifeedant Substances

A long way still remains ahead in order to arrive at the full application potential offered by plant allomones in plant protection. No commercial products based purely on antifeedant efficiency are yet available. Nevertheless, some products that primarily contain substances with an insecticide effect, and at the same time also show an antifeedant and anti-oviposition effect, are used at present.

Perhaps the most widely known application of antifeedant effects relates to extracts made of the Indian plant *Azadirachta indica* A. Juss (syn. *Melia azedarach*). *A. indica* has been well known in India and neighbouring countries for more than 2000 years as one of the most versatile medicinal plants having a wide spectrum of biological activity. *A. indica* A. Juss and *M. azedarach* are two closely related species of Meliaceae.

Extracts made of seeds of this plant contain numerous biologically active substances with insecticidal, fungicidal and bactericidal effects, used in many industries, ranging from medicine to agriculture. Many works have been published concerning the plant itself, its useful substances, and biological
efficiency including antifeedant effects (Jacobson, 1989; Schmutterer, 1990; Ascher, 1993).

In the case of *A. indica*, substances falling in the group of limonoids (azadirachtin, salanin, nimbin etc.) are responsible for antifeedant activity. Both primary and secondary antifeedant effects have been observed in the case of azadirachtin (Ascher, 1993). Primary effects include the process of chemoreception by the organism (e.g. sensory organs on mouthparts which stimulate the organism to begin feeding), whereas secondary processes are effects such as gut motility disorders due to topical application only (Schmutterer, 1990; Ascher, 1993). Inhibition of feeding behaviour by azadirachtin results from the blockage of input receptors for phagostimulants or by the stimulation of deterrent receptor cells or both (Mordue and Blackwell, 1993). In a recent study by Yoshida and Toscano (1994), the relative consumption rate of *Heliotris virescens* larvae treated with azadirachtin was 25% of the control, equivalent to the lowest assimilation efficiency of all natural insecticides tested. In another study, larvae of *Heliotris virescens* consumed less food, gained less weight, and were less efficient at converting ingested and digested food into biomass (Barnby and Klocke, 1987). Sensitivity between species to the antifeedant effects of azadirachtin is profound. Order Lepidoptera appear most sensitive to azadirachtin's antifeedant effects, with Coleoptera, Hemiptera and Homoptera being less sensitive (Mordue and Blackwell, 1993).

A whole range of commercial products based on azadirachtin are sold at present; however, they utilize another significant effect of azadirachtin type tetranotriterpenoids, namely the growth inhibition effect (Schmutterer, 1990).

Extracts from the Indian tree of the *Pongamia* genus are another example of the commercial application of products based on antifeedant and anti-oviposition effects. This genus has one species only, that is *Pongamia pinnata* L. (syn. *P. glabra* Vent.; *Derris indica* Lamk.) which belongs to family Leguminosae; subfamily Papilionaceae (Kumar and Kalindhar, 2003).

*P. pinnata* is a rich source of flavonoids, the B-ring is either linked to a furan or pyran ring. Some of these flavonoids are known to have biological activity. Antifeedant activities of various extracts of *P. pinnata* were observed against many insect pests of different crops. Under laboratory conditions, 0.1% water emulsion of pongam oil (so-called karanj oil) showed antifeedant activity against *Amsacta moorei* Butler (Verma and Singh, 1985) or *Spodoptera litura* F. (Kumar and Kalindhar, 2003). The pongam oil is known to possess strong repellent activity for egg-laying against many insect pests (Khaire et al., 1993; Kumar and Kalindhar, 2003). The aqueous extracts of seeds and plants of this species are known to possess ovicidal action against *Phthorimaea operculella* Zell. and *Helopeltis theivora* Waterh. (Deka et al., 1998).

The repellent activities, including host deterrence and anti-oviposition, of pongam oil against the adults of the common greenhouse whitefly *Trialeurodes vaporariorum* Westwood were tested in greenhouses (Pavela and Herda, 2007a,b). Chrysanthemum plants treated with different concentrations (0.5–2.0%) of water-suspended pongam oil showed relatively long-lasting host deterrent and anti-oviposition effects on the adults of greenhouse
whitefly. Although the repellent effect declined in time and concentration, strong effects on the reduction of oviposition were found, while this effect lasts at least 12 days after application, dependent on concentration.

Another example of commercially produced extracts with antifeedant effects is represented by aromatic plants. For aromatic plants, substances responsible for the smell and those that may be isolated using distillation or supercritical extraction have been studied the most. This group of substances includes the mono- and di-sesquiterpenes, phenols and some other hydrocarbons similar in structure (Pavela, 2008a).

Many monoterpenes from plant sources have been evaluated as feeding deterrents against insects (Koul, 1982). However, capillin, capillarlin, methyl eugenol and ar-curcumene isolated from Artemisia capillaris show promise as antifeedant compounds against cabbage butterfly larvae, Pieris rapae crucivora. The relative strong antifeedant activity of capillin and capillarlin suggest that the C=O carbonyl group instead of CH2 methylene group, a C≡C in a side chain and a lactone ring are some of the many factors that contribute to the biological activity (Yano, 1987). Various derivatives of these base compounds such as methyl eugenol reveal that the 3,4-dimethyl group and 1-substituent of 3,4-dimethoxy-1-substituted benzenes contribute to the antifeedant activity (Yano and Kamimura, 1993).

Aromatic hydrocarbons show a significant direct insecticide activity, so consequently they have been best studied (Pavela, 2006b, 2008a,b). Nevertheless, antifeedant efficiency is connected not only with aromatic hydrocarbons in aromatic plants, but also with other polyphenolic substances synthesized by such plants as part of their defence strategy against diseases and pests.

These polyphenolic substances are currently being studied and because of their huge biochemical variety, it is highly probable that an antifeedant activity will be discovered in the near future that would lead to practical application.

Recent results of biological activity studies of substances obtained from Eurasian region plants, too, provide evidence that primary research is necessary and may lead to commercial application. Very strong, long-lasting antifeedant activity of seed extracts and root extracts of Leuzea carthamoides plants against the Colorado potato beetle (Leptinotarsa decemlineata) was found (Pavela, 2004a, 2006a) (Fig. 6.2. a,b). This antifeedant efficiency against the above mentioned pest led to the formulation of a new product based on antifeedant activity. The research on this aspect, which has been performed both in our laboratory and in departments around the world, is thus providing its first results.

6.6 Prospects for Products Based on Antifeedant Substances

Many feeding inhibitors from plant sources have so far given excellent results in laboratory conditions. In field situations only a few of them are satisfactory alternatives to traditional pest management. The chemical control is usually
with broad-spectrum insecticides, and they have to be broad spectrum by necessity. They have to sell in amounts large enough to accommodate financial development, research, and marketing.

Nevertheless, the use of antifeedants in pest-management programmes has enormous appeal. They satisfy the need to protect specific crops while
avoiding damage to non-target organisms so the potential value is great. In fact, insect damage to plants results from feeding or from transmission of pathogens during feeding; therefore, the chemicals that reduce pest injury by rendering plants unattractive or unpalatable can be considered as potential substitutes for conventional insecticides. The host choice of generalists and to some extent specialists may be modified when feeding inhibitors are used. The range of insect species targeted may be chosen by either the chemical structure of the inhibitor or the composition of a mixture of inhibitors, if different inhibitors are active against different species within the range. Therefore, a multi-component defence strategy of plants themselves could be used, as shown in number of recent studies with non-azadirachtin types of limonoid inhibitors (Koul, 2005) where non-azadirachtin limonoids have two different modes of action, such as feeding deterrence and physiological toxicity, which play a significant role in the potentiation effect. Moreover some other plant extracts have high potential in commercial application (Pavela, 2007b).

For the research to be successful, further assays must be performed and suitable, new substances with high antifeedant efficiency must be sought. Important research will also concern determining synergism of the effects of biologically active substances as such synergism seems to be very significant in increasing the biological activity of substances that have insecticide effects (Pavela, 2008b).

Most feeding inhibitors are less stable chemicals than traditional insecticides and act with lower residual activity and environmental impact. Natural predators and parasitoids remain unharmed by feeding deterrents targeting the herbaceous host insects. As the target sites of antifeedants are different, pesticide-resistant insect populations will still be affected by feeding inhibitors. Multi-component tactics will also slow down the resistance development to these new compounds. In fact, lack of resistance is very useful for the practical application of antifeedants as it is unlikely that oligophagous insects could develop general resistance to such deterrents, because this would result in a rapid change of their host-plant range, which is determined mainly by the occurrence of such chemicals in the non-host plants. Different molecular structures of possible antifeedant compounds could be another advantage. The blend of active constituents might diffuse the selection process, mitigating the development of resistance compared to that expected with a single active ingredient. This also supports the earlier mentioned contention that combination mixtures of antifeedants could be more effective than individual compounds.

The huge variety of defensive mechanisms of plants, including the synthesis of allelochemicals, thus provides a research focus in seeking new environmentally safe products to provide plant protection against phytophagous insects. However, such research should be intensified and needs full cooperation between basic or applied research, manufacturers and the users. Such cooperation may lead subsequently to an important reduction in the dependence of agriculture on chemical industries synthesizing toxic insecticides, as well as increasing the quantity of safe foodstuffs and improving the health of this planet’s inhabitants.
Acknowledgement

This study was supported by grants of the Czech Republic Ministry of Education, Youth and Sports (ME09079).

References


7 Potency of Plant Products in Control of Virus Diseases of Plants

H.N. Verma1 AND V.K. Baranwal2

1Jaipur National University, Jaipur, India; 2Advanced Centre of Plant Virology, New Delhi, India

Abstract
The exploitation of the inherent resistance phenomenon and manipulation of inducible defence in plants is currently receiving much attention by researchers to control virus infection. Recent advances in the molecular biology of resistance to virus infection have presented new approaches for making susceptible crops resistant against virus infection. These approaches include pathogen-derived resistance to viruses (coat-protein-mediated resistance, movement-protein-mediated resistance, replicase- and protease-mediated resistance) and virus resistance through transgenic expression of antiviral proteins of non-viral origin. Endogenously occurring substances in a few higher plants have also been reported to induce systemic resistance in susceptible hosts against virus infections. Ribosome-inactivating proteins (RIPs) may also play an important role in the prevention of virus infection.

7.1 Introduction
Viruses prove to be a menace to humans and the environment because of their disease-causing nature. They harm crops and cause economic losses. The recent outbreak of cotton leaf curl virus disease in cotton in the northern cotton-growing region of India has led to a huge yield loss of cotton fibre. Approximately 12,000 hectares of cotton were affected by leaf curl virus disease during 1996 in Rajasthan alone. An annual loss of US$300 million is caused by mungbean yellow mosaic virus (MYMV) by reducing the yield of black gram, mungbean and soyabean (Varma et al., 1992). The worldwide losses caused by viral diseases are estimated at about US$60 billion per year.

To reduce losses, scientists have explored several strategies to control virus infection. However, it is the exploitation of the inherent resistance phenomenon and manipulation of inducible defence in plants that are receiving much attention from researchers. The common approach for
introducing resistance against a virus in crops has been achieved through conventional plant breeding. Limited success has been achieved through this method. Recent advances in the molecular biology of resistance to virus infection have provided new approaches to making susceptible crops resistant against virus infection. These approaches include pathogen-derived resistance to viruses (coat-protein-mediated resistance, movement-protein-mediated resistance, replicase- and protease-mediated resistance) and virus resistance through the transgenic expression of antiviral proteins of non-viral origin (Baulcombe, 1994).

Resistance of plants to virus diseases may be broadly categorized into two groups: (i) constitutive; and (ii) induced. Constitutive resistance is heritable and occurs in cultivars, which have gene(s) conferring resistance to viral infection, whereas induced resistance has to be conferred afresh upon a susceptible plant and is normally not heritable. Induced resistance operates through the activation of natural defence mechanisms of the host plant. The two forms of induced resistance are systemic acquired resistance (SAR) and systemic induced resistance (SIR). In both SAR and SIR, plant defences are preconditioned by prior infection or treatment that results in resistance (or tolerance) against subsequent challenge by a pathogen or parasite. Great strides have been made over the past 20 years in understanding the physiological and biochemical basis of SAR and SIR. Much of this knowledge is due to the identification of a number of chemical and biological elicitors, some of which are commercially available for use in conventional agriculture. However, the effectiveness of these elicitors to induce SAR and SIR as a practical means to control various plant diseases is just being realized.

The infection of plants by necrotizing pathogens, including fungi, bacteria and viruses, induces systemic resistance to subsequent attack by the pathogens. This resistance is called SAR (Kessman et al., 1994; Ryals et al., 1994). It can also be activated in numerous plants by pre-inoculation with biotic inducers including pathogens (Sticher et al., 1997). Endogenously occurring substances in a few higher plants have been reported to induce systemic resistance in susceptible hosts against virus infections. Such plant extracts have been used for protecting economically important crops against virus infections (Verma and Baranwal, 1989). Endogenously occurring virus inhibitors may also be ribosome-inactivating proteins (RIPs) (Barbieri and Stirpe, 1982; Mansouri et al., 2006; Zhang et al., 2007). Virus infection is prevented if a mixture of RIP and virus is exogenously applied on the leaf surface of a susceptible host. RIPs presumably inhibit virus infection by entering the cytoplasm along with the virus particle and inhibiting protein synthesis on host ribosomes, thus preventing early virus replication (Reddy et al., 1986).

On the basis of their antiviral activity, virus inhibitors from plants can be grouped into two categories:

1. Plant products that inhibit virus infection by inducing an antiviral state either at the site of application (local resistance) and/or at a remote site (systemic resistance) when applied a few minutes or hours prior to virus
challenge (Verma and Mukerji, 1975; Verma and Awasthi, 1979, 1980; Verma et al., 1984; Verma et al., 1995a; Prasad et al., 1995; Verma et al., 1996). Such plant products have been called systemic resistance inducers (SRIs).

2. Basic proteins from plants that function by inactivating ribosomes of the host and have been called RIPs (Barbieri et al., 1993, 2003; Van Damme et al., 2001).

### 7.2 Systemic Resistance Inducers (SRIs)

Induction of systemic resistance by plant extracts has been reviewed from time to time (Verma, 1985; Verma and Prasad, 1992; Verma et al., 1995a; Verma et al., 1998). Physico-chemical characteristics of systemic resistance inducers from plants such as *Boerhaavia diffusa* (Verma and Awasthi, 1979, 1980; Srivastava, 1995); *Mirabilis jalapa* (Verma and Kumar, 1980); *Cuscuta reflexa* (Awasthi, 1981); *Clerodendrum aculeatum* (Verma et al., 1984; Verma et al., 1996; Kumar et al., 1997; Srivastava et al., 2008); *Bougainvillea spectabilis* (Verma et al., 1985; Verma and Dwivedi, 1984; Srivastava, 1995); *Pseuderanthemum atropurpureum* (Verma et al., 1985) have been studied in some detail (Table 7.1).

Induced resistance operates through the activation of natural defence mechanisms of the host plant. Extracts from brinjal (Verma and Mukherjee, 1975) and a few other higher plants such as *Boerhaavia diffusa* (Verma et al., 1979), *Bougainvillea* (Verma and Dwivedi, 1984), *Clerodendrum* (Verma et al., 1996; Kumar et al., 1997) and *Datura* (Verma et al., 1982) induce systemic resistance to viral multiplication in plants. The active products present in these

#### Table 7.1. Characteristics of systemic resistance inducers obtained from some higher plants.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Characteristics</th>
<th>BD</th>
<th>CA/CI</th>
<th>BS</th>
<th>PA</th>
<th>CR</th>
<th>MJ</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Source</td>
<td>Root</td>
<td>Leaf</td>
<td>Leaf</td>
<td>Leaf</td>
<td>Leaf</td>
<td>Leaf</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Thermal inactivation points (°C)</td>
<td>80</td>
<td>90</td>
<td>80</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>70</td>
<td>90</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nature</td>
<td>Glyco-protein</td>
<td>Basic Protein</td>
<td>Protein</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>Protein</td>
<td>Protein</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Molecular weight (kDa)</td>
<td>30</td>
<td>34/29 and 34</td>
<td>28</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>14–18</td>
<td>24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Active against</td>
<td>TMV</td>
<td>TMV</td>
<td>TMV</td>
<td>TMV</td>
<td>TMV</td>
<td>TMV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>SHRV</td>
<td>SHRV</td>
<td>SHRV</td>
<td>SHRV</td>
<td>SHRV</td>
<td>SHRV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>GMV</td>
<td>GMV</td>
<td>CGMMV</td>
<td>CGMMV</td>
<td>GMV</td>
<td>PYY</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>PLRV</td>
<td>PLRV</td>
<td>PLRV</td>
<td>PLRV</td>
<td>PLRV</td>
<td>PLRV</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

BD = *Boerhaavia diffusa*; CA = *Clerodendrum aculeatum*; CI = *C. inerme*; BS = *Bougainvillea spectabilis*; PA = *Pseuderanthemum atropurpureum*; CR = *Cuscuta reflexa*; MJ = *Mirabilis jalapa*. TMV = Tobacco mosaic virus; SHRV = Sunn hemp rosette virus; GMV = Gomphrena mosaic virus; TRSV = Tobacco Ringspot virus; TmYMV = Tomato Yellow Mosaic virus; CGMMV = Cucumber green mottle mosaic virus; PVY = Potato virus Y; PLRV = Papaya leaf reduction virus.
extracts have no direct effect on viruses; their antiviral activity is mediated by host cells in which they induce the antiviral state. All groups of plants respond to treatment with extracts of these plants. The active products in plant extracts inducing resistance are mostly small molecular weight proteins which sometimes may be glycosylated. These proteins are highly thermostable and can withstand prolonged treatment at alkaline/acidic pH. Plant products from different species vary in molecular weight and may differ in other characteristics too. Incubation of viruses with these antiviral agents has no effect on viral infectivity, but they exert their antiviral effect by rendering host cells incapable of supporting viral replication. Resistance development is inhibited by actinomycin D and cyclohexamide. This implies that resistance is dependent on DNA-coded information of the cell and the antiviral activity of the antiviral agent is indirect. The antiviral agents showed no host specificity and were active against a wide range of viruses (Faccioli and Capponi, 1983).

Systemic resistance inducers obtained from plants have been shown to be effective against a wide range of viruses (Verma and Awasthi, 1979). Leaf extract of Clerodendrum aculeatum is active against TMV, SHRV, GMV, TmYMV, (Verma et al., 1984), and an extract of Mirabilis jalapa is effective against TmYMV, PLRV, CMV, CGMMV (Verma and Kumar, 1980). The extract-treated plants become resistant to attack by diverse pathogens such as fungi, bacteria and viruses (McIntyre et al., 1981).

**Mechanism of systemic induced resistance by botanicals**

Systemic induced resistance against virus infection by botanicals is not yet fully understood. The botanical resistance inducers themselves do not act on the virus directly. Verma and Awasthi (1980) demonstrated the de novo synthesis of a virus inhibitory agent (VIA) in untreated leaves of Nicotinia glutinosa, whose basal leaves were treated with root extract of B. diffusa. These induced substances inhibited almost completely tobacco mosaic virus in N. glutinosa, Datura stramonium and D. metel but inhibition of tobacco ring spot virus or Gomphrena mosaic virus in Chenopodium amaranticolor was less pronounced. In another study Verma and Dwivedi (1984) found that VIA induced in C. tetragonoloba inhibited completely the infection of tabamo-viruses in all the seven hypersensitive hosts tested. Yet in another study by Khan and Verma (1990), it was observed that VIA produced in C. tetragonoloba following treatment with extract of Pseuderanthemum bicolor inhibited completely SHRV, TMV, cucumber green mottle mosaic virus and PVX in their respective hypersensitive hosts, namely C. tetragonoloba, D. stramonium, C. amaranticolor and G. globosa. However, the VIA produced by B. spectabilis in N. tabacum cv. Samsun NN, N. glutinosa, and D. stramonium was less effective against TMV (Verma and Dwivedi, 1984). Thus, it appears that induction of systemic resistance by botanicals is non-specific and is effective against a broad spectrum of viruses.

The production of VIA is maximum after 24 h of application of B. diffusa root extract in N. glutinosa. However, B. spectabilis induced maximum VIA
activity after 48 h of its application in *N. glutinosa*. Thus, VIA production in a host is time specific but a general phenomenon. Properties of VIA produced in *C. tetragonoloba* after application of *B. spectabilis* leaf extract has been studied by Verma and Dwivedi (1984). The VIA could be precipitated by ammonium sulfate and hydrolysed by trypsin but not by ribonulease indicating that it was a protein rather than a nucleic acid. The VIA induced by *Pseudanthemum bicolor* in *C. tetragonoloba* was also proteinaceous with a molecular weight of 15 kDa (Khan and Verma et al., 1990). The production of VIA was sensitive to actinomycin D (Verma and Dwivedi, 1984). The mobile signal produced VIA in the entire plant system. It appears that the putative messenger becomes active soon after induction and starts producing VIA, reaches a maximal concentration and then starts to decline.

Commonly associated with systemic acquired resistance induced by pathogens is the systemic synthesis of several families of serologically distinct low molecular weight pathogenesis-related (PR) proteins. The localization and timing of some PR proteins suggested their possible involvement in acquired resistance against viruses. However, definite proof that the induction of PR proteins causes the acquired resistance has not been given. Plobner and Leiser (1990) did not find the production of PR proteins during systemic resistance induced by carnation extract in Xanthi-nc tobacco plants. Absence of PR proteins during induction of SAR by botanicals suggests that another biochemical chain of reaction, other than one operating in pathogen/chemical induced SAR, might be operating during botanical induced systemic resistance against virus infection in plants.

Durrant et al. (2004) reported that SAR is a mechanism of induced defence that confers long-lasting protection against a broad spectrum of microorganisms. SAR requires the signal molecule salicylic acid (SA) and is associated with accumulation of PR proteins, which are thought to contribute to resistance.

Hansen (1989), while reviewing antiviral chemicals for plant disease control, gave the following characteristics of an ideal antiviral compound that will serve all purposes for virus disease management in crops:

- Soluble in water or non-phytotoxic solvents.
- Effective against at least some agriculturally important viruses at non-phytotoxic concentrations.
- Easily taken up by plants and distributed throughout the system.
- Non-toxic by itself and in its catabolic forms to humans, plants and wildlife.

Botanical resistance inducers can be classified as ideal virus-suppressing agents, as they have all the characteristics of an ideal antiviral compound. The resistance-inducing proteins from *Boerhaavia diffusa* and *Clerodendrum aculeatum* can be applied directly by spraying on systemic hosts, for management of some commonly occurring virus diseases under greenhouse conditions or field conditions. The agricultural role of endogenous antiviral substances of plant origin has been reviewed by Verma et al. (1995).
The induced antiviral state in *N. glutinosa* by SRI from *C. aculeatum* decreased considerably after 3 days (Verma and Varsha, 1994). However, the resistance inducing ability of *C. aculeatum* SRI could be enhanced up to 6 days by priming it with certain proteinaceous additives (Verma and Versha, 1994). The activity is probably enhanced by modification or enhanced stability of proteinaceous inducers by these additives. Thus, one unexploited approach to engineering virus resistance is the manipulation of inducible defences in plants. The production of systemic resistance by the use of botanicals will be effective against a broad spectrum of viruses and will not break down when plants are exposed to high temperatures.

Suppression of disease symptoms by true inhibitors may be accomplished either by acting on the first stage of the infection process, which is the adsorption of the virus into the host cell, or by blocking or competing with the virus receptor sites on the leaf surface (Ragetli, 1957; Ragetli and Weintraub, 1962) or by affecting the susceptibility of the host by altering host cell metabolism (Verma and Awasthi, 1979). Bozarth and Ross (1964) suggested the phenomenon of SAR as a result of the initial infection by which a signal was generated at the site of application and transported throughout the plant to respond more effectively to the subsequent infection.

Induction of systemic resistance by resistance inducers obtained from plant extracts was first detailed by Verma and Mukerjee (1975). Extracts from a few plants induce an antiviral state by acting through an actinomycin D (AMD) sensitive mechanism (Verma and Awasthi, 1979; Verma et al., 1984). AMD is an inhibitor of protein synthesis at the transcription level. Concomitant application of AMD with SRI reversed the induction of resistance in susceptible plants. However, induction of resistance remains unaffected when AMD is applied 12 h post-treatment. This gives an indication that plant-extract-induced resistance is a host-mediated response (Verma et al., 1979).

The activity at a distance from the point of application might be explained by the supposition that the SRI present in the plant extract selectively attaches at the surface, and a type of chain reaction starts that elicits the transcription of defence-related genes, leading to the production of a new VIA (Verma and Awasthi, 1979).

**Ribosome inactivating proteins (RIPs)**

The basic proteins that function by inactivating the ribosome of the host have been called RIPs. The RIPs have been shown to be N-glycosidases, which remove a specific adenine base in a conserved loop of the 28s rRNA of eukaryotic organisms (Endo and Tsurugi, 1987; Endo et al., 1987) or the 23s rRNA of prokaryotes (Hartely et al., 1991). Such damaged ribosomes can no longer bind the elongation factor-2 (Gessner and Irvin, 1980; Rodes and Irvin, 1981). The RIPs damage the ribosome, arrest protein synthesis and cause cell death. RIPs show antiviral activity against both animal and plant viruses (Barbieri and Stirpe, 1982) and have been classified into two types (Stirpe
et al., 1992; Barbieri et al., 1993). Type-I RIPs consist of a single polypeptide chain that is enzymatically active. These are scarcely toxic to animals and inhibit protein synthesis in cell-free systems, but have little or no effect on whole cells. The three well known antiviral proteins PAPs, dianthins and MAP belong to this category. Type-II RIPs contain two types of polypeptide chains. Chain A is linked to chain B through a disulfide bond. Chain B binds the toxin to the cell surface and chain A enzymatically inactivates the ribosomes (Olsnes and Pihl, 1982). These are toxic to cells and inhibit protein synthesis in intact cells and in cell-free systems. Several similarities exist among the type-I RIPs. They are all basic proteins with a molecular weight in the range 26–32 kDa. They have an alkaline isoelectric point and are usually stable, being resistant to denaturing agents and protease. A majority of the RIPs are glycoproteins. Type-I RIPs are strongly immunogenic. Strocchi et al. (1992) established that cross reactivity between RIPs obtained from unrelated plants was either very weak or absent.

Recently cloning and expression of antiviral/ribosome-inactivating protein from Bougainvillea xbuttiana was reported by Choudhary et al. (2008). They reported that full-length cDNA encoding ribosome inactivating/antiviral protein (RIP/AVP) consisted of 1364 nucleotides with an open reading frame (ORF) of 960 nucleotides encoding a 35.49 kDa protein of 319 amino acids. The three well known antiviral proteins, namely PAPs (from Phytolacca americana), dianthins (from Dianthus caryophyllus) and MAPs (from Mirabilis jalapa) belong to the category of type-I RIPs.

Pokeweed antiviral proteins (PAPs)

The antiviral protein present in the leaves of Phytolacca americana was purified to homogeneity and its molecular weight determined as 29 kDa (Irvin, 1975). This protein, called pokeweed antiviral protein (PAP), had a PI of 8.1 (Irvin, 1983). The antiviral effect of PAP was most pronounced when it was co-inoculated with the virus. PAP also inhibited virus infection when applied prior to virus challenge. Local lesion formation by TMV on N. tabacum cv. Xanthi-nc was inhibited by nearly 70% even after 48 h of treatment. The virus inhibitory effect of PAP increased with the decrease in the time lapse between treatment and challenge inoculation. PAP was less effective in preventing virus infection when applied a short time after virus inoculation. No inhibition was observed when PAP was applied 50 min after virus infection (Chen et al., 1991). PAP reduced infectivity of several mechanically transmitted RNA and DNA viruses when the purified virus or sap from virus-infected plants was mixed with an equal volume of PAP solution and the mixture rubbed on the leaves of the local-lesion hosts (N. glutinosa/TMV; Chenopodium quinoa/CMV; C. amaranticolor/TMV, CMV, alfalfa mosaic virus, PVY; Gomphrena globosa/PVX) or systemic hosts (Brassica campestris/cauliﬂower mosaic virus; N. benthamiana/African cassava mosaic virus). PAP, thus, appears to be a general inhibitor of virus infection (Tomlinson et al., 1974; Stevens et al., 1981;
H.N. Verma and V.K. Baranwal

PAP also shows antiviral activity against several animal viruses. It is toxic to cells infected with poliovirus (Ussery et al., 1977) and influenza virus (Tomlinson et al., 1974). It inhibits multiplication of herpes simplex virus type 1 (Arnon and Irvin, 1980) and human immunodeficiency virus (HIV; Zarling et al., 1990). *P. americana* is now known to contain three proteins (PAP I, II and III) with similar biological properties. A new insight into the antiviral mechanism of PAP is that PAP depurination of Brome mosaic virus RNA impedes both RNA replication and subgenomic RNA transcription (Picard et al., 2005).

Rajmohan et al. (1999) reported that PAP isoforms PAP-I, PAP-II and PAP-III depurinate RNA of HIV-I. A non-toxic PAP mutant inhibiting pathogen infection via a novel SA-independent pathway was reported by Zoubenko et al. (2000). PAP inhibits translation by depurinating the conserved sarcin/ricin loop of the large ribosomal RNA. Depurinating ribosomes are unable to bind elongation factor 2, and, thus, the translocation step of the elongation cycle is inhibited. Ribosomal conformation is required for depurination that leads to subsequent translation inhibition (Mansouri et al., 2006).

**Carnation antiviral proteins (Dianthins)**

Sap from carnation leaves shows virus inhibitory activity (Van Kammen et al., 1961; Ragetli et al., 1962). Dianthin 30 and 32 were isolated from the leaves of *Dianthus caryophyllus* (Ragetli et al., 1962). Local lesion production by TMV on *N. glutinosa* was inhibited by 100% when the inhibitor was co-inoculated with the virus (Stevens et al., 1981). The molecular weights as determined by SDS–PAGE are 29.5 and 31.7 kDa, respectively (Stirpe et al., 1981). Immunoelectrophoresis revealed that dianthin 32 is distributed in the growing shoots and in the young and old leaves of *D. caryophyllus* and dianthin 30 is distributed throughout the plant (Reisbig and Bruland, 1983). The two are glycoproteins containing mannose and show a weak cross reaction. The nucleotide sequence of cDNA encoding dianthin 30 has been determined (Legname et al., 1991). The carnation proteins are also inducers of systemic resistance (Plobner and Leiser, 1990). Cho et al. (2000) performed isolation and characterization of cDNA encoding ribosome inactivating protein from *Dianthus sinensis* L.

**Mirabilis antiviral protein (MAP)**

The roots, leaves and stem of *Mirabilis jalapa* show high inhibitory activity against plant viruses. The *Mirabilis jalapa* leaf extract, when used as a foliar spray 24 h prior to virus inoculation, suppressed disease symptoms on a few systemic hosts (tomato/tomato yellow mottle virus; *Cucumis melo* var. momordica/CMV; *Cucumis sativa*/cucumber green mottle mosaic virus; tomato/tomato yellow mosaic virus; urd/yellow mosaic of urd) (Verma and
Kumar, 1980). A 50–60% reduction of the virus content in the treated plants was observed in the infectivity assays. *M. jalapa* extract was able to check the population of aphids and whiteflies and, thereby, control the natural spread of a few viruses on the systemic hosts (Verma and Kumar, 1980).

MAP isolated from root inhibits mechanical transmission of TMV, PVY, cucumber green mottle mosaic virus, and turnip mosaic virus on local-lesion and systemic hosts and can induce systemic resistance of a low order when applied to basal leaves (Kubo et al., 1990). The purified protein consists of a single polypeptide without a sugar moiety and has a molecular weight of 24.2 kDa. It is a basic protein rich in lysine content, with a PI of 9.8 (Kubo et al., 1990). The complete amino acid sequence of MAP has been determined. It consists of 250 amino acids and its molecular weight as determined from the sequence is 27,833 kDa. The native MAP was resistant to protease digestion (Habuka et al., 1989).

MAP produced by *M. jalapa* cells in suspension culture showed comparable biological activity with that of the roots and leaves and also reacted positively with anti-MAP serum (Ikeda et al., 1987). Several nutritional and hormonal factors also affect the formation of MAP by *M. jalapa* cells in suspension culture (Ikeda et al., 1987). Bolognesi et al. (2002) reported ribosome-inactivating and adenine polynucleotide glycosylase activities in *M. jalapa* L. tissues.

**Ricinus (RICIN A) antiviral protein**

The ricinus antiviral protein is a type II RIP isolated from *Ricinus communis* that has a molecular weight of 65 kDa. Its is a heterodimer consisting of chain A similar to the type-I RIP and chain B linked together by a disulfide bond. Chain B has great similarity to mammalian lectins A. Once inside the cell chain A acts as a type-I RIP and inactivates protein translation machinery. The cDNA for ricin has been cloned (Lamb et al., 1985). Both A and B chains are encoded by a single gene which has no intron. Detection of ricin and other ribosome-inactivating proteins by an immuno-polymerase chain reaction assay was reported by Lubelli et al. (2006).

**Role of RIPs**

The above examples of RIPs show their important role against both plant viruses and also RNA- and DNA-containing animal viruses (Barbieri et al. 1993). The mechanism of antiviral activity suggested for both plant and animal system involves increased permeability of and easier entry of RIPs into virus-infected cells, blocking of protein synthesis and reduced virus multiplication (Barbieri et al., 1993).

Virus resistance previously observed in transgenic plants expressing coat protein genes, and so on, has been specific for the virus from which the genes are derived or for closely related viruses (Beachy et al., 1990) but transgenic
tobacco and tomato plants expressing the pokeweed antiviral gene are found to be resistant to a broad spectrum of plant viruses (Lodge et al., 1993).

A problem often encountered in using type-I RIPs is the fact that they cannot inhibit protein synthesis in intact cells. However, when coupled to type-II RIP, they can be used effectively. The toxicity of plant materials containing type-II RIPs have long been known and has great medicinal potential. Recently, apoptosis was described in both lymphoid tissue and in the intestine of abrin- and ricin-poisoned rats. Apoptosis was also observed in tissue culture of cancer cells treated with ricin.

The antiviral activity of the RIP could be due to inactivation of ribosome of the infected plant cell. As compared to the usefulness in the plants, the role of RIPs in human and animal systems has been much more widely documented. In spite of all these efforts, the biological significance of RIPs in nature is not yet known and moreover, their antiviral action does not seem to depend upon the inhibition of host ribosomes (Chen et al., 1993).

Great potential exists today in elucidating the possible significance of RIPs and their exact antiviral role which may not always depend upon inhibition of host ribosomes. Their co-action with another antiviral mechanism also needs to be explored, especially their place in the cascade of events following viral infection up to establishment of resistance, both systemic or localized.

7.3 Pathogen-induced Systemic Acquired Resistance (SAR)

The infection of plants by necrotizing pathogens, including fungi, bacteria and viruses, induces systemic resistance to subsequent attack by the pathogens. This resistance is called systemic acquired resistance (SAR) (Kessman et al., 1994; Ryals et al., 1994; Prasad et al., 2001). Also, it can be activated in numerous plants by pre-inoculation with biotic inducers including pathogens (Sticher et al., 1997). One of the prominent features of SAR is that resistance is expressed against pathogen which can be widely different from the initial infecting pathogens.

In a range of plant species, the development of necrotic lesions in response to pathogen infection leads to induction of generalized disease resistance in uninfected tissue. Thus, TMV inoculated hypersensitive tobacco cultivar develops systemic resistance against TMV (virus), Phytophthora parasitica var. nicotinae (fungi) and Pseudomonas tabaci (bacteria). TMV also induced resistance against Peronospora tabacina and reduced reproduction of the aphid Myzus persicae (McIntyre et al., 1981). Thus a single viral agent induced resistance in tobacco against diverse challenges.

The first report of virus induced SAR came in 1952. Primary inoculation of the lower leaves of D. barbatus with carnation mosaic virus (CarMV) resulted in the development of fewer lesions on the upper leaves upon challenge inoculation with CarMV (Gilpatrick and Weintraub, 1952). Virus-induced resistance was further substantiated by Ross (1961a, 1961b) and Loebenstein (1963). Cucumber plants infected with tobacco necrosis virus
(TNV) protected the plant systemically against disease caused by the fungus *Colletotrichum lagenarium* (Jenns and Kuc, 1977). SAR expressed in *Vigna* plants following inoculation with TNV against challenge by TNV was not expressed against challenge by a CMV which infects the host systemically (Pennazzio and Roggero, 1991). Associated with SAR was the stimulation of ethylene-forming enzyme activity. Infection of ecotype Dijon of *Arabidopsis thaliana* with turnip crinkle virus (TCV) leads to the resistance against further infection by TCV or *Pseudomonas syringae* (Uknes et al., 1993). SAR in cucumber plants against powdery mildew disease, caused by *Sphaerotheca fuliginea* (Schlechtend Fr.) Pollacci, was induced by localized infection in cucumber cotyledons with TNV (Farrag et al., 2007).

The SAR phenomenon is observed both in dicotyledonous and monocotyledonous plants; it provides the third and final line of defence against pathogens. The first line of defence consists of genetically inherited resistance mechanisms that make plants constitutively resistant to the majority of pathogens present in the environment. The second line of defence is activated in the immediate vicinity of the infected or wounded site in an attempt to prevent the spread of pathogens throughout the plant. The local resistance response develops more rapidly than SAR and involves cell-wall and cuticle strengthening, synthesis of toxins, antifeedants and the production of defence-related proteins including the PR proteins. In addition to long-distance signal molecules, local resistance may be partially mediated through relatively immobile endogenous elicitors, which include oligogalacturonide fragments of the plant cell wall (Lamb and Dixon, 1990). Several lines of evidence suggest that endogenous SA is a signal molecule in SAR. Involvement of SA in SAR came from the discovery that endogenous SA increases by at least 20-fold in the virus-inoculated leaves of tobacco (Malamy et al., 1990). The increase coincides with the appearance of hypersensitive response (HR) lesions on the inoculated leaves. Accumulation of SA increased with the intensity of HR and was proportional to the dose of virus inoculum (Yalpani et al., 1991). Tissue accumulation of SA in TMV inoculated xanthi-nc tobacco paralleled or preceded detectable increase in the levels of PR-1 mRNA in both inoculated and uninoculated leaves (Malamy et al., 1990).

### 7.4 SAR and the Role of PR Proteins

SAR strongly correlates with the coordinate expression of at least nine families of genes (*sar* genes), of which several encode the PR proteins (Ward et al., 1991). Generally, tissues in which a significant amount of PR protein has been induced are more resistant to infection by pathogen than those that lack PR proteins. PR proteins were first discovered in 1970 in tobacco plants reacting hypersensitively to TMV infection (Gianinazzi et al., 1970; Van Loon and Kammen, 1970). PR proteins are produced in plants in response to infection by viruses, bacteria (Metraux and Boller, 1986), fungi (Gianinazi et al., 1980) and viroids (Conejero et al., 1979) and are also synthesized in response to chemical treatments and specific physiological stresses (Stintzi et al., 1993).
Several classes of the PR proteins either possess direct antimicrobial activity or are closely related to classes of antimicrobial proteins. These include β-1,3-glucanase, chitinase, cysteine-rich proteins related to thaumatin and PR-1 proteins. An *in vivo* role in disease resistance has not been demonstrated for any of the PR proteins. Alexander *et al.* (1993) demonstrated that constitutive high level expression of PR 1-a in transgenic tobacco results in tolerance to infection by *Peronospora tabacina* and *Phytophthora parasitica* var. *nicotianae*. On the other hand, transgenic tobacco plants expressing PR 1-b gene exhibited no reduction in the severity of TMV symptoms (Cutt *et al.*, 1989). Quite often SAR was not correlated with the induction of PR proteins (Kopp *et al.*, 1989; Ye *et al.*, 1989; Cohen *et al.*, 1993; Kessman *et al.*, 1994). Fraser found a poor correlation between the levels of PR 1-a protein and also gave evidence for the occurrence of PR proteins in leaves of healthy tobacco plants during flowering (Fraser, 1981; 1982). In conclusion, most of the evidence shows that the PR proteins are closely associated with, and not necessarily responsible for, induced resistance.

7.5 *Induced Resistance and the Role of Induced Antiviral Proteins*

**Virus-induced new antiviral protein components**

Antiviral substances are formed in plants responding hypersensitively to virus infection (Verma and Frasad, 1992) and have been recognized as phosphorylated glycoproteins (Faccioli and Capponi, 1983), glycoproteins (Wieringa and Dekker, 1987), RNA (Kimmins, 1969), traumatic acid (Kato and Misawa, 1976), and protein-like substances (Nienhaus and Babovic, 1978). Chadha and MacNeill (1969) found the formation of an antiviral principle in tomato plants systemically infected with TMV. These antiviral compounds are not generally specific to the plants. Thus, antiviral substances produced in capsicum plants could reduce PVX infection on *Gomphrena globosa* as well as *Solanum tuberosum* (Nagaich and Singh, 1970).

The presence of an antiviral factor (AVF) was established in virus-infected plants which could decrease the number of local lesions produced by TMV and PVY (Sela and Applebaum, 1962). Partially purified AVF from TMV infected *N. glutinosa* plants was found to contain both protein and RNA (Sela *et al.*, 1964). It was sensitive to ribonuclease and was resistant to proteolytic enzymes (Sela *et al.*, 1966).

Mozes *et al.* (1978) established that the purified AVF is a phosphorylated glycoprotein of molecular weight 22 kDa on SDS gels. It is sensitive to pronase under conditions suitable for proteolysis of glycoproteins. It remains active after treatments with SDS and is stable at pH 2.0. It resembles interferon in many of its properties (Mozes *et al.*, 1978).

Previously it was believed that TMV infection was necessary for AVF production. But Edelbaum *et al.* (1983) found that TMV infection could be substituted by treatment with a mixture of Poly (I), Poly (C), cAMP
and cGMP for the induction of active AVF in leaves and callus cultures of *N. glutinosa*.

**Inhibitor of virus replication**

Loebenstein and Gera (1981) reported, for the first time, an inhibitor of virus replication (IVR). IVR is released into the medium from TMV-infected cells of Samsun NN plants and inhibits replication in protoplasts from local-lesion-responding Samsun plants. IVR is detected as soon as 24 h after inoculation of protoplasts and it is effective when applied up to 18 h after inoculation. IVR is neither host nor virus specific. It inhibits TMV, CMV and also PVX (Gera and Loebenstein, 1983). Gera and Loebenstein (1983) reported that IVR also inhibited TMV replication in intact leaves when applied to cut stems or when used as a spray.

**Plant-extract-induced virus inhibitory agent**

It would be interesting to study the entire cascade of events and properties of the virus inhibitory agent (VIA) induced by antiviral agents. Treatment of lower/upper leaves of hypersensitive or systemic hosts of virus with antiviral agents results in the development of resistance throughout the plant a few hours later. This is detectable by challenge inoculation with viruses producing local lesions or systemic symptoms. The lesions are either reduced or totally absent and systemic symptoms are either milder or totally suppressed. Plant extracts or the semi-purified proteins from these plants stimulate the hosts to produce VIAs that spread to surrounding tissues and other plant parts (Verma et al., 1996). The VIAs have been isolated from leaves of plants treated with phytoproteins and they have been shown to inactivate the viruses *in vitro* (Verma and Awasthi, 1980; Verma and Dwivedi, 1984; Verma et al., 1996). The production of VIA leading to resistance seems to be an activation of a pre-existing system and hence is easily stimulated. VIA is able to move from one leaf to another through the vascular system of the plant.

Therefore, the antiviral agents from plants can be broadly grouped into two categories based on their mode of action: (i) those affecting virus *in vitro*; and (ii) those affecting via host plants.

Amongst the latter, we can distinguish (1) those that act by affecting host susceptibility and which need to be applied in leaf tissue before or at the time of virus inoculation, e.g. protein inhibitors from *Phytolacca* spp., *Dianthus* spp., *Chenopodium* spp. and so on, and (2) those acting by inducing the host resistance mechanism, which can truly be called antiviral agents, and act by obstructing the establishment of virus. They exert their effect when applied a few hours before virus inoculation. Their effect is visible even on non-treated parts of susceptible plants (Verma and Mukherjee, 1975; Verma and Awasthi, 1979; Verma *et al.*, 1979, 1980, 1982, 1985, 1995, 1996; Kumar *et al.*, 1997).
Verma and Awasthi (1980) reported that the synthesis of VIA is inhibited if AMD is applied soon after extract treatment. The VIA synthesized is neither virus specific nor host specific. Extracts containing VIA when incubated with the virus reduced their infectivity. VIAs from a few hosts have been characterized. The VIA synthesized in the leaves of *N. glutinosa*, treated with *B. diffusa* root extract reduced infectivity of TMV on *N. glutinosa*, *Datura stramonium* and *D. metel* (Verma and Awasthi, 1980). It was, however, less effective in inhibiting TRSV and GMV on *C. amaranticolor*. The VIA production was maximum after 24 h treatment with the extract. The VIA has a proteinaceous nature (Verma and Awasthi, 1980). VIA synthesized in *C. tetragonoloba* plants following treatment with *B. spectabilis* leaf extract prevented infection of tobamoviruses in seven hypersensitive hosts (Verma and Dwivedi, 1984) and its production was maximum after 48 h treatment. The VIA showed characteristics of a protein (Verma and Dwivedi, 1984). VIA produced in the same host upon treatment with *Pseudernanthemum bicolor* extract completely prevented infection of SHRV, TMV, CGMMV, and PVX on *C. tetragonoloba*, *D. stramonium*, *C. amaranticolor* and *G. globosa*, respectively (Khan and Verma, 1990).

VIA and the antiviral state are induced concomitantly with the systemic resistance induction in host plants, following treatment with certain plant extracts. VIA is an inducible gene product like AVF, IVR and PR proteins. The phytoproteins occurring in the root/leaf extracts of *Boerhaavia diffusa*, *Clerodendrum aculeatum*, *Clerodendrum inerme* and *B. spectabilis* etc. possess strong systemic-resistance-inducing properties (Verma and Prasad, 1992).

**Clerodendrum aculeatum and Boerhaavia diffusa, the two potent antiviral plants**

*Clerodendrum* and *Boerhaavia* are economically important plants because many of their species possess medicinal properties. Almost every part of these plants is credited with some medicinal properties and is employed in traditional Indian system of natural therapy.

Virus inhibitors from *Boerhaavia diffusa* and *Clerodendrum aculeatum* inhibit several plant viruses. These inhibitors modify the susceptibility of host plants towards virus infection. The roots of *B. diffusa* are a rich source of a basic protein, which has been used for inducing systemic resistance in many susceptible crops against commonly occurring viruses (Verma and Awasthi, 1979, 1980; Verma et al., 1979; Awasthi et al., 1984, 1985, 1989; Verma et al., 1995, 1999). This protein or antiviral agent was active against spherical and tubular viruses in hypersensitive hosts such as *Datura metel*, *Nicotiana tabacum* var Ky-58, *N. glutinosa/TMV*, *Cyanopsis tetragonoloba/SHRV*, *Vigna sinensis/SHRV*, and systemic hosts such as *Nicotiana tabacum* c.v NP-31 / TMV, *Crotolaria juncea/SHRV*, *N. glutinosa/TRSV*, when applied a few hours (17–24 h) before virus inoculation or when tested after mixing with virus inoculum (Verma and Awasthi, 1979; Awasthi et al., 1984). The inhibitor is a basic glycoprotein (70–80% protein, 8–13% carbohydrate) with a molecular weight of
16–20 kDa as determined by gel-filtration chromatography (Verma et al., 1979). The protein has a PI of around 9 and has a molecular weight of 30 kDa (Srivastava, 1995). The RIP was found to be extremely thermostable (Verma and Awasthi, 1979). Following treatment with the systemic RIP, the host produces a VIA. The VIA shows characteristics of a protein and reduces infectivity of the viruses both in vitro and in vivo (Verma and Awasthi, 1980). Upon gel filtration on Sephadex G-25, two active fractions exhibiting protein characteristics were recovered (Verma and Awasthi, 1980).

The protein occurring in B. diffusa functions as a signal molecule and is of great interest as it has a role in stimulating the defence system of plants against viruses (Singh, 2006; Verma et al., 2006). The VIA is present in both treated and untreated leaves (Verma and Awasthi, 1980). Micropropagation of B. diffusa has been carried out for producing the systemic RIP for viral disease management (Gupta, 1999; Gupta et al., 2004).

Susceptible healthy hosts upon treatment with C. aculeatum extract develop complete resistance within 4–6 h. The SIR is reversed by the simultaneous application of AMD (Verma et al., 1984). Treatment with SRI from C. aculeatum leaves, triggers accumulation of a new defensive VIA in treated and non-treated leaves of healthy host plants (Verma et al., 1984; Verma et al., 1996, 1999; Srivastava 1999). The SRI in crude sap is resistant to denaturation by organic solvents and extremely thermostable (Verma et al., 1984). The resistance-inducing activity of C. aculeatum SRI (CA-SRI) is not affected by exogenous application of proteases (Verma et al., 1996). Leaf extract of C. aculeatum is most effective for controlling virus diseases in crop plants (Verma et al., 1995a; Srivastava 1999; Srivastava et al., 2004). Leaf extract, when sprayed on susceptible host plants, prevents infection of mechanically and white fly transmitted viruses in several hosts, e.g. tomato yellow mosaic virus, tobacco mosaic virus, sunn hemp rosette virus and tobacco leaf curl virus (Verma et al., 1984; Verma et al., 1995a) (Table 7.2).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Family</th>
<th>Reference</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Amaranthus albus</td>
<td>Amaranthaceae</td>
<td>Smookler, 1971</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Alternanthera brasiliana</td>
<td>Amaranthaceae</td>
<td>Noronha et al., 1983</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acacia arabica</td>
<td>Leguminosae</td>
<td>Gupta and Raychauduri, 1971a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acer insulera</td>
<td>Aceraceae</td>
<td>Yoshi et al., 1954</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Agava americana</td>
<td>Agavaceae</td>
<td>Simon, 1963</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ailanthes excelsa</td>
<td>Simaroubaceae</td>
<td>Patel and Patel, 1979</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Alternanthere ficoidea</td>
<td>Amaranthaceae</td>
<td>Noronha et al., 1983</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Amaranthus caudatus</td>
<td>Amaranthaceae</td>
<td>Smooker, 1971</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Argemone mexicana</td>
<td>Papaveraceae</td>
<td>Patel and Patel, 1979</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Beta vulgaris</td>
<td>Chenopodiaceae</td>
<td>Paliwal and Narinai, 1965</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Continued
The systemic resistance inducer from *Clerodendrum aculeatum* and *Clerodendrum inerme* have been purified and characterized. A 34-kDa basic protein was isolated from the leaves of *C. aculeatum*: 64 μg/ml of protein provided complete protection of untreated leaves against TMV infection in
N. tabacum Samsun NN (Verma et al., 1996). Two basic proteins of 29 and 34 kDa (CIP-29 and CIP-34) were isolated from the leaves of C. inerme. A resistance-inducing protein of 31 kDa was isolated from the same plant (Parveen et al., 2001). The minimum amount of purified proteins required to induce systemic resistance varied from 16 μg/ml for CIP-29 to 800 μg/ml for CIP-34 (Prasad et al., 1995). CAP-34, a protein from C. aculeatum, when applied to lower leaves of Carica papaya, suppressed the disease caused by papaya ring spot virus (PRSV). In the control papaya plants the typical disease symptoms of PRSV, that is, mosaic to filiformy, appeared in 95% of the plants between 30 and 60 days after virus inoculation. In the CAP-34-treated papaya plants the symptoms appeared in only 10% of the plants during the same period. The presence of PRSV was determined by ELISA and RT–PCR (Srivastava et al., 2009). It appears that protein from C. aculeatum is a good candidate for utilization in management of virus diseases. The systemic virus inhibitory activity of these proteins is due to the host-mediated phenomenon of formation / accumulation of a new virus inhibitory protein in the treated plants showing systemic resistance. When TMV is mixed with the induced virus inhibitory protein, the virus is completely inhibited. The fact that CA-SRI also behaves as an RIP, as it inhibited in vitro protein synthesis in rabbit reticulocyte lysate and wheat germ lysate (Kumar et al., 1997), strongly confirms this belief that antiviral proteins generally have the properties of RIPs. The sequence of the CA-SRI protein showed varying homology (11–54%) with the RIPs from other plant species (Kumar et al., 1997). However, the absence of hybridization between the CA-SRI gene and the DNA / RNA of Mirabilis, Bougainvillea, rice, pea and tobacco shows that the virus inhibitory genes do not react with leaf proteins from Mirabilis, Bougainvillea, Boerhaavia, rice, pea and tobacco. These only indicate that antiviral proteins from different plants may behave differently and can be used specifically in particular host–virus systems.

The pre-inoculation spray of SRIs from C. aculeatum, C. inerme, Boerhaavia diffusa, B. spectabilis and Pseudoranthemum bicolor modified the susceptibility of several host plants such as tomato, tobacco, mungbean, urdbean, bhendi and sunnhemp against subsequent infection by viruses. The treatment helps to protect the susceptible hosts during the vulnerable early stages of development. Induced resistance appears to be a universal process in all susceptible hosts and can be used to advantage in plant protection. Pre-inoculation sprays (four sprays) of B. spectabilis leaf extract protected plants of Cucumis melo against cucumber green mottle mosaic virus (CGMMV), Crotalaria juncea against sunnhemp rosette virus (SRV) and Lycopersicon esculentum against TMV for 6 days (Verma and Dwivedi, 1983). Since the duration of resistance conferred by SRIs was up to only 6 days, it was realized that the durability of resistance needed to be prolonged under field conditions to achieve better protection against virus infection. It has been shown that proteinaceous modifiers, such as papain, enhanced the activity of CA-SRI and also prolonged the durability of induced resistance against sunnhemp rosette tobamovirus in Crotalaria juncea up to 12 days (Verma and Varsha, 1995). In another study, five weekly sprays of CA-SRI in potted plants of tomato in
open fields protected the plants from natural virus infection for more than 2 months (unpublished results). However, in another study it was shown that weekly sprays of leaf extract of *C. aculeatum* delayed the symptom appearance of leaf curl virus in tomato and promoted the growth of the plants (Baranwal and Ahmad, 1997). A natural plant compound called NS-83 was shown to reduce and delay the disease symptoms by TMV, PVX and PVY in tobacco and tomato plants under field conditions and the fruit yield in tomato was increased by 23.4% (Xin-Yun *et al.*, 1988). Plant extracts from *C. inerme* and *Ocimum sanctum* provided a high degree of resistance against tobacco chlorotic mottle virus in cowpea, possibly by induction of systemic induced resistance (Mistry *et al.*, 2003). Sumia *et al.* (2005) demonstrated inhibition of local lesions and systemic infection induced by Tobacco streak virus in cowpea and French bean by pre-treatment of a proteinaceous substance from seeds of *Celosia cristata*. Foliar sprays with aqueous leaf extract of *C. aculeatum* plant since the sprouting stage at fortnightly intervals in the field could significantly protect *Amorphophallus campanulatus* against infection by virus. Maximum reduction in disease incidence and symptom severity was exhibited by plants which received six sprays. Maximum plant growth along with considerable increases in corm weight was also observed in such plants (Khan and Awasthi, 2006).

It appears that antiviral phytoproteins trigger the host defence mechanism in a specific manner either by signal transduction, as demonstrated in the case of *Phytolacca* antiviral protein (PAP), and/or by increased synthesis of antiviral proteins in host plants treated by systemic resistance inducers as for *C. aculeatum*. While success has been achieved in developing transgenics that have genes for mutant PAP without RIP activity (Smirnov *et al.*, 1997), it remains to be seen how these transgenics can be utilized under field conditions. On the other hand, SRIs such as CA-SRI show a potential for use under field conditions. However, a larger quantity of SRIs would be required for their wider application. Cloning of the genes for CA-SRI and their expression has been achieved in an *Escherichia coli* expression vector. The expressed protein has been shown to inhibit protein synthesis (Kumar *et al.*, 1997). A detailed study is still required to determine whether or not a transgenic with native and mutant CA-SRI genes would be able to show systemic protection against virus infection. Although the *C. aculeatum* protein has been demonstrated to have very high antiviral activity and to be extremely useful as a plant immunizing agent, it has not been commercialized so far. The proteins from a few other non-host plants have also been recognized as good defence stimulants, but they have not been developed into products for disease control, because the industry finds it easier to patent newly synthesized compounds than natural plant products.

Singh (2006) reported the anti-proliferative property of phytoproteins from *B. diffusa* and *C. aculeatum* for the retardation of proliferation of human breast cancer cell lines as well as the inhibition of activity of the Semliki Forest virus in mice.
7.6 Conclusion

With the precipitous withdrawal of some of the toxic protectants, it may be profitable to explore natural plant products as alternatives, particularly against virus diseases where all other methods fail. The phytoproteins or their smaller peptides may prove valuable as ‘lead structures’ for the development of synthetic compounds. It would pay us to explore this rich source of antivirals more thoroughly. The value of these antiviral proteins is unlimited because they are quite safe, non-toxic even after repeated and prolonged use, and substantially enhance plant growth and yield. Antiviral phytoproteins may be useful if they are integrated with other strategies of virus disease management.

Botanical resistance inducers can be classified as ideal virus-suppressing agents, as they encompass all the characteristics of an ideal antiviral compound. Induced resistance operates through the activation of natural defence mechanisms of the host plant and induces systemic resistance to viral multiplication in plants. The active products present in these extracts have no direct effect on viruses; their antiviral activity is mediated by host cells in which they induce the antiviral state. Systemic resistance inducers obtained from plants have been shown to be effective against a wide range of viruses. Plant extracts or the semi-purified proteins from these plants stimulate the hosts to produce a virus inhibitory agent, which spreads to surrounding tissues and other plant parts.

References


McIntyre, J.L., Dodds, J.A. and Hare, J.D. (1981) Effects of localized infections of Nicotiana tabacum by tobacco mosaic virus on systemic resistance against diverse pathogens and an insect. Phytopathology 71, 297–301.


Verma, H.N. and Prasad, V. (1992) Virus inhibitors and inducers of resistance: potential avenues for biological control...


Phytochemicals as Natural Fumigants and Contact Insecticides Against Stored-product Insects

MOSHE KOSTYUKOVSKY AND ELI SHAAYA

Agricultural Research Organization, the Volcani Center, Israel

Abstract

For centuries, traditional agriculture in developing countries has used effective methods of insect pest control using botanicals. In order to make them a cheap and simple means of insect control for users, their efficacy and optimal use still need to be assessed. Currently, the measures to control pest infestation in grain, dry stored food and cut flowers rely heavily on toxic fumigants and contact insecticides. In recent years, the number of pesticides has declined as health, safety and environmental concerns have prompted authorities to consider restricting the use of toxic chemicals in food. Lately a new field is developing on the use of phytochemicals in insect pest management, such as edible and essential oils and their constituents. The aim here has been to evaluate the potential use of edible oils obtained from oil seeds and essential oils, and their constituents obtained from aromatic plants, as fumigants and contact insecticides for the control of the legume pest Callosobruchus maculatus F. (Coleoptera: Bruchidae). The most active edible oils as contact insecticides were crude oils from rice, maize, cottonseed and palm, and the fatty acids capric acid and undecanoic acid. The essentials oils and their constituents were found to have higher activity as fumigants than contact insecticides. From our studies, to elucidate the mode of action of essential oils, it was possible to postulate that essential oils may affect octopaminergic target sites.

8.1 Introduction

Insect damage in stored grains and other durable commodities may amount to 10–40% in developing countries, where modern storage technologies have not been introduced (Raja et al., 2001). Currently, food industries rely mainly on fumigation as an effective method for insect pest control in grain and other dry food commodities. At present only two fumigants are still in use: methyl bromide and phosphine. The first one is mostly being phased out in developed countries due to its ozone depletion effects (WMO, 1995;
Shaaya and Kostyukovsky, 2006). In addition, there have been repeated indications that certain insects have developed resistance to phosphine, which is widely used today (Nakakita and Winks, 1981; Mills, 1983; Tyler et al., 1983). It should be mentioned that although effective fumigants and contact synthesized insecticides are available, there is global concern about their negative effects on non-target organisms, pest resistance and pesticide residues (Kostyukovsky et al., 2002a; Ogendo et al., 2003). In recent years, attention has been focused on the use of botanicals as possible alternatives to toxic insecticides. Lately, there has been a growing interest in the use of plant oils and their bioactive chemical constituents for the protection of agriculture products due to their low mammalian toxicity and low persistence in the environment (Raja et al., 2001; Papachristos and Stamopoulos, 2002). Plant oils have repellent and insecticidal activities (Shaaya et al., 1997; Kostyukovsky et al., 2002a; Papachristos and Stamopoulos, 2002), nematicidal (Oka et al., 2000), antifungal (Paster et al., 1995; Srivastava et al., 2009), antibacterial (Matasyoh et al., 2007), virucidal (Schuhmacher et al., 2003), antifeedant and reproduction inhibitory (Raja et al., 2001; Papachristos and Stamopoulos, 2002) effects.

Numerous plant species have been reported to have insecticidal properties capable of controlling insects (Grainge and Ahmed, 1988; Arnason et al., 1989). The toxicity of a large number of essential oils and their constituents has been evaluated against a number of stored-product insects. Essential oils extracted from Pogostemon heynan, Ocimum basilicum and Eucalyptus showed insecticidal activities against Sitophilus oryzae, Stegobium paniceum, Tribolium castaneum and Callosobruchus chinensis (Deshpande et al., 1974; Deshpande and Tipnis, 1977). Toxic effects of the terpenoids d-limonene, linalool and terpineol were observed on several coleopterans damaging post-harvest products (Karr and Coats, 1988; Coats et al., 1991; Weaver et al., 1991). Fumigant toxic activity and reproductive inhibition induced by a number of essential oils and their monoterpenenoids were also evaluated against the bean weevil Acanthoscelides obtectus and the moth Sitotroga cerealella (Klingauf et al., 1983; Regnault-Roger and Hamraoui, 1995). Our earlier investigations on the effectiveness of the essential oils extracted from aromatic plants, showed great promise for the control of the major stored-product insects. Several of them were found to be active fumigants at low concentrations against these insects (Shaaya et al., 1991, 1993, 1994).

The use of edible oils as contact insecticides to protect grains, especially legumes, against storage insects is traditional practice in many countries in Asia and Africa. The method is convenient and inexpensive for the protection of stored seeds in households and in small farms. Many different edible oils have been studied as stored grain protectants against insects (Oca et al., 1978; Varma and Pandey, 1978; Pandey et al., 1981; Santos et al., 1981; Messina and Renwick, 1983; Ivbijaro, 1984; Ivbijaro et al., 1984; Fierrard, 1986; Ahmed et al., 1988; Don Pedro, 1989; Pacheco et al., 1995).

This chapter evaluates the efficacy of essential and edible oils as fumigants and contact insecticides to suppress populations of the stored-product insects, mainly the legume pest insect Callosobruchus maculatus. The pulse
beetle, *Callosobruchus maculatus* F. (Coleoptera: Bruchidae), is one of the major pests of stored cowpea, lentils and green and black gram in the tropics (Sharma, 1984; Raja *et al.*, 2007). The infestation often begins in the field on the dry ripe seeds before harvest. The damage to the seeds can reach up to 50% after 6 months of storage (Caswell, 1980) and up to 90% annually, according to the International Institute of Tropical Agriculture (IITA, 1989).

### 8.2 Studies with Edible Oils and Fatty Acids: Biological Activity and Repellency

The biological activity of a number of crude and distilled edible oils and a number of straight-chain fatty acids, which contain from C5 to C18, was evaluated in laboratory tests against the common legume pest *C. maculatus*. All the edible oils tested were found to have different degrees of activity at a concentration of 1 g/kg (= 1 kg/ton) chickpea seeds (Table 8.1).

The most active oils were crude oils from rice, maize, cottonseeds and palm. Of the eggs laid, 90–96% did not develop to larvae and only 0–1% developed to F1 adults in the seeds treated with these oils (Table 8.1). In addition, some of the oils tested were found to prevent oviposition. The most active oil in this regard was the rice crude oil: only 50 eggs were laid on seeds treated with 1 g/kg oil compared to 287 eggs on the control seeds (Table 8.1).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Oil</th>
<th>Number of eggs laid</th>
<th>Egg mortality (%)</th>
<th>Adult emergence Number %</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Crude rice</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Crude maize</td>
<td>137</td>
<td>96</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Refined maize</td>
<td>150</td>
<td>97</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Crude cotton seed</td>
<td>212</td>
<td>99</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Refined cotton seed</td>
<td>275</td>
<td>89</td>
<td>22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Crude palm</td>
<td>375</td>
<td>99</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Refined palm</td>
<td>237</td>
<td>84</td>
<td>38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Crude soya bean</td>
<td>212</td>
<td>85</td>
<td>21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Refined soya bean</td>
<td>262</td>
<td>96</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Crude coconut</td>
<td>125</td>
<td>95</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Distilled peanut</td>
<td>150</td>
<td>95</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Distilled safflower</td>
<td>287</td>
<td>97</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Crude olive</td>
<td>175</td>
<td>74</td>
<td>46</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Refined olive</td>
<td>300</td>
<td>86</td>
<td>18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Refined sunflower</td>
<td>187</td>
<td>82</td>
<td>30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Distilled kapok</td>
<td>387</td>
<td>88</td>
<td>39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Control</td>
<td>287</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>270</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Each oil was used at a concentration of 1 g/kg chickpea. The required amount of the oil was first mixed with acetone (50 ml/kg seeds) and the acetone was evaporated under a hood. Five males and five females were introduced to 5 g seeds. The data are the average of three experiments, each one was in triplicate.
To obtain an insight into the nature of the activity of the oils, the activity of straight-chain fatty acids ranging from C5 to C18 at a concentration of 4 g/kg was studied against *C. maculatus* (Table 8.2). The results showed that C9–C11 acids were the most active in preventing oviposition at this concentration, with the C11 acid the most active: only 13, 13 and 0 eggs were found on the treated seeds, respectively (Table 8.2).

C12–C16 fatty acids were less effective and activity was remarkably decreased for the lower C5–C7 and higher C17–C18 acids. At lower concentrations of 1.6, 0.8 and 0.4 g/kg, the C11 acid was found to be the most active; fewer eggs were laid than with C9 or C10 and no eggs developed to adults. The data presented in Table 8.3 show clearly that C9–C11 acids are strongly repellent to *C. maculatus*, but they have no lethal effect on the adults.

Field tests using crude palm kernel and rice bran oils showed that both oils were effective in controlling *C. maculatus* infestation providing full protection for the first 4–5 months of storage at a rate of 1.5–3.0 g/kg seeds. They persisted in controlling insect infestation for up to 15 months. The numbers of adult insects found in the treated seeds after 15 months of storage were only about 10% of that in the control samples (results not shown).

### 8.3 Studies with Essential Oils as Contact Insecticides

The efficacy of a large number of essential oils has been evaluated for the control of *C. maculatus* at a concentration of 400 ppm. The various oils tested were found to have a toxic effect on the eggs laid and on the development of the eggs to adults (Table 8.4).

#### Table 8.2. Biological activity of straight-chain fatty acids C5–C18 against *Callosobruchus maculatus*.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Fatty acid</th>
<th>Number of eggs laid</th>
<th>Adult emergence</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pentanoic (C5)</td>
<td>185</td>
<td>110 59</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hexanoic (C6)</td>
<td>130</td>
<td>92 71</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Heptanoic (C7)</td>
<td>112</td>
<td>66 59</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Octanoic (C8)</td>
<td>105</td>
<td>22 21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nanonoic (C9)</td>
<td>13</td>
<td>0 0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Decanoic (C10)</td>
<td>13</td>
<td>0 0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Undecanoic (C11)</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0 0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dodecanoic (C12)</td>
<td>32</td>
<td>22 69</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tridecanoic (C13)</td>
<td>32</td>
<td>20 62</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tetradecanoic (C14)</td>
<td>62</td>
<td>45 73</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pentadecanoic (C15)</td>
<td>72</td>
<td>56 77</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hexadecanoic (C16)</td>
<td>65</td>
<td>37 57</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Heptadecanoic (C17)</td>
<td>120</td>
<td>88 73</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Octadecanoic (C18)</td>
<td>140</td>
<td>115 82</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Control</td>
<td>287</td>
<td>272 95</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Each fatty acid was used at a concentration of 4 g/kg chickpea. The data are the average of three experiments, each of which were in triplicate.
Table 8.3. Toxicology and repellency of the fatty acids C9–C11 tested against *Callosobruchus maculatus*.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Fatty acid</th>
<th>Concentration (g/kg)</th>
<th>Number of eggs laid</th>
<th>Undeveloped eggs (%)</th>
<th>Adult emergence</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Number</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C9</td>
<td>1.6</td>
<td>60</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>0.8</td>
<td>67</td>
<td>95</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>0.4</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>72</td>
<td>18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Control</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>360</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>345</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C10</td>
<td>1.6</td>
<td>65</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>0.8</td>
<td>27</td>
<td>92</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>0.4</td>
<td>62</td>
<td>78</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Control</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>300</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>280</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C11</td>
<td>1.6</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>0.8</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>0.4</td>
<td>22</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Control</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>300</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>287</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The data are the average of three experiments, each of which were in triplicate.

Table 8.4. Contact activity of a number of essential oils on egg laying, egg development and F1 of *Callosobruchus maculatus*.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Essential oil</th>
<th>Eggs laid</th>
<th>Eggs developed to larvae (%)</th>
<th>No. of adults F1</th>
<th>Eggs developed to adults (%)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Number</td>
<td>% of control value</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Syrian marjoram</td>
<td>171</td>
<td>83</td>
<td>87</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lemon grass</td>
<td>144</td>
<td>70</td>
<td>88</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Geranium</td>
<td>119</td>
<td>34</td>
<td>14</td>
<td>6.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vistria</td>
<td>157</td>
<td>57</td>
<td>77</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Basil</td>
<td>51</td>
<td>78</td>
<td>93</td>
<td>23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clary sage</td>
<td>40</td>
<td>22</td>
<td>75</td>
<td>22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Orange</td>
<td>67</td>
<td>34</td>
<td>84</td>
<td>45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Grapefruit</td>
<td>120</td>
<td>64</td>
<td>77</td>
<td>49</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lemon</td>
<td>172</td>
<td>88</td>
<td>91</td>
<td>50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Caraway</td>
<td>97</td>
<td>51</td>
<td>79</td>
<td>62</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cumin</td>
<td>148</td>
<td>59</td>
<td>74</td>
<td>55</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Thyme</td>
<td>120</td>
<td>69</td>
<td>68</td>
<td>46</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Celery</td>
<td>239</td>
<td>179</td>
<td>79</td>
<td>169</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Thyme leaved savory</td>
<td>98</td>
<td>68</td>
<td>89</td>
<td>75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ruta</td>
<td>109</td>
<td>75</td>
<td>76</td>
<td>51</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rosemary</td>
<td>123</td>
<td>68</td>
<td>79</td>
<td>64</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Peppermint</td>
<td>159</td>
<td>92</td>
<td>83</td>
<td>54</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SEM76 oil</td>
<td>67</td>
<td>28</td>
<td>93</td>
<td>27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Control</td>
<td>150–350</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>85–95</td>
<td>120–280</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Each essential oil was tested at a concentration of 400 ppm and an exposure time of 24 h. Twenty unsexed adults were introduced to the treated and untreated seeds 24 h after treatment.
In the case of seeds treated with Syrian marjoram, the number of eggs laid on the treated seeds was 83% of the control, but 0% of the eggs developed to adults. Other oils were found to cause a reduction in the number of eggs laid on the treated seeds but were less effective on egg to adult development. In the case of clary sage oil, only 40 eggs were laid on the treated seeds (22% of control), but 55% of the eggs developed to adults. In contrast, the essential oil SEM76, obtained from Labiata plant species, was found effective on both the reduction of number of eggs laid (28% of control) and on the number of eggs that developed to adults (17% of control) (Table 8.4).

### 8.4 Studies with Essential Oils as Fumigants Against Stored-product Insects

In order to isolate active essential oils we firstly screened a large number of essential oils extracted from aromatic plants and isolated their main constituents, using space fumigation (Shaaya et al., 1991, 1993, 1994). The most active compounds are summarized in Table 8.5.

Among the tested compounds, the essential oil SEM76 and its main constituent were found to be the most potent fumigants. To obtain the LC90 of all insect species tested at adult stage, SEM76 oil was required at the concentration of 0.6–1.2 μl/l air (Table 8.5). The main constituent of the oil, which accounts for approximately 80% of the oil, was also found to have high activity, a little higher than the oil, as expected (Table 8.5). Space fumigation studies with SEM76 against various developmental stages of C. maculatus showed that eggs and young larvae before they penetrated into the seeds were the most susceptible to the compound. A concentration of 0.5 μl/l air was enough to cause 100% mortality of the eggs and the first instar larvae. After the larvae penetrated inside the seeds, they became more tolerant (Table 8.6). Only pupae 1–2 days before adult emergence again became sensitive to the compound (Table 8.6).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Compound</th>
<th>Oryzaephilus surinamensis</th>
<th>Rhizopertha dominica</th>
<th>Sitophilus oryzae</th>
<th>Tribolium castaneum</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>LC50</td>
<td>LC90</td>
<td>LC50</td>
<td>LC90</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1,8-Cineol</td>
<td>3.1</td>
<td>7.3</td>
<td>2.5</td>
<td>4.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Carvacrol</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>&gt;15.0</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Limonene</td>
<td>&gt;15.0</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>6.7</td>
<td>10.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Linalool</td>
<td>3.0</td>
<td>6.0</td>
<td>6.0</td>
<td>8.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pulegone</td>
<td>1.7</td>
<td>2.8</td>
<td>2.8</td>
<td>4.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SEM-76</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>&lt;1.0</td>
<td>0.4</td>
<td>0.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SEM-76 oil</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>&lt;1.0</td>
<td>0.5</td>
<td>0.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Terpinen-4-ol</td>
<td>3.9</td>
<td>11.4</td>
<td>1.3</td>
<td>2.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Terpineol</td>
<td>4.3</td>
<td>12.7</td>
<td>&gt;15.0</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

LC50 and LC90 values are μl/l air. Exposure time was 24 h.

---

M. Kostyukovsky and E. Shaaya
Table 8.6. Fumigant activity of the essential oil SEM76 extracted from Labiatae species on various developmental stages of *Callosobruchus maculatus*.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Stage treated</th>
<th>Age</th>
<th>Concentration (µl/l)</th>
<th>No. of eggs</th>
<th>No. of adults</th>
<th>Eggs developed to adults (%)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Egg</td>
<td>20–24 h</td>
<td>0.5</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Larvae outside the seed</td>
<td>0–1 day</td>
<td>0.5</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Larvae inside the seed</td>
<td>2 days</td>
<td>1.0</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>3.5</td>
<td>17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Larvae</td>
<td>2 days</td>
<td>1.5</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>4.5</td>
<td>22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Larvae</td>
<td>3 days</td>
<td>1.5</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>10.5</td>
<td>53</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Larvae</td>
<td>3 days</td>
<td>3.0</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Larvae</td>
<td>7 days</td>
<td>1.5</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>14</td>
<td>70</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Larvae</td>
<td>7 days</td>
<td>3.0</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>13</td>
<td>63</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Larvae</td>
<td>11 days</td>
<td>1.5</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>17.5</td>
<td>88</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Larvae</td>
<td>11 days</td>
<td>3.0</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>16.5</td>
<td>83</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pupae</td>
<td>4–5 days</td>
<td>1.5</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pupae</td>
<td>4–5 days</td>
<td>3.0</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>55</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pupae</td>
<td>1–2 days</td>
<td>0.5</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pupae</td>
<td>1–2 days</td>
<td>1.5</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pupae</td>
<td>1–2 days</td>
<td>3.0</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Control</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>17</td>
<td>85</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Twenty unsexed adults were used for each test. The data are an average of three duplicate experiments. Exposure time was 24 h.

8.5 Distribution of α-Terpineol in the Fumigation Chamber

Most of the research to study the potential of essential oils and their constituents (terpenes) for the control of insect pests was done using space fumigation, without paying attention to the amount of the fumigant available to the treated insects. As a model, we studied the distribution of the terpenoid α-terpineol in the fumigation chamber among the air in the chamber space, filter paper and the flask walls. Using concentrations of 3, 5, 10 and 15 mg/l air and stirring at 20°C, only minor differences in the amount of the terpenoid in the chamber space was measured: 0.710, 0.676, 0.782 and 0.897 mg/l air, respectively. The rest was found on the filter paper and the flask walls (Table 8.7). At a higher temperature of 25°C, a higher amount of the terpenoid, 50–60%, was recovered in the chamber space compared to the amount recovered at 20°C (Table 8.7). No pronounced change of the terpenoid in the chamber space was measured at a different intensity of stirring or when no stirring was applied (Table 8.8). It should be mentioned that stirring caused a higher concentration of the terpenoid on the glass walls compared to the filter paper, and the opposite if no stirring was applied (Table 8.8). Using stirring at 20°C, we could show that after 2 h of fumigation the air in the fumigation chamber was already saturated (Table 8.9).
Table 8.7. The distribution of α-terpineol in the chamber space, filter paper and the fumigation chamber walls at different temperatures, using stirring.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Concentration used (mg/l air)</th>
<th>Temperature (°C)</th>
<th>Amount of α-terpineol in the chamber space (mg/l air)</th>
<th>Total of α-terpineol recovered (%)</th>
<th>Amount recovered (%)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Chamber space</td>
<td>Filter paper</td>
<td>Flask walls</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>0.710</td>
<td>(2.682)</td>
<td>(0.745)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>0.676</td>
<td>(4.265)</td>
<td>(0.710)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>25</td>
<td>1.106</td>
<td>(4.366)</td>
<td>(1.16)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>0.782</td>
<td>(10.932)</td>
<td>(0.820)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>25</td>
<td>1.165</td>
<td>(9.53)</td>
<td>(1.22)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>0.897</td>
<td>(17.591)</td>
<td>(0.921)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The numbers in brackets are the value of α-terpineol in mg, recovered after 24 h of space fumigation. The volume of the fumigation chamber is 1050 ml. The sensitivity of the GC measurements was ± 15%.

Table 8.8. Effect of stirring on the distribution of α-terpineol in the chamber space, filter paper and fumigation chamber walls.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Concentration used (mg/l air)</th>
<th>Stirring time and intensity</th>
<th>Amount of α-terpineol in the chamber space (mg/l air)</th>
<th>Total of α-terpineol recovered (%)</th>
<th>Amount recovered (%)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Chamber space</td>
<td>Filter paper</td>
<td>Flask walls</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>24 h moderate</td>
<td>0.965</td>
<td>(4.54)</td>
<td>(0.278)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>24 h slow</td>
<td>0.856</td>
<td>(4.265)</td>
<td>(0.710)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>15 min slow</td>
<td>0.800</td>
<td>(5.200)</td>
<td>(0.840)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0.858</td>
<td>(5.320)</td>
<td>(0.901)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>24 h moderate</td>
<td>0.684</td>
<td>(16.898)</td>
<td>(0.718)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0.639</td>
<td>(17.490)</td>
<td>(0.671)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The numbers in brackets are the value of α-terpineol in mg, recovered after 24 h of space fumigation. The volume of the fumigation chamber was 1050 ml. The fumigation was conducted at a temperature of 20°C. The sensitivity of the GC measurements was ± 15%.
Table 8.9. Amount of α-terpineol measured in the fumigation chamber space at various time intervals of fumigation, using stirring.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Concentration used (mg/l) air</th>
<th>The amount of α-terpineol (mg) measured in the fumigation chamber space, hours following fumigation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>0.685</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>0.877</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>0.900</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>0.838</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The volume of the fumigation chamber was 1050 ml.
The fumigation was conducted at a temperature of 20°C.

8.6 Possible Mode of Action of Essential Oils

The essential oil SEM76 and pulegone were found to be highly toxic against all stored-product insects tested (Shaaya et al., 2001, 2002). The effect of these two compounds on acetylcholinesterase and the octopamine systems in insects was studied in order to elucidate their mode of action.

In our studies with acetylcholinesterase (Greenberg-Levy et al., 1993; Kostyukovsky et al., 2002b), using acetylcholinesterase extracted from Rhizopertha dominica, a stored-product insect, we showed that the inhibitory activity of these two terpenoids on acetylcholinesterase was only evident when high concentrations of these compounds (10⁻³ M) were applied. These doses were at such high levels that they cannot account for the toxic effects observed in vivo by these compounds on the same insect species (Shaaya et al., 2001, 2002), which were obtained at much lower concentration (10⁻⁶ M = 1.5 μl/l of air). The failure of these biologically active compounds to produce a stronger enzyme inhibition indicated that acetylcholinesterase was probably not the main site of action of essential oils.

Another possible target for neurotoxicity of essential oils is the octopaminergic system in insects. Octopamine is a multifunctional, naturally occurring biogenic amine that plays a key role as a neurotransmitter, neurohormone and neuromodulator in invertebrate systems (Evans, 1981; Fig. 8.1), with a physiological role analogous to that of norepinephrine in vertebrates.

The octopaminergic system in insects represents a biorational target for insecticidal action and has been targeted by various insecticides in the past, e.g., formamidines (Haynes, 1988; Perry et al., 1998). Many of the physiological functions of octopamine appear to be mediated by a class of octopamine receptors, specifically linked to a protein coupled to the enzyme adenylate cyclase. These physiological actions have been shown to be associated with elevated levels of cyclic-AMP (Evans, 1984). Using an insect in-vitro cuticular tissue preparation, octopamine was found to induce a significant increase in the intracellular messenger cyclic AMP (Rafaeli and Gileadi, 1995). SEM76 and pulegone directly affect the intracellular response of these tissues by mimicking the octopamine response, thereby increasing the production of
cyclic-AMP at low physiological concentrations of $10^{-8}$ M (Table 8.10). Moreover, addition of the octopamine antagonist phentolamine strongly antagonized the response to octopamine, as well as to the essential oil SEM76 and pulegone, were strongly antagonized and no elevation in cyclic-AMP was observed (Shaaya, et al., 2001; Kostyukovsky et al., 2002b). These effects were observed at low dilutions of the essential oils (estimated at $10^{-7}$ and $10^{-8}$ M), levels that induced the overt behavioural toxicity responses in vitro (Table 8.10; Kostyukovsky et al., 2002b). It should be mentioned that d-limonene,

**Table 8.10.** Effect of essential oils in the absence and presence of the octopamine antagonist, phentolamine ($10^{-5}$ M), on intracellular cyclic-AMP levels.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Treatment</th>
<th>Concentration (M)</th>
<th>Intracellular cyclic – AMP levels pmol/abdominal segment</th>
<th>Octopamine</th>
<th>SEM76</th>
<th>Pulegone</th>
<th>d-limonene</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Without phentolamine</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0.2</td>
<td>0.39</td>
<td>0.027</td>
<td>0.023</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>$10^{-8}$</td>
<td>0.58</td>
<td>0.42</td>
<td>0.88</td>
<td>0.02</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>$10^{-7}$</td>
<td>0.11</td>
<td>0.01</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>–</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>With phentolamine</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0.14</td>
<td>0.18</td>
<td>0.17</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>$10^{-8}$</td>
<td>0.05</td>
<td>0.17</td>
<td>0.2</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>$10^{-7}$</td>
<td>0.05</td>
<td>0.17</td>
<td>0.2</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>$10^{-6}$</td>
<td>0.11</td>
<td>0.01</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Fig. 8.1.** Neurotransmitters in insect systems as possible sites of action of essential oil toxicity.
which was found to have very low toxicity to stored-product insects, did not show any effect on the production of cyclic-AMP (Table 8.10).

Because the essential oil response is strongly insect specific, as is octopamine neurotransmission, the essential oils can mimic the action of octopamine at low doses, and phentolamine, an octopamine inhibitor, has an inhibitory action on the essential oils, we can postulate that the essential oils may affect octopameric target sites.

8.7 Discussion

Studies with edible oils and fatty acids showed that crude oils of rice, maize, cottonseed and palm were found the most potent against *C. maculatus* compared to the other oils tested. The purified forms of these oils were found to be less effective. In field studies, rice and palm crude oils at concentrations of 1.5 and 3 g/kg, protected chickpeas completely from insect infestation for a period of 4–5 months and partially for up to 15 months. Studies by Khaire et al. (1992) showed that adult emergence of *C. chinensis* was completely prevented for up to 100 days in pigeonpea treated with 1% neem oil or karanj oil. In addition, theses oils were found to have no adverse effect on seed germination. Boeke et al. (2004) showed that a number of botanical products might provide effective control of *C. maculatus* in cowpea.

The mode of action of edible oils was first attributed to interference with normal respiration, resulting in suffocation of the insects. The action of the oil, however, is more complex, since insects deprived of oxygen survived longer than those treated with oils (Gunther and Jeppson, 1960). From this study and others (Wigglesworth, 1942; Ebeling and Wagner, 1959; Ebeling, 1976; Shaaya and Ikan, 1979), it may be postulated that the biological activity of the edible oils is attributed to both their physical and chemical properties such as viscosity, volatility, specific gravity and hydrophobicity.

Among the straight-chain fatty acids ranging from C5 to C18 carbon atoms, it was found that C9–C11 acids were the most effective in preventing oviposition of *C. maculatus* on the treated seeds, but have no lethal effect on the adults. In earlier studies (Shaaya et al., 1976), we showed that wheat seeds treated with C10 fatty acid, at a concentration of 4 g/kg, repelled *Sitophilus oryzae* L, but that forced contact of the beetles with the treated seeds was found to have no effect on mortality rates of the beetles (Shaaya et al., 1976). It should be mentioned that *C. maculatus* adults do not consume food and live approximately 1 week only, whereas *S. oryzae* adults feed as long as they live – several months. We postulate, therefore, that fatty acids act as repellents and the beetles die because of starvation.

Essential oils as contact insecticide were found to have low toxicity. A high concentration of 400 ppm of the most active essential oil from Syrian marjoram was needed to prevent the development from egg to adult. On the contrary, essential oils and their constituents as fumigants showed high activity in controlling young larvae and pupae prior to emergence of *C. maculatus*. The contact and fumigant toxicity of five essential oils,
cardamom, cinnamon, clove, eucalyptus and neem were also investigated against the cowpea weevil (Mahfuz and Khalequzzaman, 2007). In space fumigation, at a concentration of 1 μl/l air, *Ocimum gratissimum* oil and its constituent eugenol caused 100% mortality of *C. chinensis* 24 h after treatment (Ogendo et al., 2008). The essential oils of citrodora and lemongrass were found to have insecticidal and ovicidal activities against adults and eggs of *C. maculatus* (Raja and William, 2008). Van Huis (1991), Adabie-Gomez et al. (2006), Henning (2007), Boateng and Kusi (2008) have reported the efficacy of *Jatropha* seed oil as contact insecticide against *C. maculatus*. Similarly, Kéita et al. (2001) reported that kaolin powder aromatized with pure oil of *Ocimum* spp. at 6.7 μl/g of pea seeds provided complete protection over 3 months of storage.

In space fumigation studies to evaluate the potency of the essential oils and their constituents against insect pests, special attention has to be given to not using a higher amount of the fumigant than needed to saturate the air in the fumigation chamber at constant temperature. It should be mentioned that the amount of the various test materials needed to saturate the air in the fumigation chamber might be different, depending on the physical and chemical properties of the fumigant. Our findings, as well as results of other researchers, suggest that certain essential oils, and particularly their terpenoids, are highly selective to insects, since they are probably targeted to an insect-selective octopaminergic receptor, which is a non-mammalian target. The worldwide availability of plant essential oils and their terpenoids, and their use as flavouring agents in food and beverages is a good indication of their relative safety to humans. In our earlier studies, we showed that essential oils have a high potential as alternative fumigants to methyl bromide for the control of stored-product insects and cut flowers (Shaaya, 1998; Wilson and Shaaya, 1999; Kostyukovsky and Shaaya, 2001; Kostyukovsky et al., 2002). The reduction in the use of conventional synthetic toxic pesticides gives to these bioactive chemicals the potential to be used as a complementary or alternative method in crop production and integrated pest management.

References


Allgemeine und Angewandte Entomologie 4, 123–126.


Phytochemicals as Natural Fumigants

189


Sharma, S.S. (1984) Review of literature of the loss caused by *Callosobruchus* spp. (Coleoptera: Bruchidae) during storage of...


9

Prospects of Large-scale Use of Natural Products as Alternatives to Synthetic Pesticides in Developing Countries

D.B. OluFolaji

Department of Crop, Soil and Pest Management, The Federal University of Technology, Akure, Nigeria

Abstract

The incidence of pests and diseases on crops in developing countries has caused a lot of food insecurity and negatively affected the agro-allied industries. The use of synthetic pesticides has been the only means of combating the pests and diseases to achieve large-scale food production in developing countries due to lack of appropriate technology to formulate their own pest control measures. The use of these chemicals is associated with a lot of problems. The problems of mammalian toxicity, pollution of the environment and high cost of the few available chemical pesticides are enormous. The Environmental Protection Agency (EPA) worldwide reacts against these problems and encourages research into a better alternative to these synthetic pesticides. The natural products as alternatives are available at all times of the year due to their location in the tropical regions, they are easy to formulate, are not toxic to mammals, are less costly and are environmentally friendly. These attributes assist in the production of cheap and safe food, so the botanicals are assets to developing countries and encourage their large-scale usage. Extracts from plants such as Azadirachta indica, and Ocimum spp. are used for the control of various crop pests such as cowpea beetles (Callosobruchus maculatus), and diseases such as wet rot of Amaranthus spp. (Choanephora curvibarum) and anthracnose of soybean (Colletotrichum truncatum).

9.1 Introduction

About one third of the world’s agricultural produce in terms of plants and animals are destroyed by a combination of both pests and diseases. In Africa, where most of the developing countries are located, most of the food crops are attacked by one pest or another, thereby causing high crop loss (Table 9.1; Ogbalu, 2009).
Knowledge of natural products or botanicals as pesticides is as old as agriculture and local usage of the plants for both medicinal and pesticidal purposes also predates history. However, the advent of chemical pesticides in the mid-20th century has relegated the use of botanicals to the background, the striking negative side effect of these synthetic pesticides not withstanding (Lale, 2007). Until now the synthetic pesticides still record

Table 9.1. Estimate of crop losses due to insect attacks in some African countries.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Crop</th>
<th>Country</th>
<th>Pests</th>
<th>Estimated crop loss (%)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Cereals</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sorghum</td>
<td>Chad</td>
<td><em>Busseola fusca</em></td>
<td>54</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Nigeria</td>
<td><em>Busseola fusca</em></td>
<td>47</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Ethiopia</td>
<td>Stemborers</td>
<td>25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rice</td>
<td>Nigeria</td>
<td>Stemborers / weevils</td>
<td>35–60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Ghana</td>
<td>Stemborers</td>
<td>25–30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Chad</td>
<td>Stemborers</td>
<td>35–55</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maize</td>
<td>Ethiopia</td>
<td>Stemborers</td>
<td>32–55</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Weevils</td>
<td>48–55</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Nigeria</td>
<td>Weevils</td>
<td>68</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td><em>Maruca testulalis</em></td>
<td>43–68</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td><em>Busseola fusca</em></td>
<td>24–55</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maize tassels</td>
<td>Nigeria</td>
<td>Thrips</td>
<td>55</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Ethiopia</td>
<td>Stemborers</td>
<td>37</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Cameroun</td>
<td>Stemborers</td>
<td>24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Legumes</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cowpea</td>
<td>Nigeria</td>
<td>Weevils</td>
<td>30–58</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Pod borers</td>
<td>60–72</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Swaziland</td>
<td>Pod borers</td>
<td>20–48</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Ethiopia</td>
<td>Hemipterans</td>
<td>38–57</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Kenya</td>
<td><em>Ophiomyia phaseoli</em></td>
<td>28–43</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Chad</td>
<td>Pod borers</td>
<td>48–54</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Roots and tubers</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cocoyam</td>
<td>Nigeria</td>
<td>Scale insects</td>
<td>34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cassava</td>
<td>Nigeria</td>
<td><em>Zonocerus variegatus</em></td>
<td>28–31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Ghana</td>
<td><em>Zonocerus variegatus</em></td>
<td>15–27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yam</td>
<td>Chad</td>
<td>Yam beetles</td>
<td>24–48</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Nigeria</td>
<td>Yam beetles</td>
<td>54</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sweet potatoes</td>
<td>Nigeria</td>
<td><em>Cylas puncticollis</em></td>
<td>67–76</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vegetables</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tomatoes</td>
<td>Nigeria</td>
<td>Dipterous pests</td>
<td>45–90</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Peppers</td>
<td>Nigeria</td>
<td>Dipterous / bugs</td>
<td>35–53</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Okra</td>
<td>Nigeria</td>
<td>Flea beetles</td>
<td>45–60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bitterleaf</td>
<td>Nigeria</td>
<td><em>Lixus cameranus</em></td>
<td>54–68</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td><em>Diacrisia maculosa</em></td>
<td>55–87</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fluted pumpkin</td>
<td>Nigeria</td>
<td><em>Z. variegatus</em></td>
<td>55–82</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td><em>D. maculosa</em></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

very formidable success in their control attributes on both pests and diseases in plants. The discovery of residues of synthetic pesticides in the food chain and their effect on the environment have led to agitation by environmentalists, ecologists and the Environmental Protection Agencies (EPA) worldwide to look inward for a better alternative in order to produce safe food for everybody, and maintain a friendly environment. The natural products which can also be referred to as botanicals and their products have and will continue to play important roles in alleviating human suffering and also control the losses of farm products experienced in most developing countries (Edeoga and Eriata, 2001; Aworinde et al., 2008). Crop production and protection are being supported by the use of botanicals in developing countries in Africa and some third-world countries (Lale, 2007; Isman 2008). Researchers in Nigeria and some other African countries have investigated several plant species for their efficacy as pesticides for protecting their crops against pest degradation especially with the storage pests and diseases (Boeke et al., 2001; Ofuya et al., 2007; Olufolaji, 2008).

Until recently, conventional pesticides had been used to curb these pests and, in most cases, quite efficiently. However, the technicalities involved in the formulation, standardization and distribution of the botanicals as pesticides to reach the teeming population in the developing countries still remain problems for their usage (Lale, 2007). There are the attendant problems of resistance, environmental pollution, and adverse effect on health and climate change traceable in part to the high levels of chloro-fluoro-carbon being used as carriers in aerosol pesticides, which is affecting the ozone layer. This led to caution in the continued use of persistent synthetic pesticides, especially those in the class of chlorinated hydrocarbons and the highly toxic organophosphorus pesticides (Olaifa, 2009).

9.2 History of Natural Products in the Developing Countries and their Use by Local Farming Communities

Developing countries have been endowed by nature with large quantities and diverse collections of many such natural products, which are more of plant origin (botanicals). The population of inhabitants in developing countries is fed by farm produce from the local peasant farmers. Thus the major users of botanical pesticides are the local farmers who are less educated, very poor and most of them cannot afford the expensive synthetic pesticides.

The tropical forests, characteristic of most developing countries, are the abode of naturally occurring genera and species of most of these botanicals. Over centuries, evolution of these botanicals has occurred to produce various biotypes that are in good use today as medicines and pesticides (Table 9.2). A survey of the use of the botanicals in local farms revealed that around 50% of about 500 peasant farmers in India and Pakistan who stored food grains for more than 6 months used neem (Azadirachta indica) leaves to get rid of storage pests, whereas the relatively affluent and better educated farmers
used neem cake for nematode control (Ahmed and Stoll, 1996). These farmers buy neem cake in the market because they find no synthetic pesticides to be as equally potent, cheap and readily available. One of the few reported cases of the use of the botanical pesticidal materials for pest management in Nigeria is the application of chilli pepper (*Capsicum* spp.) and tobacco (*Nicotiana tabacum*) leaf extracts by some farmers in the south western states of Nigeria (Nworgu, 2006), and the use of *Chromolaena odorata* to solve some pest and disease problems e.g. anthracnose of soybean caused by *Colletotrichum truncatum* has also been reported (Ajayi and Olufolaji, 2007). There are many other plants (*Eichhornia crassipes*, *Vernonia amygdalina*, *Piper guineense*, etc.) used by farmers as botanical pesticides for various pests and diseases, even in their crude form, and they have been found to be very effective (Olufolaji, 1999a, 2006, 2008; Ajayi and Olufolaji, 2007). Those farmers have adopted the use of botanicals in the control of pests and diseases on their crops due to desperation for survival, and since they are dependent on an agrarian economy, they evolved various method of formulating and using the botanicals without sourcing the orthodox expertise and technicalities that are either not within their reach or expensive to adopt.

Table 9.2. Some bioactive plants reported for the control of agricultural pests.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pests</th>
<th>Bioactive plants</th>
<th>References</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Maize weevil  <em>Sitophilus oryzae</em> (L.)</td>
<td>Neem seed</td>
<td>Ivbijaro, 1983</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>Eugenia aromatica</em></td>
<td>Lale, 1992, 1994; Aranilewa et al., 2002</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Callosobruchus maculatus</em></td>
<td><em>Piper guineense</em></td>
<td>Olaifa and Erhum, 1988</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>Acrac epomia</em></td>
<td>Ofuya and Dawodu, 2002</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Dysdercus superstitiosus</em></td>
<td>Several plants</td>
<td>Adedire and Lajide, 1999</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Oothea mutabilis</em></td>
<td><em>Monodora tenuifolia</em></td>
<td>Adedire et al., 2003</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Riptortus dentipes</em></td>
<td><em>Zanthoxylum zanthoxyloide</em></td>
<td>Ogunwolu and Idowu, 1994</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Callosobruchus maculatus</em></td>
<td><em>Azadirachta indica</em></td>
<td>Lale and Abdulrahman, 1999</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>Lippia adoensis</em></td>
<td>Olaifa et al., 1987</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Dysdercus superstitiosus</em></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Oothea mutabilis</em></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Riptortus dentipe</em></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Grasshopper (Zonocerus variegates)</td>
<td><em>Clausena anisata</em></td>
<td>Okunade and Olaifa, 1987</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>Azadirachta indica</em></td>
<td>Olaifa and Akingbohungbe, 1987a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>Piper guineense</em></td>
<td>Olaifa and Adenuga, 1988a, b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>Azadirachta indica</em></td>
<td>Olaifa et al., 1991a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Tetrapteura tetraptera</em></td>
<td><em>Azadirachta indica</em></td>
<td>Olaifa et al., 1991b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Field pests of cowpea, maize, sorghum, cassava, banana</td>
<td><em>Tephrosia vogelli</em></td>
<td>Adebayo, et al., 2007</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

9.3 Availability of Natural Products in Large and Required Quantities

Most countries in the developing world are favoured by very good climatic conditions and agro-ecosystems that support the growth and development of most of the botanicals used for the production of the botanical pesticides. The farmers have a locational advantage in that the botanicals are available in abundance in their ecosystem and exist throughout the year in both rainy and dry seasons. For example, most of these popular plants grow in the wild and are regarded as weeds, and some of them are not useful for food or raw materials for the industries (Table 9.2).

However, some are now being cultivated to prevent the extinction of useful species. In recent times, most countries in the developing world find it easy to incorporate the botanicals into their agro-forestry programmes and this has increased and maintained the existence of the botanicals in large quantities (Ogunnika, 2007). This has further strengthened the large-scale use of the botanicals as a means of pest and pathogen control in the sub-region. Furthermore, germination of the seeds of most of these botanicals is not tied down by an unnecessarily long dormant period, which is characteristic of some botanicals in developed world (Ogunnika, 2007). The activities of the farming population in the tropics have included intercropping and mix-cropping of main crops with the botanicals. These involve planting Manihot esculenta (cassava) with Ocimum gratissimum (camphor basil), Theobroma cacao (cocoa) with Carica papaya (pawpaw) and so on (Ogunnika, 2007). It is worth noting here that some of these botanicals when mixed or intercropped with the main crop could serve as a control for pests and diseases in the form of allelopathy. N. tabaccum and some other plant species, especially grasses, have been found to possess this attribute (Florentine et al., 2003, Ogunnika, 2007). Eucalyptus camaldulensis and some other botanicals are also used as weed control in farmlands to maximize yields (Oyun and Agele, 2009). Many farm crops are protected by this means without the need to carry out formulation and application processes for pest and disease control. There is the availability of rain and moisture throughout the year and no occurrence of snow or completely dry period in most developing countries close to the tropics. Thus, plants can grow throughout the year and there is no threat of extinction of most of these botanicals, both wild and cultivated species.

The fact that almost half of the world’s forest that houses these botanicals is in Africa is an indication of the availability of the much needed plants for botanical pesticides (Owolabi and Olanrewaju, 2007). Farnsworth and Soejarto (1991) estimated that 28% of the total inventories of the world’s plant species are used in ethnomedicines. Groombridge (1992), and Lange and Schippmann (1997) reported that over 21,000 plant taxa (including synonyms) are being used worldwide for pesticidal purposes, which amounted to about US$800 million in 1995–1996. If these plants had mainly resided in the developed world, then developing countries would not benefit immensely
from this since they are mostly poor. Despite the indiscriminate deforestation in developing countries in which these botanicals exist, rapid and large recovery of most of these botanicals still occurs. It has been observed that most of the botanicals obtained in the tropical forests of developing countries sprout easily and survive through the little water stress experienced during the dry season. These attributes support the possibility of large-scale use of these botanicals as pesticides.

9.4 Formulations of Botanicals in Developing Countries

Local formulation by peasant farmers

Methods adopted by farmers in the developing countries for the formulation and delivery of botanical pesticides vary depending on the parts of plants used and the target pests. The plant parts could be either pulverized fresh with a pestle and mortar or grinding stones before soaking in water (hot or cold) or sun-dried before pulverizing into powdered form. They are then soaked and extracted before use. The powdered form could also be used as dust to prevent incursion of pests and diseases on the stored farm produce or for on-farm dusting for pest and disease control. The formulated botanicals can be buried near the crop plants such that they can diffuse into the soil and protect the root or move in a systemic way to control pests and diseases on the farm. Termites, soil insects and some other soil pathogens such as *Pythium* spp. could be controlled through this method.

Some botanicals are effective when they are burnt and the fumes are directed into storage silos or into the soil as in the orthodox fumigation practice.

Scientific formulations

Researchers in most of the developing countries have investigated more than 100 different species of botanicals for their efficacy in crop protection against pest degradation, especially the storage pests and diseases (Boeke *et al.*, 2001; Ofuya *et al.*, 2007; Olufolaji, 2008). Some researchers have suggested that a few botanicals used as pesticides in Nigerian flora with confirmed pesticidal attributes against stored-product insects merit scientific formulations (Lale, 2001; Ofuya, 2003). However, pesticidal formulations of most botanicals which have been found effective and may be recommended for use in crop protection in Nigeria are rather simple, and easy to make in solid and liquid formulations (Ofuya, 2009). Solid formulations are mainly powders, whereas liquid formulations include oils and the crude extracts prepared in water and organic solvents. These methods of formulation of the botanicals as pesticides also make their large-scale use easy and expansive in the developing countries because not much technicality is involved.
Methods of formulation

Formulations of the botanicals in developing countries are also of immense importance in their large-scale use. Due to low-level scientific technicality and non-availability of sophisticated equipment associated with the production of synthetic pesticides, the type of formulation associated with the production of the botanical pesticides in developing countries is the type that the majority of the agrarian community and scientists will be able to handle and utilize for effective botanical pesticide formulation.

Powders

These are prepared by harvesting the plant materials, which are then sun-dried and pulverized into fine powder. The powders have been investigated undiluted for stored-product protection against insects and fungi. The required quantity of powder is admixed with an appropriate quantity of commodity prior to storage. Powders have also been extracted with water (water-extractable powders), filtered and applied as aqueous solutions for protecting field crops and grains (Table 9.3; Ofuya, 2009).

Crude water extracts

These are crude extracts obtained by using water as a solvent, and may be obtained simply by pressing out juices and then diluting in water or through maceration (steeping in water for prolong periods). They may also be obtained by infusion (the immersion of plant parts in boiling water for prolonged periods). Such aqueous extracts or solutions have mostly been investigated against field-crop insect pests and diseases (Table 9.3) (Olufolaji, 2006; Ofuya, 2009).

Oils

Oils are usually extracted from pulverized medicinal plant parts by means of organic solvents and are used very much like concentrate liquids. Organic

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Botanical</th>
<th>Potential formulation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>Azadirachta indica</em></td>
<td>Dust, water-extractable powder, emulsifiable concentrate, liquids</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Piper guineense</em></td>
<td>Dust, water-extractable powder, emulsifiable concentrate, liquids</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Eugenia aromatica</em></td>
<td>Dust, water-extractable powder, emulsifiable concentrate, liquids</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Dementia tripetalia</em></td>
<td>Dust, water-extractable powder, emulsifiable concentrate, liquids</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Tephrosia vogelli</em></td>
<td>Water-extractable powder, emulsifiable concentrate, liquids</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Nicotaina tabacum</em></td>
<td>Dust, water-extractable powder</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Allium sativum</em></td>
<td>Water-extractable powder, emulsifiable concentrate, liquids</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Zingiber officinale</em></td>
<td>Water-extractable powder, emulsifiable concentrate, liquids</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

solvents, particularly methanol, ethanol, acetone, hexane, petroleum ether, diethyl ether, chloroform or methyl chloride, have been used (Table 9.3) (Olufolaji, 2006; Ofuya, 2009).

**Mixed formulations**

Using herbal mixtures for crop protection is traditional with some farmers (Kitch et al., 1997). Efficacy of mixed formulations of medicinal plant powders for stored-grain protection has been subjected to empirical verification (Ogunwolu and Idowu, 1994; Dawodu and Ofuya, 2000; Emeasor et al., 2007). Overall pesticidal activity of each material was not mitigated by mixing the two against the test insects. However, synergistic or additive effects would be desirable to enhance efficacy. Lale (2002) reported that mixing different essential oils from plants, in some cases, provided much better control than single use (Table 9.3) (Ofuya, 2009; Olufolaji, 2006, 2008).

**Use of adjuvants**

Ofuya et al. (2007) have demonstrated the possibility of using organic flours from yam, cassava and plantain as diluents in the formulation of insecticidal dusts from buds of *Eugenia aromatica* and dry fruits of *Piper guineense*. Filtrates that are obtained in the preparation of aqueous neem extracts can be improved after dilution by adding brown sugar, which improves the adherence of the filtrate on leaves and other plant parts (Jackai, 1993).

### 9.5 Attributes of the Botanicals Versus Conventional Synthetic Pesticides

The botanicals have an array of good attributes over the synthetic pesticides, which is encouraging because the low technicality required for use has enabled the developing world to achieve desirable advantages from their use. Ahmed and Stoll (1996) highlighted the various problems caused by synthetic pesticides including toxicity to non-target organisms such as man and beneficial macro/microbes, pollution in the agro-ecosystem and development of resistance by the target organisms. However, the botanical pesticides possess some special characteristics and may be used as better alternatives in managing different agricultural pests:

- The materials used for the production of the botanical pesticides are easily available since they are usually weeds in the agro-ecosystem.
- Botanical pesticides are usually inherently less harmful than conventional pesticides.
- Botanical pesticides generally affect only the target pest and closely related organisms, in contrast to broad-spectrum conventional pesticides that may affect organisms as different as birds, insects and mammals.
Botanical pesticides are often effective in very small quantities and often decompose quickly, thereby resulting in lower exposure and largely avoiding the pollution problems caused by conventional pesticides.

When used as a component of integrated pest management (IPM) programmes, botanical pesticides can greatly decrease the use of conventional pesticides, while crop yields remain high.

9.6 The Views of Environmental Protection Agency and the Policy of Most Developing Countries

The view of the EPA at national and international levels is not to support the use of synthetic pesticides. These views have made some advanced and developed countries to promulgate laws against the usage of some of these synthetic pesticides. In Nigeria, the body vested with the authority of pesticides registration and control is the National Agency for Food and Drug Administration and Control (NAFDAC) (Olaifa, 2009). Despite this, some pesticides such as DDT and some mercuric-based pesticides, which had been banned from use due to the residue left on crops for consumption and because they constitute a health hazard, are still found in pesticides markets. The presence of heavy metals in most pesticides have caused untold hardship and death to the consumer of the crops on which it has been used.

Most of the developing countries have formulated various policies on the usage of the synthetic pesticides. The policy emanated from the effect which the pesticides have unleashed on the crops due to their phytotoxicity, mammalian toxicity and carcinogenic effects on both the crops and man.

In 1994, the Botanical Pesticides and Pollution Prevention Division was established in the Office of Pesticide Programmes to facilitate the registration of botanical pesticides. This division promotes the use of safer pesticides, including botanical pesticides, as components of IPM programmes. The division also coordinates the Pesticide Environmental Stewardship Programme (PESP).

Since botanical pesticides tend to pose fewer risks than conventional pesticides, the EPA generally requires much less data to register a botanical pesticide than to register a conventional pesticide. In fact, new botanical pesticides are often registered in less than a year, compared with an average of more than 3 years for conventional pesticides.

While botanical pesticides require less data and are registered in less time than conventional pesticides, the EPA always conducts rigorous reviews to ensure that pesticides will not have adverse effects on human health or the environment. For the EPA to be sure that a pesticide is safe, the agency requires that registrants submit a variety of data about the composition, toxicity, degradation and other characteristics of the pesticide.
9.7 The Attitudes of the Poor Resource Farmers in the Developing Countries to the Use of Botanical Pesticides

The poor resource farmers in the developing countries have been relieved by the use of botanicals as it affords them the advantages of low pest control cost, easy pest control strategies, minimum pollution in their agro-ecosystem and, ultimately, higher yield and profit. They are now in search of any available information regarding new innovations on botanicals to control the pests on their farm lands. They are also ready to pay for the services because botanicals cost less than the conventional synthetic pesticides with all the safe attributes to food production in the developing world. The farmers are already trying to combine the research findings of scientists with their age-long practice to arrive at formidable control measures on their farm lands. Interestingly, the farmers are now adopting the principle of IPM in order to maximize yields on their farms. Moreover, the botanists who engage in floriculture and horticulture are included in the use of botanicals to preserve most of their important species of plants from the scourge of pests and diseases. The farmers have already formed cooperatives and through them approach government extension agencies for more enlightenment on the use of botanicals for their benefit.

9.8 The Future of the Use of Botanicals

The future of botanicals as alternatives to synthetic pesticides is bright, in that more people are using them due to the availability of the raw materials, accessibility of the raw materials and easy use of the botanicals, with minimum demand for specialized application and equipment that is characteristic of synthetic pesticides. Most of the research on pest and disease control in both developed and developing countries are now centred on the use of botanicals as alternatives to synthetic pesticides. The World Health Organization has also encouraged the use of botanicals because there is a prevalence of diseases traceable to chemicals used for the control of plant diseases because the consumed plant materials possess high degree of residues that cause carcinogenic diseases and other health issues. It is also an issue with environmentalists concerned about the threat of global warming because most of the pollution accredited to cause global warming is traced to the pollutants produced and discharged in the developing countries (Olufolaji, 2006). The present economic recession has even made the purchase of synthetic pesticides more expensive and thus difficult for the poor and even the enlightened farmers in the developing countries, hence the adoption of an alternative, which is the use of botanical pesticides.

9.9 Conclusion

The botanicals have solved enormous problems of farmers in the developing world who are faced with an array of pests and diseases that reduce their yields and make farming a harder process.
Acknowledgement

The author is grateful for the opportunity given by the coordinator of this book collection, Prof. N.K. Dubey, to be a contributor to this book. I also appreciate the management of The Federal University of Technology, Akure, Nigeria, with whom I am residing to carry out this research work.

References


Prospects of Large-scale Use of Natural Products

Technology, Akure, Ondo State, Nigeria, pp. 2–7.


10 Current Status of Natural Products in Pest Management with Special Reference to *Brassica carinata* as a Biofumigant

MARÍA PORRAS

Department of Crop Protection, IFAPA Centro Las Torres – Tomejil, Sevilla, Spain

Abstract
This chapter covers the use of natural products in plant disease management in the form of fungicides and bactericides, and personal experience of the development and optimization of biofumigation with *Brassica carinata* and soil solarization as alternatives to the traditional use of chemicals in strawberry production. The potential of biofumigation as a component of the integrated management of soil pathogens has been demonstrated in various agricultural systems. The presence of high amounts of glucosinolates, and of the enzyme myrosinase that catalyses their hydrolysis, linked to the high biocidal activity of some glucosinolate enzymatic hydrolysis derivative products have been suggested for a practical use of amending soil with these natural biocidal compounds through cultivation and green manure of selected species of the family Brassicaceae.

10.1 Introduction

Chemical pesticides such as methyl bromide are being phased out globally because of their impact on the ozone layer (European Parliament, 2000). Since 2005, the use of methyl bromide has been banned in European Union countries. Chemical, physical and biological alternative methods for pathogen control have been evaluated in crop production to replace the compounds lost due to the new registration requirements (Duniway, 2002; Martin and Bull, 2002; Porras *et al*., 2007b). Natural-product-based pesticides can sometimes be specific to the target species and have unique modes of action with little mammalian toxicity (Duke *et al*., 2003). Modern instrumentation and improved methods should increase interest in natural-product-based pesticide discovery research (Duke *et al*., 2002).
Naturally occurring substances found in fungi, bacteria and plants are important sources of molecules with different biological properties. They may be developed either as products per se or used as starting points for synthesis to optimize specific properties. Low mammalian toxicity, low environmental impact, low levels of residues in food and compatibility with integrated pest management (IPM) programmes are important considerations in the election of fungicides for development (Knight et al., 1997).

This chapter covers the use of natural products in plant disease management (fungicides and bactericides), and personal experience of *Brassica carinata* as a biofumigant in strawberry fields.

### 10.2 Natural Products Used as Fungicides and Bactericides in Agriculture

The natural products used as agrochemicals have been well documented (Knight et al., 1997; Warrior, 2000; Copping and Duke, 2007; Kim and Hwang, 2007; Dayan et al., 2009). Microorganisms can synthesize secondary metabolites of versatile chemical structures with diverse biological activities that exceed the scope of synthetic organic chemistry (Porter, 1985). Pesticidal potency is not the only factor for formulating a plant-based product as a commercial pesticide. In-field chemical stability adequate to reduce the application times to an economical level, and lowered volatility for sufficient retention on the surface of host plants are also important factors for microbial fungicides to be efficiently applied in agriculture (Kim and Hwang, 2007). Therefore, only a few microbial metabolites have been successfully developed into commercial fungicides. The excellent fungicidal activity of these microbial metabolites and their potential as lead candidates for further fungicide development continue to stimulate research and screening for antifungal microbial metabolites (Kim and Hwang, 2007; Dubey et al., 2009). Table 10.1 summarizes the microbial metabolites, and plant- or animal-derived products used as fungicides or bactericides in agriculture.

Biological control agents (including both bacteriological or fungus origin), plants, natural compounds and preparations have been described with activity against bacterial or fungal plant pathogens. Furthermore, plants protect themselves from microbial attacks with both constitutive antimicrobials and compounds induced by the attacking pathogens (phytoalexins). Natural products have been used to protect plants indirectly from pathogens by inducing systemic acquired resistance (SAR). The SAR-inducing compounds are termed elicitors. Pathogens cannot evolve resistance directly to the elicitor because the activity is indirect, making such products excellent candidates for integrated disease management. Nevertheless, elicitors are generally not as effective as chemical fungicides, partly because the timing of elicitor application and threat to the crop by a pathogen is crucial, but difficult to maximize (Dayan et al., 2009).

Disease suppression by biocontrol agents is the sustained manifestation of interactions between the plant, the pathogen, the biocontrol agent, and the
Table 10.1. A summary of natural products used as agrochemicals.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Species</th>
<th>Products</th>
<th>Target pathogens</th>
<th>References</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Bacteria</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Erwinia amylovora</em> (Burrill) Winslow</td>
<td>Harpin protein</td>
<td><em>Xanthomonas campestris</em></td>
<td>Copping and Duke, 2007</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Continued*
Table 10.1. Continued.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Species</th>
<th>Products</th>
<th>Target pathogens</th>
<th>References</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Sobin et al.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Streptomyces cacaoi var. asoensis</td>
<td>Polyoxins:</td>
<td>Sphaerotheca spp. and other powdery mildews</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Isono et al.</td>
<td>polyoxin B</td>
<td>Botrytis cinerea Pers., Sclerotinia sclerotiorum De Bary</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Corynespora melonis Lindau, Cochliobolus miyabeanus (Ito &amp; Kuribay) Drechsler ex Dastur</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Alternaria alternata (Fr.), Keissler and other Alternaria spp.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>polyoxorim</td>
<td>R. solani, Nectria galligena, Bresadola (Diplodia pseudodiplodia Fuckel)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(polyoxin D)</td>
<td>Drechslera spp., Bipolaris spp., Curvularia spp., Helminthosporium spp.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Streptomyces griseus</td>
<td>Streptomycin</td>
<td>Bacteria, particularly effective against: Xanthomonas oryzae</td>
<td>Copping and Duke, 2007</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(Krainsky)</td>
<td></td>
<td>Dowson, X. citri Dowson, Pseudomonas tabaci Stevens</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Waksman &amp; Henrici</td>
<td></td>
<td>P. lachrymans Carsner, Rhizoctonia spp.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Streptomyces hygroscopicus</td>
<td>Validamycin</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(Jensen) Waksman &amp; Henrici</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>(In vitro and in the greenhouse, not in field because of photosensitivity)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Continued</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Species</td>
<td>Products</td>
<td>Target pathogens</td>
<td>References</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------</td>
<td>--------------------------------------------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Fenpiclonil and Fludioxonil</strong> (Phenylpyrroles derivates to enhanced photostability)</td>
<td><em>Fusarium graminearum</em> Schwabe</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td><em>Gerlachia nivalis</em> Gams &amp; Müll</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td><em>Botrytis</em> spp.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td><em>Monilinia</em> spp.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td><em>Sclerotinia</em> spp.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Fungi</strong></td>
<td><strong>Fungus-derived products</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Saccharomyces cerevisiae</em> Meyer ex Hansen</td>
<td>Yeast extract hydrolysate</td>
<td>ni</td>
<td>Copping and Duke, 2007</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Strobilurus tenacellus</em></td>
<td>Strobilurin A</td>
<td></td>
<td>Ishii et al., 2001; Balba, 2007</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Oudemansiella mucida</em> From which synthetic strobilurins such as azoxyostrobin and kresoxim-methyl have been developed</td>
<td>Resistance to strobilurins has already evolved</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Plants</strong></td>
<td><strong>Plant-derived products</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Cassia tora</em> L. (also known as <em>Cassia obtusifolia</em> L.)</td>
<td>Cinnamaldehyde</td>
<td><em>Verticillium</em> spp.</td>
<td>Copping and Duke, 2007</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td><em>Rhizoctonia</em> spp.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td><em>Pythium</em> spp.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td><em>Sclerotinia homeocarpa</em> Bennett</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td><em>Fusarium moniliforme</em> var. subglutinans</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td><em>Wollenw. &amp; Reinking</em></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Powdery mildew</td>
<td>Copping and Duke, 2007</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Powdery mildew</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Laminaria digitata (Hudson)</td>
<td>Laminarine</td>
<td>Fungal pathogens of cereals, particularly septoria and powdery mildews</td>
<td>Copping and Duke, 2007</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Continued
The microbial community on and around the plant and the physical environment (Handelsman and Stabb, 1996). Relevant biocontrol microorganisms of the rhizosphere include *Pseudomonas* spp., *Bacillus* spp., *Streptomyces* spp., *Trichoderma* spp., and non-pathogenic *Fusarium* spp. (Cook, 1993; Paulitz and Belanger, 2001; Whipps, 2001). Different species of *Trichoderma* are studied primarily for their ability to control plant disease through antagonism, rhizosphere competence, enzyme production, induction of defence responses in plants, metabolism of germination stimulants, and beneficial growth of the host following root colonization (Weindling, 1934; Zimand *et al*., 1996; Bailey and Lumsden, 1998; Howell, 2003; Porras *et al*., 2007a,b). Determination of these effects depends on many interactions that take place in the soil among *Trichoderma* spp., other microorganisms, the plant root, and the soil environment (Bailey and Lumsden, 1998).

### Table 10.1. Continued.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Species</th>
<th>Products</th>
<th>Target pathogens</th>
<th>References</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>Macleaya cordata</em> R. Br.</td>
<td>Pink plume poppy extract</td>
<td>The target pathogens are those causing foliar fungal diseases, such as powdery mildew, alternaria leaf spot and septoria leaf spot</td>
<td>Copping and Duke, 2007</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Rosmarinus officinalis</em></td>
<td>Rosemary oil</td>
<td>ni</td>
<td>Dayan <em>et al</em>., 2009</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Thymus vulgaris</em></td>
<td>Thyme oil</td>
<td>ni</td>
<td>Dayan <em>et al</em>., 2009</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Azadirachta indica</em></td>
<td>Clarified hydrophobic extract of neem oil</td>
<td>ni</td>
<td>Dayan <em>et al</em>., 2009</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Gossypium hirsutum</em> and <em>Allium sativum</em></td>
<td>Cottonseed oil with garlic extract</td>
<td>ni</td>
<td>Dayan <em>et al</em>., 2009</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Animals</td>
<td>Animal-derived products</td>
<td>Powdery mildews</td>
<td>Copping and Duke, 2007</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cow</td>
<td>Milk</td>
<td>Powdery mildews</td>
<td>Copping and Duke, 2007</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dried, crushed crustacean exoskeletons</td>
<td>Poly-o-glucosamine or chitosan</td>
<td>Powdery mildews <em>Botrytis</em> spp.</td>
<td>Copping and Duke, 2007</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

ni, information not provided in reference.
10.3 Biofumigation with Brassica

The term biofumigation has been defined as the ‘suppression of soil-borne pathogens and pests by Brassica rotation or green manure crops, through liberation of isothiocyanates from hydrolysis of the glucosinolates that characterize the Brassicaceae’ (Kirkegaard and Matthiessen, 2004).

Biofumigation is based on the action of volatile compounds, especially isothiocyanates, produced by the hydrolysis of glucosinolates. Glucosinolates are secondary metabolites produced by plants belonging to the Capparales order (Gimsing and Kirkegaard, 2009). Of the many hundreds of cruciferous species investigated, all are able to synthesize glucosinolates, and at least 500 species of non-cruiferous dicotyledonous angiosperms have been reported to contain them. Most glucosinolate-containing genera are clustered within the Brassicaceae, Capparaceae and Caricaceae. Among the Brassicaceae, the genus Brassica contains a large number of the commonly consumable species (Fahey et al., 2001). The enzyme myrosinase, produced by all plants that produce glucosinolates, is physically separated from the glucosinolates in the intact plant tissue. Glucosinolates and myrosinase are reported to be located in vacuoles, and are not colocalized in the same cells (Andréasson et al., 2001) (Fig. 10.1). Upon tissue disruption the glucosinolates and the myrosinase come into contact (Fig. 10.2) and the myrosinase hydrolyses the glucosinolates to form hydrolysis products such as isothiocyanate, nitrile and thiocyanate (Gimsing and Kirkegaard, 2009) (Fig. 10.3).

The different chemical side-chain structures of the isothiocyanates determine important chemical and physical properties such as hydrophobicity and volatility, and their toxicity (Brown and Morra, 1997). Biofumigation can be achieved by incorporating fresh plant material (green manure), seed meals (a by-product of seed crushing for oil), or dried plant material treated to preserve isothiocyanate activity (Kirkegaard and Matthiessen, 2004; Lazzeri et al. 2004; Matthiessen and Kirkegaard, 2006).

A field experiment conducted in Huelva (South-west Spain; the most important area of strawberry production in Europe) contributes to the development and optimization of biofumigation with Brassica and soil solarization as alternatives to the traditional use of chemicals in strawberry production (Porras et al., 2008).

Solarization is a process that employs solar radiation to heat soil under a transparent plastic film to temperatures that are detrimental to soilborne pathogens. Increased soil temperatures can decrease populations of plant pathogens (Katan, 1981). Solarization can enhance the effectiveness of other pest management approaches (Katan, 1981; Ben-Yephet et al., 1987; Ramirez-Villapudua and Munnecke, 1988; Porras et al., 2007a, b) and has the additional advantages of being a non-chemical alternative method for pathogen control (Batchelor, 2002).

The soil in the field experiment had never been previously treated with methyl bromide, and was naturally infested by Phytophthora spp. Treatments were soil solarization (S), biofumigation + solarization (B + S), and the untreated control (C). Treatments were applied in the same plots each year
(2005–2006 and 2006–2007). Biofumigation was done with *Brassica carinata* in the siliqua stage that showed the major suppressive effect in previous *in vitro* experiments (Romero *et al*., 2008). *B. carinata* was cut, because upon tissue disruption the substrate and the enzyme come into contact and the myrosinase hydrolyses the glucosinolates to form hydrolysis products. The chopped material was incorporated into the soil to a depth of 10 cm using a rotary tiller. The soil was covered using clear 50-μm low-density polyethylene mulch, and drip-irrigated from July to September (Fig. 10.4).

Plots were covered to avoid the escape of isothiocyanates from the soil by volatilization and to increase soil temperatures. Drip irrigation was applied to enhance the formation of isothiocyanates in soil (Matthiessen *et al*., 2004).
Fig. 10.3. Glucosinolates and hydrolysis products originated by the activity of the enzyme myrosinase.
Biofumigation and solarization increased foliar surface and strawberry yield the most each year, and differences were observed relative to solarization alone and the untreated control (Tables 10.2 and 10.3).

Biofumigation and solarization reduced *Phytophthora* spp. soil population relative to the untreated control, but it did not totally eliminate the pathogen. According to previous experiments (Porras, 2005; Porras *et al.*, 2007a), the results indicate that solarization may serve as a component in an integrated, sustainable approach to the management of *Phytophthora* spp. in strawberry.

The presence of high amounts of glucosinolates, and of the enzyme myrosinase that catalyses their hydrolysis, linked to the high biocidal activity of some glucosinolate enzymatic hydrolysis derivative products (mainly isothiocyanates and nitriles) have suggested the practical possibility of amending soil with these natural biocidal compounds by the cultivation and green manure of selected species of the family *Brassicaceae* (Lazzeri *et al.*, 2004). The potential of biofumigation as a

Fig. 10.4. *Brassica carinata* (a) used as biofumigant was chopped (b), buried (c), and covered and drip-irrigated (d).
component of the integrated management of soil pathogens has been demonstrated in various agricultural systems (Gimsing and Kirkegaard, 2009).

### 10.4 Conclusion

Naturally occurring substances found in fungi, bacteria and plants are important sources of molecules with pesticidal properties. They may be developed either as products per se or used as starting points for synthesis to optimize specific properties. Low mammalian toxicity, low environmental impact, low levels of residues in food, and compatibility with IPM programmes are important considerations in formulation of plant-based products as pesticides. In addition, chemical pesticides such as methyl bromide are being phased out globally because of the impact on the ozone layer. Chemical, physical and biological alternative methods for pathogen control have been evaluated in crop production to replace the compounds lost due to the new registration requirements. Natural-product-based pesticides can sometimes be specific to the target species and have unique modes of action with little mammalian toxicity. Modern instrumentation and improved methods would increase interest in natural-product-based pesticide discovery research.
References


Fungal Endophytes: an Alternative Source of Bioactive Compounds for Plant Protection

R.N. Kharwar\(^1\) and Gary Strobel\(^2\)

\(^1\)Department of Botany, Banaras Hindu University, India; \(^2\)Department of Plant Sciences, Montana State University, Bozeman, USA

Abstract

Endophytes are a group of microorganisms that represent an abundant and dependable source of bioactive and chemically novel compounds with potential for exploitation in a wide variety of applications. The mechanisms through which endophytes exist and respond to their surroundings must be better understood in order to be more predictive about which higher plants to seek, study and employ in isolating their microfloral components. This may facilitate the natural product discovery process. Endophytic fungi are now attracting great interest from researchers for an alternative way of controlling plant pathogens.

11.1 Introduction

The bioactive compounds of natural origin have been under ever-increasing demand to solve various problems related to human health and agriculture. Plants have provided humans with resources for healing purposes for millennia. Some representative and well known medicines derived from plants are quinine, digitalin, taxol, aspirin, reserpine and many more (Wani et al., 1971; Hoffman et al., 1998). Some plants have been under great threat as a result of the enormous pressure brought upon them by virtue of their healing and biocontrol properties.

In some cases, plant-associated fungi are able to make the same bioactive compounds as the host plant itself and one of the best examples of this is the discovery of the gibberellins in Fusarium fujikuroi in the early 1930s (Borrow et al., 1955). Eventually it was learnt that the gibberellins are one of only five classes of phytohormones that are to be found in virtually all plants. Endophytic (endon = inner; phyton = plants) fungi are a group of microorganisms that reside in healthy and functional inner tissues of the plants without causing any detectable symptoms (Petrini, 1991).
The observation that fungi make the same compounds as their host led Stierle et al. (1993) to examine the prospect that endophytic fungi associated with Taxus brevifolia may also produce taxol, the most promising natural bioactive molecule discovered against cancer. This significant discovery established that the endophytic fungi which reside in the living healthy tissues of the plant, may produce one or more bioactive principles or natural products with either medicinal/therapeutic or biocontrol potential which were previously known to be produced by the host plant (Wani et al., 1971; Stierle et al., 1993; Dimetry et al., 1995; Hoffman et al., 1998; Gahukar, 2005). Taxol itself is the world's first billion dollar anticancer drug and its main source is Taxus spp. Potentially, a fungal source of taxol would reduce its price and save the plant, in some areas, from extinction. The success of finding fungal taxol has produced a paradigm for other bioactive compounds to be found in endophytic fungi. This might have happened during the course of evolution of symbiosis between fungus and host plant, where reciprocal gene transfer has occurred. As observed in the case of Agrobacterium tumefaciens, the t-DNA of the bacterial plasmid was transferred and incorporated into the genome of the host plant. This is a fine example of the transaction of genetic materials between prokaryote and eukaryote. However, in case of the fungal endophyte–host relationship, it is a eukaryote to eukaryote transaction.

As the fungi are a less studied group of microbes, only a few studies can be exemplified. Alkaloids synthesized by Neotyphodium sp. in its grass hosts have been implicated in fescue toxicosis in rangeland animals. The chemistry and biology of this and other grass endophytes are reviewed elsewhere. Unfortunately, because this work was so comprehensive, one may be led to the conclusion that endophytes only produce toxic compounds in their respective hosts and that they hold no promise for any medicinal applications. It turns out that this is simply not the case. Endophytes examined from a plethora of sources show that an overwhelming number of them produce natural products with promising potential for many applications.

Bacon and White (2000) gave an inclusive and widely accepted definition of endophytes: ‘Microbes that colonize living, internal tissues of plants without causing any immediate, overt negative effects’ (Fig. 11.1). While the usual lack of adverse effect nature of endophyte occupation in plant tissue has prompted a focus on symbiotic or mutualistic relationships between endophytes and their hosts, the observed biodiversity of endophytes suggests they can also be aggressive saprophytes or opportunistic pathogens (Promputtha et al., 2007).

Both fungi and bacteria are the most common microbes existing as endophytes. It would seem that other microbial forms most certainly exist in plants as endophytes such as mycoplasmas, rickettsia, streptomycetes and archebacteria. In fact, it may be the case that the majority of microbes existing in plants are not culturable with common laboratory techniques, making their presence and role in plants even more intriguing. The most frequently isolated endophytes are the fungi (Redlin and Carris, 1996). However, at the
outset, it is important to note that the vast majority of plants have not been studied for any endophytic association. Thus, enormous opportunities exist for the recovery of novel fungal forms, including genera, biotypes, as well as species in the myriad of plants yet to be studied. Hawksworth and Rossman (1987) estimated there may be as many as 1.5 million different fungal species, yet only about 100,000 have been described. As more evidence accumulates, estimates keep rising as to the actual number of fungal species. For instance, Dreyfuss and Chapela (1994) have estimated at least 1 million species of endophytic fungi alone. It seems obvious that endophytes are a rich and reliable source of genetic diversity and may represent many previously undescribed species.

Out of 300,000 higher plants that exist on the earth, only a handful, primarily grass species, have been studied relative to their endophytic biology. Consequently, there is enormous opportunity to find new and interesting endophytic fungi amongst the myriad of plants in different settings and ecosystems. The intent of this chapter is to provide insights into the occurrence of endophytes in nature, the products that they make, and how some of these organisms show their potential for human and plant use. The chapter discusses the rationale for study, methods used, and examples of some of the endophytes isolated and studied over the course of time. This chapter, however, also includes some specific examples that illustrate the work done in this emerging field of bioprospecting and sourcing the endophytic fungi.
11.2 Diversity in Endophytes

Of the myriad of ecosystems on Planet Earth, those having the greatest general biodiversity of life seem to be the ones that also have the greatest number and most diverse endophytes. Tropical and temperate rainforests are the most biologically diverse terrestrial ecosystems. The most threatened of these spots cover only 1.44% of the land’s surface, yet they harbour over 60% of the world’s terrestrial biodiversity. In addition, each of the 20–25 areas identified as supporting the world’s greatest biodiversity also support unusually high levels of plant endemism (Mittermeier, 1999). As such, one would expect, that with high plant endemism, there should also exist specific endophytes that may have evolved with the endemic plant species. Biological diversity implies chemical diversity because of the constant chemical innovation that is required to survive in ecosystems where the evolutionary race to survive is most active. Tropical rainforests are a remarkable example of this type of environment. Competition is great, resources are limited and selection pressure is at its peak. This gives rise to a high probability that rainforests are a source of novel molecular structures and biologically active compounds (Redell and Gordon, 2000).

Bills et al. (2002) describe a metabolic distinction between tropical and temperate endophytes through statistical data which compares the number of bioactive natural products isolated from endophytes of tropical regions to the number of those isolated from endophytes of temperate origin. Not only did they find that tropical endophytes provide more active natural products than temperate endophytes, but they also noted that a significantly higher number of tropical endophytes produced a larger number of active secondary metabolites than did fungi from other substrata. This observation suggests the importance of the host plant as well as the ecosystem in influencing the general metabolism of endophytic microbes.

11.3 Techniques for Isolation, Preservation and Storage of Endophytes

Cultures for product isolation

Detailed techniques for the isolation of microbial endophytes are outlined in a number of reviews and technical articles (Strobel et al., 1993; Strobel, 2002; Strobel and Daisy, 2003; Strobel et al., 2004; Castillo et al., 2005). If endophytes are being obtained from plants growing in polar regions, the dry tropics, or some temperate areas of the world, one can expect to acquire from none to only one or two endophytic cultures per plant sample (0.5–10.0 cm limb piece). However, from the wet tropics this number may rise to 20–30 or even more microbes per plant piece. Given limited fermentation capabilities, it is critical to label and store cultures of freshly isolated microbes for work in the future and for patent and publication purposes.
Generally, preservation in an aqueous 15% glycerol solution at −70°C is an exceedingly good procedure for saving cultures until work on them can proceed at a later date (Strobel et al., 1993; Strobel, 2002; Strobel and Daisy, 2003; Strobel et al., 2004).

Growing fungal cultures on sterilized barley or other grains with subsequent storage at −70°C is an effective alternative to the glycerol storage solution.

**Plant selection norms and ethics**

It is important to understand that the methods and rationale used to guide plant selection seem to provide the best opportunities to isolate novel endophytic microorganisms at the genus, species or biotype level. Since the number of plant species in the world is so great, creative and imaginative strategies must be used to quickly narrow the search for endophytes displaying bioactivity (Mittermeier et al., 1999).

A specific rationale for the collection of each plant for endophyte isolation and natural product discovery is used. Several hypotheses govern this plant selection strategy:

1. **Plants from unique environmental settings,** especially those with an unusual biology, and possessing novel strategies for survival are seriously considered for study.
2. **Plants that have an ethnobotanical history** (use by indigenous peoples) that are related to the specific uses or applications of interest are selected for study. These plants are chosen either by direct contact with local people or via local literature. This approach may also provide benefits to the local/tribal people by documenting their help under a participatory research programme. The ethics of science restrict the researcher drawing the monetary and intellectual benefits alone, especially when knowledge of local people is used. However, it often happens that at the time of documentation, scientists don’t give proper importance to the knowledge source or the local people, and this must be checked to maintain the sanctity of the research community. Ultimately, it may be learned that the healing powers of the botanical source, in fact, may have nothing to do with the natural products of the plant, but of an endophyte inhabiting the plant.
3. **Plants that are endemic,** having an unusual longevity, or that have occupied a certain ancient land mass, such as Gondwanaland, are also more likely to lodge endophytes with active natural products than other plants.
4. **Plants growing in areas of great biodiversity,** it follows, also have the prospect of housing endophytes with great biodiversity.

Distinct environmental settings are therefore considered to be a promising source of novel endophytes and their compounds, and so too are plants with an unconventional biology. For example, an aquatic plant, *Rhyncholacis penicillata,* was collected from a river system in south-west Venezuela where that plant faced constant beating by virtue of rushing waters, debris, and
tumbling rocks and pebbles. These environmental insults created many portals through which common phytopathogenic oomycetes could enter the plant. Still, the plant population appeared to be healthy, possibly due to the protection provided by an endophytic product. This was the environmental biological clue used to choose this plant for a comprehensive study of its endophytes.

An example of plants with an ethnobotanical history is the snakevine _Kennedia nigriscans_, from the Northern Territory of Australia, which was selected for study since its sap has traditionally been used as a bush medicine. In fact, this area was selected for plant sampling as it has been home to the world’s longest standing human civilization, the Australian Aborigines. The snakevine is harvested, crushed and heated in an aqueous brew by local Aborigines in South-west Arnhemland to treat cuts, wounds and infections. As it turned out, the plant contains an entire suite of streptomycetes (Castillo _et al._, 2005). One in particular, designated _Streptomyces_ NRRL 30562, has unique partial 16S rDNA sequences when compared to those in GenBank (Castillo _et al._, 2002). It produces a series of actinomycins including actinomycins D, Xoγ, and X2. It produces novel, broad-spectrum peptide antibiotics called munumbicins. This seems to be an excellent example illustrating the potential benefits of knowledge of indigenous peoples and researchers.

Furthermore, some plants generate bioactive natural products and have associated endophytes that produce the same natural products. Such is the case with taxol, a highly functionalized diterpenoid and famed anticancer agent that is found in _Taxus brevifolia_ and other yew species (_Taxus_ spp.) (Wani _et al._, 1971). In 1993, a novel taxol-producing fungus _Taxomyces andreanae_ was isolated and characterized from _Taxus brevifolia_ (Strobel _et al._, 1993).

While combinatorial synthesis produces compounds at random, secondary metabolites, defined as low molecular weight compounds not required for growth in pure culture, are produced as an adaptation for specific functions in nature (Demain, 1981). Schulz (2001) points out that certain microbial metabolites seem to be characteristic of certain biotopes, both at an environmental as well as an organism level. Accordingly, it appears that the search for novel secondary metabolites should centre on organisms that inhabit unique biotopes. Thus, it behoves the investigator to carefully study and select the biological source before proceeding, rather than to take a totally random approach in selecting the source material. Careful study also indicates that organisms and their biotopes that are subjected to constant metabolic and environmental interactions should produce even more secondary metabolites (Schulz _et al._, 2002). Endophytes are microbes that inhabit such biotopes, namely higher plants, which is why they are currently considered as a wellspring of novel secondary metabolites offering the potential for exploitation of their medical benefits (Tan and Zou, 2001). Moreover, novel compound-screening experiments have already proved that endophytes are considerably ahead of soil isolates, with 51% new structure compounds compared with 38%, respectively (Schulz _et al._, 2002).
Molecular techniques provided unexpected and thrilling results with *Pestalotiopsis microspora*

It is of some compelling interest how the genes for taxol production may have been acquired by endophytes such as *Pestalotiopsis microspora* (Long et al., 1998). Although the complete answer to this question is not at hand, some other relevant genetic studies have been performed on this organism. *P. microspora* Ne 32 is one of the most easily genetically transformable fungi that has been studied to date. *In vivo* addition of telomeric repeats to foreign DNA generates chromosomal DNAs in this fungus (Long et al., 1998). Repeats of the telomeric sequence 5′-TTAGGG-3′ were appended to non-telomeric-transforming DNA termini. The new DNAs, carrying foreign genes and the telomeric repeats, replicated independently of the chromosome and expressed the information carried by the foreign genes. The addition of telomeric repeats to foreign DNA is unusual among fungi. This finding may have important implications in the biology of *P. microspora* Ne 32 since it explains at least one mechanism as to how new DNA can be captured by this organism and eventually expressed and replicated. Such a mechanism may begin to explain how the enormous biochemical variation may have arisen in this fungus. Also, this initial work represents a framework to aid in the understanding of how this fungus may adapt itself to the environment of its plant hosts and suggests that the uptake of plant DNA into its own genome may occur. In addition, the telomeric repeats have the same sequence as human telomeres which points to the possibility that *P. microspora* may serve as a means to make artificial human chromosomes, a totally unexpected result.

### 11.4 Natural Products and Phytochemicals from Endophytes

It has been suggested that the reason some endophytes produce certain phytochemicals, originally characteristic of the host, might be related to a genetic combination of the endophyte with the host that occurred in evolutionary time (Tan and Zou, 2001). This is a concept that was originally proposed as a mechanism to explain why *Taxomyces andreanae* may be producing taxol (Sterle et al., 1993). All aspects of the biology and interrelationship of endophytes with their respective hosts is a vastly under-investigated and exciting field (Strobel, 2002; Strobel and Daisy, 2003; Strobel et al., 2004). Thus, more background information on a given plant species and its microorganismal biology would be exceedingly helpful in directing the search for bioactive products (Lane et al., 2000). Presently, no one is quite certain of the role of endophytes in nature and what appears to be their relationship to various host plant species. While some endophytic fungi appear to be ubiquitous (e.g. *Fusarium* spp., *Pestalotiopsis* spp., *Aspergillus* spp. and *Xylaria* spp.), one cannot definitively state that endophytes are truly host specific or even systemic within plants any more than assume that their associations are chance encounters (Promputtha et al., 2007). Frequently, many endophytes of the same species are isolated from the same plant, and only one or a few biotypes
of a given fungus will produce a highly biologically active compound in culture. A great deal of uncertainty also exists about what an endophyte produces in culture and what it may produce in nature. It does seem possible that the production of certain bioactive compounds by the endophyte in situ may facilitate the domination of its biological niche within the plant or even provide protection to the plant from harmful invading pathogens, insects and environmental stresses (Omacini, et al., 2001; Rodriguez, et al., 2008). Furthermore, little information exists on the biochemistry and physiology of the interactions of the endophyte with its host plant. It would seem that many factors changing in the host depending on the season, and other factors including age, environment, and location, may influence the biology of the endophyte. Indeed, further research at the molecular level must be conducted in the field to study endophyte interactions and ecology. All of these interactions are probably chemically mediated for some purpose in nature. An ecological awareness of the role these organisms play in nature will provide the best clues for targeting particular types of endophytic bioactivity with the greatest potential for bioprospecting.

There is a general call for new antibacterial, antifungal, antiviral and chemotherapeutic agents that are highly effective and possess low toxicity. This new approach of search is driven by the development of resistance in infectious microorganisms (e.g. Staphylococcus, Mycobacterium, Streptococcus, Bacillus, Aspergillus spp.) to existing drugs and by the menacing increase of naturally resistant organisms. The ingress to the human population of disease-causing agents such as AIDS, Ebola and SARS requires the discovery and development of new drugs to combat them. Not only diseases such as AIDS require drugs that target them specifically, but new therapies are needed for treating ancillary infections that are a consequence of a weakened immune system. Furthermore, others who are immunocompromised (e.g. cancer and organ-transplant patients) are at high risk of infection by opportunistic pathogens, such as Aspergillus, Cryptococcus and Candida sp., that are not normally major problems in the human population. In addition, more drugs are needed to treat efficiently parasitic protozoan and nematodal infections such as malaria, leishmaniasis, trypanomiasis, incephalitis and filariasis. Malaria alone is more dangerous in causing human death each year than any other single infectious agent with the exception of AIDS and tuberculosis (NIAID, 2001). However, the enteric diseases as a group claim the most lives each year of any other disease complex and, unfortunately, the victims are mostly children (NIAID, 2001).

Endophytic fungi are now attracting great interest from researchers as an alternative source in controlling plant pathogens. The control of late blight, caused by Phytophthora infestans, is very difficult by chemical means, because of the high virulence of the pathogen and increasing resistance to available fungicides (Griffith et al., 1992). The fermentation broths of 52.3% of endophytic fungi displayed growth inhibition of at least one pathogenic fungus, such as Neurospora sp., Trichoderma sp. and Fusarium sp. (Huang et al., 2001). In a similar study, fermentation broths of nine (4.8%) out of the 187 endophytic fungi isolated from mainly woody plants were highly active against
P. infestans in tomato plants (Park et al., 2005). Induced resistance was generated in tomato plant against fusarium wilt by endophytic Fusarium oxysporum (Duijff et al., 1998). Sclerotinia sclerotiorum is a common root-, crown- and stem-rot-causing pathogen in cabbage, common bean, celery, coriander, melon, squash, soybean, tomato, lettuce, cucumber and so on. Cyclosporine is characterized as a major antifungal substance against S. sclerotiorum from the fermentation broth of F. oxysporum S6 (Rodriguez et al., 2006). F. oxysporum strain EF119, isolated from roots of red pepper, showed the most potent in vivo anti-oomycete activity against tomato late blight and in vitro anti-oomycete activity against several oomycete pathogens (Kim et al., 2007). Out of 510 endophytic fungi screened, 64 strains exhibited antifungal activities against Candida albicans, Candida glabrata, Candida krusei, Cryptococcus neoformans, Aspergillus fumigatus, Aspergillus flavus, Rhizopus oryzae, Trichophyton rubrum and Microsporum canis (Anke et al., 2003).

Narisawa et al. (2000) found that the root endophytic hyphomycete Hetereoconium chaetospira suppressed Verticillium yellows in Chinese cabbage in the field. Verticillium wilt is one of the most destructive diseases of aubergine. Eleven out of 123 isolates of endophytic fungi, especially Heteroconium chaetospira, Phialocephala fortinii, Fusarium, Penicillium, Trichoderma and mycelium radicis atrovirens (MRA), after being inoculated onto axenically reared aubergine seedlings, almost completely suppressed the pathogenic effects of a post-inoculated, virulent strain of Verticillium dahliae (Narisawa et al., 2000).

Out of 39 endophytes of Artemisia annua investigated, 21 showed in vitro antifungal activity against crop-threatening fungi Gaeumannomyces graminis var. tritici, Rhizoctonia cerealis, Helminthosporium sativum, Fusarium graminearum, Gerlachia nivalis and Phytophthora capsici (Liu et al., 2001). The extracts of endophytic Alternaria sp., isolated from medicinal plants of Western Ghats of India, inhibited the growth of C. albicans (Raviraja et al., 2006). About 41.2% of all the isolated endophytic fungi from rice plants showed antagonism against Magnaporthe grisea, Rhizoctonia solani and Fusarium moniliforme. Colletotrichum gloeosporioides (Penz) Penz & Sacc. was isolated as an endophyte from healthy leaves of Cryptocarya mandioccana and had antifungal activity against phytopathogenic fungi Cladosporium cladosporioides and Cladosporium sphaerospermum (Inacio et al., 2006). Fungal endophytes Chaetomium spp., Phoma sp., isolated from asymptomatic leaves of wheat, reduced the number of pustules and the area of pustules of Puccinia recondita f. sp. Triticici (Dingle and Mcgee, 2003). An in vitro study showed 40%, 65% and 27% antagonistic interaction by endophytic morphospecies against cacao pathogens Monilinia roreri, Phytophthora palmivora and Crinipellis perniciosa, respectively, while in-field endophytic C. gloeosporioides produced a significant decrease in pod loss (Mejia et al., 2008).

For novel natural products, exciting possibilities exist for those who are willing to venture into the wild and unexplored territories of the world to experience the excitement and thrill of engaging in the discovery of endophytes, their biology, and potential usefulness. It is evident that natural-product-based compounds have an immense impact on modern medicine. For instance, about 40% of prescription drugs are based on them, and well
over 50% of the new chemical products registered by the US Food and Drug Administration (FDA) as anticancer agents, antimigraine agents and antihypertensive agents from 1981 to 2002 are natural products or their derivatives (Newman et al., 2003). Excluding biologics, between 1989 and 1995, 60% of approved drugs and pre-new-drug-application (NDA) candidates were of natural origin. From 1983 to 1994, over 60% of all approved and pre-NDA stage cancer drugs were of natural origin, as were 78% of all newly approved antibacterial agents (Concepcion et al., 2001). The discovery and development of taxol is a modern example of a natural product that has made an enormous impact on medicine (Wani et al., 1971; Suffness, 1995; Schulz and Christine, 2005).

Antibiotics from endophytic fungi

Generally, the most commonly isolated endophytic fungi are in the group of Fungi Imperfecti or Deuteromycotina. Also, it is quite common to isolate endophytes that produce no fruiting structures whatsoever such as Mycelia-Sterilia.

Cryptosporiopsis cf. quercina is the imperfect stage of Pezicula cinnamomea, a fungus commonly associated with hardwood species in Europe. It was isolated as an endophyte from Tripterigeum wilfordii, a medicinal plant native to Eurasia (Strobel et al., 1999). On Petri plates, C. quercina demonstrates excellent antifungal activity against some important human fungal pathogens including C. albicans and Trichophyton spp. Cryptocandin, a unique peptide antifungal related to the echinocandins and the pneumocandins (Walsh, 1992), was isolated and characterized from C. quercina (Strobel et al., 1999). This compound contains a number of peculiar hydroxylated amino acids and a novel amino acid, 3-hydroxy-4-hydroxymethyl proline (Fig. 11.2). It is generally true that not one but several bioactive and related compounds are produced by an endophytic microbe. So it is that other antifungal agents related to cryptocandin are also produced by C. quercina. Cryptocandin is also active against a number of plant pathogenic fungi including S. sclerotiorum and Botrytis cinerea. Cryptocandin and its related compounds are currently being considered for use against a number of fungi causing diseases of the skin and nails.

Cryptocin, a unique tetramic acid, is also produced by C. quercina (Fig. 11.3) (Li et al., 2000). This unusual compound possesses potent activity against Pyricularia oryzae, the causal organism of ‘rice blast’, one of the worst plant diseases in the world, as well as a number of other plant pathogenic fungi (Li et al., 2000). The compound was generally ineffective against an array of human and plant pathogenic fungi. Nevertheless, with minimum inhibitory concentrations against P. oryzae at 0.39 μg/ml, this compound is being examined as a natural chemical control agent for rice blast and is being used as a model to synthesize other antifungal compounds.

Peptelotiopsis microspora is a common rainforest endophyte (Strobel, 2002; Strobel and Daisy, 2003). It turns out that enormous biochemical diversity
Fig. 11.2 Cryptocandin A, an antifungal lipopeptide obtained from the endophytic fungus Cryptosporiopsis cf. quercina.

Fig. 11.3 Cryptocin, a tetramic acid antifungal compound found in Cryptosporiopsis cf. quercina.

does exist in this endophytic fungus and many secondary metabolites are produced by various strains of this widely dispersed organism. One such secondary metabolite is ambuic acid, an antifungal agent, which has been recently described from several isolates of P. microspora found as representative
isolates in many of the world’s rainforests (Fig. 11.4; Li et al., 2001). As an interesting spin-off to endophyte studies, ambuic acid and another endophyte product, terrein, have been used as models to develop new solid-state NMR tensor methods to assist in the characterization of molecular stereochemistry of organic molecules (Harper et al., 2001).

A strain of *P. microspora* was isolated from the endangered tree *Torreya taxifolia* and produces several compounds that have antifungal activity, including pestaloside, an aromatic β-glucoside, and two pyrones, pestalopyrone and hydroxypestalopyrone (Lee et al., 1995a,b). These compounds also possess phytotoxic properties. Other newly isolated secondary products obtained from *P. microspora* (endophytic on *Taxus brevifolia*) include two new caryophyllene sesquiterpenes, pestalotiopsins A and B (Pulici et al., 1996a,b), 2α-hydroxydrimeninol and a highly functionalized humulane. Variation in the amount and types of products found in this fungus depends on both the culture conditions and the original plant source from which it was isolated.

*Pestalotiopsis jesteri* is a newly described endophytic fungal species from the Sepik river area of Papua New Guinea, and it produces the highly functionalized cyclohexenone epoxides, jesterone and hydroxy-jesterone, which exhibit antifungal activity against a variety of plant pathogenic fungi (Li and Strobel, 2001). Jesterone has subsequently been synthesized with complete retention of biological activity (Fig. 11.5; Hu et al., 2001). Jesterone is one of

![Fig. 11.4. Ambuic acid, a highly functionalized cyclohexenone epoxide produced by a number of isolates of *Pestalotiopsis microspora* found in rainforests around the world.](image)

![Fig. 11.5. Jesterone, a cyclohexenone epoxide from *Pestalotiopsis jesteri*, has antioomycete activity.](image)
only a few products from endophytic microbes for which total synthesis has been successfully accomplished.

Phomopsichalasin, a metabolite from an endophytic *Phomopsis* sp., represents the first cytochalasin-type compound with a three-ring system replacing the cytochalasin macrolide ring. This metabolite exhibits antibacterial activity in disc diffusion assays (at a concentration of 4 μg/disc) against *Bacillus subtilis*, *Salmonella gallinarum* and *Staphylococcus aureus*. It also displays a moderate activity against the yeast *Candida tropicalis* (Horn et al., 1995).

An endophytic *Fusarium* sp. isolated from *Selaginella pallescens* collected in the Guanacaste Conservation Area of Costa Rica was screened for antifungal activity. A new pentaketide antifungal agent, CR377, was isolated from the culture broth of the fungus and showed potent activity against *C. albicans* in agar diffusion assays (Brady and Clardy, 2000). Colletotric acid, a metabolite of *Colletotrichum gloeosporioides*, an endophytic fungus isolated from *Artemisia mongolica*, displays antibacterial activity against bacteria as well as against the fungus *Helminthosporium sativum*. Antimicrobial products have been identified from another *Colletotrichum* sp. isolated from *Artemisia annua*, a traditional Chinese herb that is well recognized for its synthesis of artemisinin (an antimalarial drug) and its ability to inhabit many geographically different areas. Not only did the *Colletotrichum* sp. found in *A. annua* produce metabolites with activity against human pathogenic fungi and bacteria, but also metabolites that were fungistatic to plant pathogenic fungi (Lu et al., 2000).

A novel antibacterial agent, guignardic acid, was isolated from the endophytic fungus *Guignardia* sp.; the organism was obtained from the medicinal plant *Spondias mombin* of the tropical plant family Anacardiaceae found in Brazil. The compound was isolated by UV-guided fractionation of the fermentation products of this fungus and is the first member of a novel class of natural compounds containing a dioxolanone moiety formed by the fusion of 2-oxo-3-phenylpropanoic acid and 3-methyl-2-oxobutanoic acid, which are products of the oxidative deamination of phenylalanine and valine, respectively (Fig. 11.6; Rodriguez-Heerklotz et al., 2001).

Another antibacterial compound javanicin is produced by endophytic fungus *Chloridium* sp., under liquid- and solid-media culture conditions.

![Fig. 11.6. Guignardic acid from Guignardia sp. obtained from Spondias mombin, an Anacardiaceaeous plant in Brazil.](image-url)
(Kharwar et al., 2009). This highly functionalized naphthaquinone exhibits strong antibacterial activity against *Pseudomonas* spp., representing pathogens to both humans and plants. The compound was crystallized and the structure was elucidated using X-ray crystallography. The X-ray structure confirms the previously elucidated structure of the compound that was done through standard spectroscopic methods (Fig. 11.7).

**Volatile antibiotics from fungal endophytes**

*Muscodor albus* is a newly described endophytic fungus obtained from small limbs of *Cinnamomum zeylanicum* (Worapong et al., 2001). This xylariaceous (non-spore-producing) fungus effectively inhibits and kills certain other fungi and bacteria by producing a mixture of volatile compounds (Strobel et al., 2001). The majority of these compounds have been identified by gas chromatography/mass spectrometry (GC/MS), synthesized or acquired, and then ultimately formulated into an artificial mixture that mimicked the antibiotic effects of the volatile compounds produced by the fungus (Strobel et al., 2001). Individually, each of the five classes of volatile compounds produced by the fungus had some antimicrobial effects against the test fungi and bacteria but none was lethal. However, collectively they acted synergistically to cause death in a broad range of plant and human pathogenic fungi and bacteria. The most effective class of inhibitory compounds was the esters, of which isoamyl acetate was the most biologically active; however, in order to be lethal it needs to be combined with other volatiles (Strobel et al., 2001). The composition of the medium on which *M. albus* is grown dramatically influences the kind of volatile compounds that are produced (Ezra and Strobel, 2003).

The ecological implications and potential practical benefits of the ‘myco-fumigation’ effects of *M. albus* are very promising given the fact that soil fumigation utilizing methyl bromide will soon be illegal in the USA. Methyl bromide is not only a hazard to human health but it has been implicated in causing destruction of the world’s ozone layer. The potential use of myco-fumigation to treat soil, seeds, and plants will soon be a reality as AgraQuest of Davis, California, has EPA approval to release this organism for agricultural uses. The artificial mixture of volatile compounds may also have usefulness

![Javanicin](image_url)
in treating seeds, fruits and plant parts in storage and while being transported. In addition, *M. albus* is already in a limited market for the treatment of human wastes. Its gases have both inhibitory and lethal effects on such faecal-inhabiting organisms as *Escherichia coli* and *Vibrio cholera*. It will be used for this purpose in coming years. Studies are underway that show its promise to fumigate buildings, thus removing the potential for fungi to contaminate building surfaces and cause health risks.

Using *M. albus* as a screening tool, it has now been possible to isolate other endophytic fungi producing volatile antibiotics. The newly described *M. roseus* was twice obtained from tree species found in the Northern Territory of Australia. This fungus is just as effective in causing inhibition and death of test microbes in the laboratory as *M. albus* (Worapong *et al*., 2002). Other interesting *M. albus* isolates have been obtained from several plant species growing in the Northern Territory of Australia and the jungles of the Tesso Nilo area of Sumatra, Indonesia (Ezra *et al*., 2004; Atmosukarto *et al*., 2005).

A non-muscodor species (*Gliocladium* sp.) has also been discovered to produce volatile antibiotics. The volatile components of this organism are totally different from those of either *M. albus* or *M. roseus*. In fact, the most abundant volatile inhibitor is [8]-annulene, formerly used as a rocket fuel and discovered here for the first time as a natural product. However, the bioactivity of the volatiles of this *Gliocladium* sp. is not as good or as comprehensive as that of the *Muscodor* spp. (Stinson *et al*., 2003). Due to the volatile antibiotic producing properties of these fungi, they could be used against several soil plant pathogens to reduce their inoculum. The latter, *G. roseum*, has already shown its potential through the production of a series of hydrocarbons and hydrocarbon derivatives as mycodiesel (Strobel *et al*., 2008). Interestingly, another novel species of *Muscodor* sp., *M. crispans*, has been reported to produce a mixture of strong volatile compounds (VOCs) that were effective against a wide range of plant pathogens, including the fungi *Pythium ultimum*, *Phytophthora cinnamomi*, *S. sclerotiorum* and *Mycosphaerella fijiensis* (the black sigatoka pathogen of bananas), and the serious bacterial pathogen of citrus, *Xanthomonas axonopodis* pv. *citri* (Mitchell *et al*., 2010).

**Antiviral compounds from endophytic fungi**

Another fascinating use of products from endophytic fungi is the inhibition of viruses. Two novel human cytomegalovirus (hCMV) protease inhibitors, cytonic acids A and B, have been isolated from solid-state fermentation of the endophytic fungus *Cytonaema* sp. Their structures were elucidated as *p*-tridepside isomers using MS and NMR methods (Guo *et al*., 2000). It is apparent that the potential for the discovery of compounds having antiviral activity from endophytes is in its infancy. The fact, however, that some compounds have been found already is promising. The main limitation to compound discovery to date is probably related to the absence of common antiviral screening systems in most compound discovery programs. Since no antiviral compound isolated from endophytes has been tested against
virulent plant pathogens, an intensive exploration is therefore needed to identify some potential antiviral compounds which could be very effective against variety of pathogenic plant viruses.

**Antioxidants from fungal endophytes**

Two compounds, pestacin and isopestacin, have been obtained from culture fluids of *Pestalotiopsis microspora*, an endophyte isolated from a combretaceous plant, *Terminalia morobensis*, growing in the Sepik River drainage system of Papua New Guinea (Strobel et al., 2002; Harper et al., 2003). Both pestacin and isopestacin display antimicrobial as well as antioxidant activity. Isopestacin was attributed with antioxidant activity based on its structural similarity to the flavonoids (Fig. 11.8). Electron spin resonance spectroscopy measurements confirmed this antioxidant activity showing that the compound is able to scavenge superoxide and hydroxyl free radicals in solution (Strobel et al., 2002). Pestacin occurs naturally as a racemic mixture and also possesses potent antioxidant activity, at least one order of magnitude more potent than that of Trolox, a vitamin E derivative (Harper et al., 2003). The antioxidant activity of pestacin arises primarily via cleavage of an unusually reactive C–H bond and, to a lesser extent, through O–H abstraction (Harper et al., 2003). Endophytes also help plants to keep fit through balancing the generation and elimination of reactive oxygen species (Rodriguez and Redman, 2005). The use of chemical antioxidants is being slowly prohibited due to their small carcinogenic effect, and thus the demand for natural

![Fig. 11.8. Isopestacin, an antioxidant produced by an endophytic Pestalotiopsis microspora strain, isolated from Terminalia morobensis growing on the north coast of Papua New Guinea.](image-url)
antioxidant compounds from natural resources has increased, so that the shelf life of stored crop produce and plant health could be enhanced to cater for a hungry population, and endophytes may be one of the novel natural resources to achieve this goal (Tejesvi et al., 2008).

**Immunosuppressive compounds from fungal endophytes**

Immunosuppressive drugs are used today to prevent allograft rejection in transplant patients and in the future they could be used to treat autoimmune diseases such as rheumatoid arthritis and insulin-dependent diabetes. The endophytic fungus, *Fusarium subglutinans*, isolated from *Tripterygium wilfordii*, produces the immunosuppressive, but non-cytotoxic diterpene pyrones, subglutinols A and B (Lee et al., 1995). Subglutinols A and B are equipotent in the mixed lymphocyte reaction (MLR) assay and thymocyte proliferation (TP) assay with an IC$_{50}$ of 0.1 μM. The famed immunosuppressant drug cyclosporin A, also a fungal metabolite, was roughly as potent in the MLR assay and 10$^4$ more potent in the TP assay. However, the lack of toxicity associated with subglutinols A and B suggests that they should be explored in greater detail as potential immunosuppressants (Lee et al., 1995).

**11.5 Conclusion**

Geographical, floristic and significant seasonal variations that exist in different parts of globe provide conducive/or adverse conditions for the luxuriant growth of microbes in a wide range of different habitats, including living tissues of higher plants where they grow as endophytes. Due to great variation in plant biodiversity and seasonal changes in tropical and subtropical regions, there is a need to collect/isolate various types of promising endophytic fungi, especially from rainforests and mangrove swamps, which may be able to produce an enormous variety of potential bioactive natural compounds. The fungi, as a group, hold enormous potential as sources of antimicrobials. The observations prove that this group of organisms resides inside the healthy plants tissue, as endophytes, without causing any detectable symptoms. Therefore, we strongly feel that there is a need to accelerate and focus the research to exploit the maximum potential of the promising endophytes for natural-product discovery, which could at least facilitate some existing problems of the huge population.

The past history of endophytic research in India especially with fungi is not so encouraging. It seems that workers who have started this research in India are still actively involved in advancing their research manifesto with this ‘under-studied’ group of microbes, and have not advanced to the fields and forests of the countryside looking for novel microbe–plant associations. Prof. T.S. Suryanarayanan and his group (Chennai) have initiated biodiversity and distribution patterns of fungal endophytes with some medicinal plants in India and have published several papers along this line. They have also
isolated some bioactive compounds and melanin from endophytic fungi (Suryanarayanan et al., 2004). To date, the overall situation in India has not drastically improved, as is the case in other countries such as China, Japan and Brazil (Verma et al., 2009). However, several research groups have started paying more attention to various aspects of endophytic fungi. No more than a dozen research groups at different places in India are vigorously involved either with biodiversity or in natural-product discovery from this untapped and alternative resource. It has become obvious to many workers throughout the world that endophytic microbes have enormous potential for solving many of humankind’s problems. Thus, with the discovery of new compounds, we can protect our interests in agricultural and medical industries as well as plant health (Omacini et al., 2001; Gunatilaka, 2006; Gimenez et al., 2007). Currently, some focused research on the different aspects of endophytes is being carried out and valuable results have been published (Shankar et al., 2003; Seena and Sridhar, 2004; Amna et al., 2006; Verma et al., 2006, 2007, 2008, 2009; Gond et al., 2007; Tejesvi et al., 2007; Gangadevi and Muthumarry, 2008; Kharwar et al., 2008, 2009).

It is important for all involved in this work to realize the importance of acquiring the necessary permits from governmental, local, and other sources to collect and transport plant materials (especially from abroad) from which endophytes are to be eventually isolated. In addition to this aspect of the work is the added activity of producing the necessary agreements and financial-sharing arrangements with indigenous people or governments in case a product does develop an income stream.

Another concern is that if endophytic fungi may produce a natural product of host origin, a host plant may also acquire the ability to produce some ‘mycotoxins’ or other secondary metabolites of fungal origin. The need for new and useful compounds to provide assistance and relief in all aspects of the human condition is ever growing. Drug resistance in bacteria, the appearance of new life-threatening viruses, the recurrent problems of diseases in people with organ transplants, a variety of severe diseases affecting plants and the tremendous increase in the incidence of fungal infections in the world’s population all underscore our inadequacy to cope with these problems. Environmental degradation, loss of biodiversity, and spoilage of land and water also add to problems facing us, and each of these in turn can have health- and hunger-related consequences.

The researchers who are interested in exploiting endophytes should have access to, or have some expertise in, microbial taxonomy and this includes modern molecular techniques involving sequence analyses of 16S and 18S rDNA. Currently, endophytes are viewed as an outstanding source of bioactive natural products because there are so many of them occupying literally millions of unique biological niches (higher plants) growing in so many unusual environments. Thus, it would appear that a myriad of biotopical factors associated with plants can be important in the selection of a plant for study. It may be the case that these factors govern which microbes are present in the plant as well as the biological activity of the products associated with these organisms.
Certainly, one of the major problems facing the future of endophyte biology and natural-product discovery is the rapidly diminishing rainforests, which hold the greatest possible resource for acquiring novel microorganisms and their products. The total land mass of the world that currently supports rainforests is about equal to the area of the USA (Mittermeier et al., 1999). Each year, an area the size of Vermont or greater is lost to clearing, harvesting, fire, agricultural development, mining or other human-oriented activities (Mittermeier et al., 1999). Presently, it is estimated that only a small fraction (10–20%) of what were the original rainforests existing 1000–2000 years ago are currently present on the earth (Mittermeier et al., 1999). The advent of major negative pressures on them from these human-related activities appears to be eliminating entire mega-life forms at an alarming rate. Few have ever expressed information or opinions about what is happening to the potential loss of microbial diversity as entire plant species disappear. It can only be guessed that this microbial diversity loss is also happening, perhaps with the same frequency as the loss of mega-life forms, especially since certain microorganisms may have developed unique symbiotic relationships with their plant hosts. Thus, when a plant species disappears, so too does its entire suite of associated endophytes. Consequently all of the capabilities that the endophytes might possess to provide natural products with medicinal potential are also lost. Multi-step processes are needed now to secure information and life forms before they continue to be lost. Areas of the planet that represent unique places housing biodiversity need immediate preservation. Countries need to establish information bases of their biodiversity and at the same time begin to make national collections of microorganisms that live in these areas. Endophytes are only one example of a life form source that holds enormous promise to impact many aspects of human existence. The problem of the loss of biodiversity should be one of concern to the entire world.

Acknowledgements

The authors express appreciation to the NSF, USDA, NIH, the R&C Board of the State of Montana and the Montana Agricultural Experiment Station for providing financial support for some of the work reviewed in this report. RNK expresses his sincere thanks to DST, New Delhi, for financial assistance.

References


Fungal Endophytes


NIAID Global Health Research Plan for HIV/AIDS, Malaria and Tuberculosis, U.S. Department of Health and Human Services, Bethesda, USA.


Pulici, M., Sugawara, F., Koshino, H., Uzawa, J., Yoshida, S., Lobkovsky, E. and Clardy, J.
Metabolites of endophytic fungi of *Taxus brevifolia*—the first highly functionalized humulane of fungal origin. *Journal of Chemical Research* (S), 378–379.


Suppressive Effects of Compost Tea on Phytopathogens

Mila Santos, Fernando Diánez and Francisco Carretero

Plant Production Department, University of Almería, Almería, Spain

Abstract

Suppression of soilborne and airborne diseases of horticultural crops by compost has been attributed to the activities of antagonistic microorganisms. A great diversity of biological control agents naturally colonize compost. The knowledge of mechanisms for biological control through the action of compost or its water extracts (compost tea) is necessary in order to increase the efficiency of the suppressing power. Modes of action of biocontrol agents include: inhibition of the pathogen by antimicrobial compounds (antibiosis), competition for iron through production of siderophores, competition for colonization sites and nutrients supplied by seeds and roots, induction of plant resistance mechanisms, inactivation of pathogen germination factors present in seed or root exudates, degradation of pathogenicity factors of the pathogen such as toxins, parasitism that may involve production of extracellular cell wall-degrading enzymes, for example, chitinase and β-1,3 glucanase that can cause lysis of pathogen cell walls. None of the mechanisms are necessarily mutually exclusive and frequently several modes of action are exhibited by a single biocontrol agent. Indeed, for some biocontrol agents, different mechanisms or combinations of mechanisms may be involved in the suppression of different plant diseases. The healthy development of plants, as well as the biological control of soilborne fungi, originates from many microorganisms, partly due to the production of siderophores under iron-restricting conditions. The siderophores are natural chelators that keep iron available for plants in soil. Iron also plays a major role in nutrient competition among pathogens and beneficial microorganisms in infection sites.

12.1 Introduction

Suppressive soils or suppressive substrates are characterized by a very low level of disease development even though a virulent pathogen and susceptible host are present. Biotic and abiotic elements of the soil environment contribute to suppressiveness; however, most defined systems have identified biological elements as primary factors in disease suppression. Many soils possess
similarities with regard to microorganisms involved in disease suppression, while other attributes are unique to specific pathogen-suppressive soil systems. Modes of action of biocontrol agents include: inhibition of the pathogen by antimicrobial compounds (antibiosis); competition for iron through the production of siderophores; competition for colonization sites and nutrients supplied by seeds and roots; induction of plant-resistance mechanisms; inactivation of pathogen germination factors present in seed or root exudates; degradation of pathogenicity factors of the pathogen such as toxins; parasitism that may involve production of extracellular cell-wall-degrading enzymes, for example, chitinase and β-1,3 glucanase that can cause lysis to pathogen cell walls (Keel and Défago, 1997; Whipps, 1997). None of the mechanisms are necessarily mutually exclusive and frequently several mode of action are exhibited by a single biocontrol agent. Indeed, for some biocontrol agents, different mechanisms or combinations of mechanisms may be involved in the suppression of different plant diseases (Whipps, 2001). So the organism operatives in pathogen suppression do so via diverse mechanisms including competition for nutrients, antibiosis and induction of host resistance. Non-pathogenic *Fusarium* spp. and fluorescent *Pseudomonas* spp. play a crucial role in naturally occurring soils that are suppressive to Fusarium wilt. Suppression of take-all of wheat (*Triticum aestivum*), caused by *Gaeumannomyces graminis* var. *tritici*, is induced in soil after continuous wheat monoculture and is attributed, in part, to selection of fluorescent *Pseudomonads* with the capacity to produce the antibiotic 2,4-diacetylphloroglucinol. Cultivation of orchard soils with specific wheat varieties induces suppressiveness to *Rhizoctonia* root rot of apple (*Malus domestica*) caused by *Rhizoctonia solani* AG 5. Wheat cultivars that stimulate disease suppression enhance populations of specific fluorescent pseudomonad genotypes with antagonistic activity toward this pathogen. Methods that transform resident microbial communities in a manner that induces natural soil suppressiveness have the potential as components of environmentally sustainable systems for the management of soilborne plant pathogens (Mazzola, 2002).

During the past decades, compost prepared from a variety of organic waste has been utilized successfully in container media for suppressing soilborne diseases (Table 12.1). Examples are comports prepared from tree barks, liquorice (*Glycyrrhiza glabra*) root waste, grape pomace, separated cattle manure, and municipal sewage sludge (Kuter *et al.*, 1998). Suppressive soils or substrates are characterized by a very low level of disease development even though a virulent pathogen and susceptible host are present. Diseases that have been shown to be effectively suppressed by compost use include those caused by *Fusarium*, *Phytophthora*, *Pythium* and *R. solani*. Disease suppression in compost has been attributed mainly to elevated levels of microbial activity (Chen *et al.*, 1988b, Santos *et al.*, 2008). There are several mechanisms involved in the suppression: the competition among microbial populations for available carbon or nitrogen, iron competition, mycoparasitism, production of inhibitors or hydrolytic enzymes by microorganisms and interactions with some saprophytes. Since 1991, several reports have shown that some rhizosphere microorganisms can induce systemic resistance in
Table 12.1. Different composted material suppressive to soilborne disease.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Composted material</th>
<th>Pathogens</th>
<th>References</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Tree bark</td>
<td>Phytophthora cinnamomi</td>
<td>Hoitink et al., 1977; Sivasithamparam, 1981; Spencer and Benson, 1981, 1982; Blaker and MacDonald, 1983; Hardy and Sivasithamparam, 1991</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Phytophthora citricola</td>
<td>Spencer and Benson, 1981; Hardy and Sivasithamparam, 1991</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Phytophthora drechleri</td>
<td>Hardy and Sivasithamparam, 1991</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Phytophthora nicotianae</td>
<td>Hardy and Sivasithamparam, 1991</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Pythium ultimum</td>
<td>Daft et al., 1979; Chen et al., 1987; Chen et al., 1988 a,b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Rhizoctonia solani</td>
<td>Daft et al., 1979; Stephens et al., 1981; Nelson and Hoitink, 1983</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Fusarium oxysporum</td>
<td>Chef et al., 1983; Cebolla and Pera, 1983; Trillas-Gay et al., 1986</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pine bark</td>
<td>Nematodes</td>
<td>Malek and Gartner, 1975; Mc Sorley and Gallaher, 1995</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Phytophthora spp.</td>
<td>Sivasithamparam, 1981; Spencer and Benson, 1981, 1982</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Pythium spp.</td>
<td>Gugino et al., 1973; Zhang et al., 1996</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Fusarium oxysporum</td>
<td>Chef et al., 1983; Pera and Calvet, 1989</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Grape marc</td>
<td>Pythium aphanidermatum</td>
<td>Mandelbaum et al., 1988</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Rhizoctonia solani</td>
<td>Gorodecki and Hadar, 1990</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Sclerotium rolfsii</td>
<td>Gorodecki and Hadar, 1990; Hadar and Gorodecki, 1991</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Olive marc</td>
<td>Fusarium oxysporum f. sp. dianthi</td>
<td>Pera and Calvet, 1989</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Municipal sewage sludge</td>
<td>Pythium spp.</td>
<td>Lumsden et al., 1983</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Municipal solid residues</td>
<td>Rhizoctonia spp.</td>
<td>Mathot, 1987</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cattle manure</td>
<td>Pythium aphanidermatum</td>
<td>Mandelbaum et al., 1988</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Phytophthora nicotianae</td>
<td>Szczech et al., 1993</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Rhizoctonia solani</td>
<td>Gorodecki and Hadar, 1990</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Sclerotium rolfsii</td>
<td>Gorodecki and Hadar, 1990</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Fusarium oxysporum</td>
<td>Garibaldi, 1988; Szczech et al., 1993</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Beer industry sludge</td>
<td>Pythium graminicola</td>
<td>Craft and Nelson, 1996</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Liquorice roots</td>
<td>Pythium aphanidermatum</td>
<td>Hadar and Mandelbaum, 1986</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Plants to root and foliar disease (Han et al., 2000). This systemic resistance was found in compost by Zhang et al. (1996).

Most of the composts are naturally suppressive against root rot disease caused by Phytophthora and Pythium (Santos et al., 2008), nearly 20% are naturally suppressive against damping off caused by Rhizoctonia (Hoitink and
Suppressive Effects of Compost Tea on Phytopathogens

Boehm, 1999), less than 10% of the compost induced systemic resistance in plants (Zhang et al., 1996, 1998; Hoitink and Boehm, 1999).

There are two primary mechanisms by which the colonies of biocontrol organisms in compost combat disease, general suppression and specific suppression.

General suppression occurs when a high-microbial activity environment is created in which the germination of pathogen propagules is inhibited. General suppression occurs when many different organisms compete with pathogens for nutrients (as root or seed exudates) and/or produce general antibiotics that reduce pathogen survival and growth. In compost there is a slow release of nutrients which supports beneficial activity of this microbiotic. Biocontrol agents that colonize composts include bacteria such as *Bacillus*, *Enterobacter*, *Flavobacterium bulosinum*, and *Pseudomonas*; actinomycetes such as *Streptomycyes*; and fungi such as *Trichoderma* and *Gliocladium* (Hoitink et al., 1991b).

General suppression owes its activity to the total microbial biomass in the soil or substrate and is not transferable between them. Whether soil organic matter can support biological control depends on its decomposition level and the types of biocontrol agents present on the substrate (Hoitink and Boehm, 1999). The carrying capacity of organic matter in the substrate limits suppressiveness to pathogens that depend on exogenous sources of nutrients (root exudates) for germination and infection. Excessively stabilized organic matter such as dark peat has a limited ability to sustain activity of the general microbial biomass in soil (Hoitink et al., 1993). Dark decomposed sphagnum peat is consistently conductive to *Pythium* root rot, whereas light sphagnum peat harvested from the surface of peat bogs is less decomposed and has a higher microbial activity (Hoitink et al., 1991a). Light peat moss is suppressive against *Pythium* for a short time (6–7 weeks).

Specific suppression involves the action of one or a few specific microbial agents in suppressing a specific pathogen (Hoitink, 1993). They exert hyperparasitism on the pathogen or induce systemic resistance in the plant to specific pathogens. Specific suppression owes its activity to the effects of individual or select groups of microorganisms and is transferable. This can be achieved by inoculating the compost with the desired microbial agent (Hoitink, 1993).

The suppression effect on pathogens is linked to the type of pathogens. Those pathogens that have a small propagule size, such as *Pythium* and *Phytophthora* species, are susceptible to general suppression (‘nutrient-dependent’ pathogens). They have small nutrient reserves and need to rely on an external carbon source and other nutrients. Pathogens with a large propagule size, such as *Sclerotium rolfsii* and *R. solani*, are susceptible to specific suppression. Structures like sclerotia are less susceptible to microbial competition but specific hyperparasites such as *Trichoderma* species will colonize the sclerotia.

Composting conditions as well as the materials that are composted are critical, with the type of the material impacting on the sort of active microflora. Thus the composting of lignocellulosic wastes will induce a specific suppression of *Rhizoctonia* by *Trichoderma* species, while *Penicillium* fungi
predominate in grape pomace (high sugar, low cellulose) in suppressing S. rolfsii. In this medium, Trichoderma spp. were absent and would have been ineffective even if applied. Rhizoctonia (a common nursery pathogen) is also a very active saprophyte in fresh wastes but not in low-cellulose mature composts. Trichoderma, by contrast, colonizes both. However, the hyperparasitic activity and antibiotic production by Trichoderma is repressed in fresh compost because of the high glucose level. Saline composts (for instance overfertilized media) enhance Pythium and Phytophthora, whereas composts with low C/N ratios that release nitrogen, especially as ammonia, promotes the growth of Fusarium on host species. The appropriate control of the potting medium with a pH greater than 5.0 and moisture content (oven dried) maintained between 40 and 50% is also important (Hoitink et al., 1997).

12.2 Competition Among Microbial Populations

Microbiostasis

There is a competition for nutrients in exudates such as sugars and amino acids which leak out of seeds during germination or out of root tips as plants grow through the soil. Pathogens that grow or swim to these sources of nutrients must compete with the beneficial microflora at the infection site on the surface of the seed or root (Hoitink and Changa, 2004). This type of competition plays a major role in general suppression and with ‘nutrient-dependent’ pathogens such as Pythium and Phytophthora species. The competition includes microbial competition for nutrients and competition for infection sites and root colonization. Limited nutrient availability to the germinating spores or invading hyphae is the most common explanation given for the microbial cause of fungistasis. On the other hand, fungistasis has been attributed to the presence of antifungal compounds of microbiological origin. The production of antifungal compounds is correlated with available carbon, which is not surprising, as microbial production of antibiotics can be induced by interspecific competition for substrates (Ellis et al., 2000; Slattery et al., 2001). The sensitivity of plant pathogenic fungi to fungistasis is thought to protect them from germinating and initiating growth under unfavourable conditions (e.g., the absence of a host plant) (Garrett, 1970; Lockwood, 1977). However, this protection comes at a cost, since the viability of resting structures decreases during prolonged incubation in soils (Lockwood, 1986). The negative effects of fungistasis on the inoculum density of plant pathogenic fungi has been suggested as a mechanism to explain the commonly found correlation between fungistasis and disease suppressiveness (Lockwood, 1977; Hornby, 1983; Larkin et al., 1996; Knudsen et al., 1999).

Iron competition also plays a major role in nutrient competition among pathogens and beneficial microorganisms in infection sites (Hoitink and Changa, 2004). Ionic forms of iron, especially iron (III), its most common state, are very insoluble, especially when plants are grown on calcareous soils or soils with high pH. Iron is only available to organisms at concentrations at or
Iron salts that have low solubility such as iron oxides, carbonates, phosphates, hydroxides and some forms of insoluble chelates are created in certain soil types that make iron not readily available to plants. To circumvent the solubility problem, many microorganisms synthesize and utilize very specific low molecular weight (500–1000 Da) iron chelators called siderophores (that can bind iron and are sent out by the cells to absorb iron, as well as being used inside the cell to store it). When grown under iron-deficient conditions, many microbes will synthesize and excrete siderophores in excess of their own dry cell weight to kidnap and solubilize iron and made it unavailable to the pathogens. The typical system involves a siderophore, which is an iron-binding ligand, and an uptake protein, which transports the siderophore into the cell. The fluorescent pseudomonads produce a class of siderophore known as the pseudobactins, which are structurally complex iron-binding molecules. Analyses of mutants lacking the ability to produce siderophores suggest that they contribute to the suppression of certain fungal and oomycete diseases (Duijff et al., 1994; Buysens et al., 1996). An interesting aspect of siderophore biology is that diverse organisms can use the same type of siderophore. Microorganisms may use each other’s siderophores if they contain the appropriate uptake protein (Koster et al., 1993; Raaijmakers et al., 1995), and plants can even acquire iron from certain pseudobactins (Duijff et al., 1994).

Microorganisms in compost produce siderophores that keep iron in an available form for plants in the soil, even at high pH. Compost also produces water-soluble humic substances, including fulvic acids, which keep iron, zinc, manganese and other trace elements in solution (Chen and Inbar, 1993).

**Antibiosis**

Antibiosis is defined as antagonism mediated by specific or non-specific metabolites of microbial origin, by lytic agents, enzymes, volatile compounds or other toxic substances (Jackson, 1965; Fravel, 1988). Antibiotic production appears to be important to the survival of microorganisms through the elimination of microbial competition for food sources, which are usually very limited in soil (Ellis et al., 2000; Slattery et al., 2001). Antibiotic production is very common among soil-dwelling bacteria and fungi. Inhibition in the Petri dish may be the result of antibiosis, but it is not easy to show that this antibiosis is actually responsible for disease suppression. First, the antibiotic must be extracted, purified and identified chemically. Then it is necessary to show that the microorganism grows in the microhabitat of the pathogen, and that the antibiotic is produced in the right place, at the right time, and in sufficient amounts to control disease. It is also necessary to demonstrate that the pathogen is sensitive to the antibiotic. Genetic analyses have been particularly informative in determining the role of antibiotics in biocontrol, in part because mutants can be screened easily in vitro for changes in antibiotic accumulation, providing the means to conduct thorough genetic analyses (Handelsman and Stabb, 1996).
Antibiotic production by strains of the bacteria *Pseudomonas* and *Bacillus* has been shown to be important to the successful biocontrol of several crop diseases. The antibiotics zwittermicin A and kanosamine, produced by the biocontrol agent *Bacillus cereus* UW85, appear to be important in the biocontrol of oomycetes such as *Phytophthora* (Silo-Suh et al., 1994; Milner et al., 1996). The antibiotic phenazine derivatives, produced by *Pseudomonas fluorescens* strain 2-79 and *P. aureofaciens* strain 30-48, control take-all of wheat (Weller and Cook, 1983; Brisbane and Rovira, 1988).

*Trichoderma* and *Gliocladium* are closely related fungal biocontrol agents. Each one produces antimicrobial compounds and suppresses disease by diverse mechanisms, including the production of the structurally complex antibiotics gliovirin and gliotoxin (Howell et al., 1993). Mutants with increased or decreased antibiotic production show a corresponding effect on biocontrol (Howell and Stipanovic, 1983; Handelsman and Stabb, 1996).

**Hyperparasitism**

Hyperparasitism is parasitism on another parasite. The mycelium and resting spores (oospores), hyphae or sclerotia of several pathogenic soil fungi such as *Pythium*, *Phytophthora*, *Verticillium*, *Rhizoctonia*, *Sclerotinia* and *Botrytis* (Fig. 12.1) are invaded and parasitized (mycoparasitism) or are lysed (mycolysis) by several non-pathogenic microbes.

![Fig. 12.1.](image) Microscopic photography (×400) of *Trichoderma saturnisporum* catching *Botrytis cinerea*.
Mycoparasitism is parasitism of a pathogenic fungus by another fungus. These events require specific interactions between the parasite and fungal host. The process involves direct contact between the fungi, resulting in death of the plant pathogen and nutrient absorption by the parasite. *Trichoderma* spp. parasitize fungal plant pathogens. The parasite extends hyphal branches toward the target host, coils around and attaches to it with appressorium-like bodies, and punctures its mycelium (Chet *et al*., 1981; Goldman *et al*., 1994). Mycoparasites produce cell-wall-degrading enzymes, which allow them to bore holes into other fungi and extract nutrients for their own growth. But many so-called mycoparasites also produce antibiotics, which may first weaken the fungi they parasitize. So the digestion of host cell walls is accomplished by a battery of excreted enzymes, including proteases, chitinases and glucanases. These enzymes often have antifungal activity individually and are synergistic in mixtures or with antibiotics (Di Pietro *et al*., 1993; Lorito *et al*., 1993, 1994; Handelsman and Stabb, 1996). By manipulating their activity through the construction of ‘overproducing’ mutants, enzyme-negative mutants or even transgenic plants expressing the enzyme, a role for their production in biocontrol has been implied (Whipps, 2001).

The best documented examples of hyperparasitism involve the mycoparasitic *Trichoderma* spp. on *R. solani*. Highly competitive as a saprophyte, *R. solani*, can utilize cellulose and colonize fresh bark but cannot colonize the low-in-cellulose mature bark compost. However, isolates of *Trichoderma* that function as biological agents for *R. solani* are capable of colonizing mature compost. Biological control does not occur in fresh, undecomposted organic matter because both fungi grow as saprophytes and *R. solani* remains capable of causing disease. In mature compost, on the other hand, sclerotia of *R. solani* are killed by the hyperparasites and biological control prevails (Hoitink and Fahy, 1986; Chung and Hoitink, 1990). One way to ensure specific suppression is to inoculate the compost with the appropriate beneficial microorganisms, fungus like *Trichoderma* sp., *Talaromyces flavus*, non-pathogenic *Fusarium oxysporum*, or bacterial like *Bacillus subtilis* and *Streptomyces griseoviride*, which leads to increased levels of disease suppressiveness.

Induced resistance

The natural resistance of plants to pathogens is based on the combined effects of preformed barriers and induced mechanisms. In both cases, plants use physical and antimicrobial defences against the invaders. In contrast to constitutive resistance, induced resistance relies on recognition of an invader and subsequent signal transduction events leading to the activation of defences (Mauch-Mani and Métraux, 1998). Plants possess active defence mechanisms against pathogen attack; some biotic and abiotic stimuli increase their tolerance to infection by a pathogen, by activation of these active defence mechanisms. This phenomenon is known as induced resistance. Induced resistance was defined by Kloepper *et al.* (1992) as ‘the process of active resistance dependent on the host plant’s physical or chemical barriers, activated...
by biotic or abiotic agents'. Induced defence responses are regulated by a network of interconnecting signal transduction pathways in which the hormonal signals salicylic acid (SA), jasmonic acid (JA) and ethylene (ET) play a major role (Pieterse and Van Loon, 1999; Glazebrook, 2001), and other hormones such as brassinosteroids and abscisic acid can also be involved (Nakashita et al., 2003; Ton and Mauch-Mani, 2004). The phenotypic effects of activated defences are quite similar when the stimuli are biotic or abiotic agents, but the biochemical and mechanistic changes appear to be subtly different (Van Loon et al., 1998; Whipps, 2001). This has resulted in the term induced systemic resistance (ISR) for bacterially induced resistance and systemic acquired resistance (SAR) for that induced by abiotic agents or microorganisms that cause localized damage (Pieterse et al., 1996).

SAR confers long-lasting protection against a broad spectrum of micro-organisms. SAR requires the signal molecule SA and is associated with the accumulation of pathogenesis-related (PR) proteins such as chitinase, β-1,3-glucanases or proteinase inhibitor, which are thought to contribute to resistance (Durrant and Dong, 2004). One of the major differences between SAR and ISR is that PR proteins are not universally associated with bacterially induced resistance (ISR) (Hoffland et al., 1995) and SA is not always involved in the expression of ISR.

Several reports suggest that compost and compost-amended soil may alter the resistance of a plant to disease. This was observed in airborne diseases such as powdery mildew of wheat and barley (Tränkner, 1992), early blight and bacterial spot of tomato (*Lycopersicum esculentum*) (Roe et al., 1993) or *Anthracnose* and *Pythium* root rot in cucumber (*Cucumis sativus*) (Zhang et al., 1996). A select few beneficial microorganisms of compost can induce mechanisms of ISR. These microorganisms activate biochemical pathways in plants leading to ISR to root as well as some foliar diseases. This mechanism helps explain the often heard statement that plants raised on healthy organic soils are more able to resist diseases (Zhang et al., 1998). Plants produced in compost-amended mixes harbouring biocontrol agents that induce systemic resistance have higher concentrations of proteins related to host defence mechanisms (Zhang et al., 1998). The activation of plant defence produces changes in cell-wall composition, *de novo* production of PR proteins such as chitinases and glucanases, and synthesis of phytoalexins, although further defensive compounds are likely to exist but remain to be identified (Heil and Bostock, 2002).

Zhang et al. (1996, 1998) showed that composted pine-bark-amended potting mix provide *Pythium* root rot and *Anthracnose* control in cucumber by inducing systemic resistance (reported as SAR) utilizing split-root techniques. Experiments showed that when only some of the roots of a plant are in compost-amended soil, while the other roots are in diseased soil, the entire plant can still acquire resistance to the disease. On those plants, the systemic protection induced by compost was accompanied by increased peroxidase activity in leaf tissue. Acid peroxidase was previous reported as a putative molecular marker of SAR in cucumber.

ISR plays a role in the suppression of plant pathogens that colonize aerial and soil parts (Pharand et al., 2002). Krause et al. (2003) demonstrated that
less than 2% of 80 different batches of compost tested induced systemic resistance in radish (*Raphanus sativus*) against bacterial leaf spot. The effect was due to the activity of specific biocontrol agents in the batches of compost that suppressed bacterial leaf spot. They identified *Trichoderma hamatum* 382 (Bonord.) Bainer (T382) as the most active inducer of ISR in radish (Khan et al., 2003). Another species of the genera *Trichoderma* (*Trichoderma harzianum* Rifai T-205) was reported as an inducer of ISR in pepper (*Capsicum annum*) seedlings against *Phytophthora capsici* when the seeds were previously treated with this biological agent (Ahmed et al., 2000). Khan et al. (2003) report how *Phytophthora* root and crown rot of cucumber caused by *P. capsici* was suppressed significantly in cucumber transplants produced in a composted cow-manure-amended mix compared with those in a dark-sphagnum-peat mix. In split-root bioassays, *Trichoderma hamatum* 382 (T382) inoculated into the compost-amended potting mix significantly reduced the severity of *Phytophthora* root and crown rot of cucumber caused by *P. capsici* on paired roots in the peat mix. This effect did not differ significantly from that provided by a drench with benzo thiadiazole (BTH) or mefenoxam (Subdue MAXX).

### 12.3 Suppression of Plant Pathogens by Compost Tea

The disease-suppressive characteristic of organic tea was reported as early as 1973 by Hunt et al. immobilizing the sting nematode (*Belonolaimus longicaudatus*). Compost tea or compost water extract can be defined as a watery extract of compost produced through a deliberate process. The goal is to enhance populations of beneficial microbes that can then exert a biological control over pathogens. The terminology used is not clear because there are several different methods used for making compost teas, those where tea is aerated during the production of the tea, and where no aeration is used and compost is just passively steeped with little agitation. The review of Scheuerell and Mahaffee (2002a) clarified the numerous terms that have been used to describe composts’ fermentation; many are synonymous or easy confused with other concepts. Terms used include compost tea, aerated compost tea, organic tea, compost extracts, watery fermented compost extract, amended extracts, steepages and slurries. Compost tea is produced by mixing compost with water and culturing for a defined period, either actively aerating (aerated compost tea; ACT) or not (non-aerated compost tea; NCT) and with or without additives that are intended to increase microbial population densities during production (Scheuerell and Mahaffee, 2002a). These teas have been shown to act as a natural fungicide; they contain populations of various biofungicidal microbes and organic chelators. Teas can be used as a foliar spray to inhibit late blight caused by *Phytophthora infestans* on tomatoes and potatoes, the suppressive effect of organic teas are of a living microbial nature and the sterilized or micron-filtered tea had little ability to impact on pathogens (Weltzien and Ketterer, 1986; Weltzien, 1989).

There are several reports on the control of plant pathogens or plant diseases with organic teas including airborne and soilborne diseases; compost
teas coat plant surfaces (foliar application) or roots (liquid drench application) with living microorganisms and provide food for beneficial microbes. *Plasmopara viticola* or downy mildew of grape leaves (Weltzien and Ketterer, 1986), *Botrytis cinerea* or grey mould (Elad and Shtienberg, 1994; Diánez, 2005; Koné et al., 2010), *Phytophthora cinnamomi* (Hoitink et al., 1977), *Fusarium oxysporum* f.sp *pisi* or *Fusarium* wilt of peas (Khalifa, 1965), *Fusarium oxysporum* f.sp *cucumerinum* or *Fusarium* wilt of cucumber (Ma et al., 1999) *Pythium ultimum* or damping-off in pea (*Pisum sativum*) (Tränkner, 1992).

Multiple modes of activity are involved in suppressing plant disease with NCT, whereas no studies have determined the mechanism involved with ACT (Scheuerell and Mahaffee, 2002a). The microbes in compost teas can suppress diseases in several ways: induced resistance, antibiosis and competition (Brinton, 1995; Scheuerell and Mahaffee, 2002a), and direct destruction of pathogens structures (Ma et al., 2001).

The microbiotic of NCT (Weltzien, 1991) and ACT (Ingham, 2003) had been described as being dominated by bacteria. It is important to know how the manipulation of the compost tea production process enriches and/or selects for individual microbe populations. Scheuerell and Mahaffee (2002b) studied the use of ACT and NCT produced with and without nutrient additives, to drench peat-perlite growing media that was inoculated with *Pythium ultimum* and planted with cucumber seeds. They used different nutrient additives, fungal nutrients (soluble kelp, humic acids and rock dust) and bacterial nutrients (molasses-based nutrients solution). The most consistent compost tea formula for suppression damping-off in cucumber was ACT produced with the fungal nutrients, whereas the disease was not suppressed with ACT produced with the bacterial nutrients and without nutrients.

### 12.4 Grape Marc Compost

Grape marc is the waste from wine production; once the juice has been extracted, the skin 7% (w/w), stalks 5% (w/w) and seeds 4% (w/w) are all redundant. In total, 15–20% of wine production is waste, comprising thousands of tonnes. The amount of marc that is generated from fruit is known to vary for a number of reasons, including whether the grapes have been irrigated and the type of equipment used to press the grapes (Jordan, 2002). Spanish production of grapes for wine production is near 5 million tonnes; up to 700,000 tonnes of marc is estimated to have been generated throughout Spain. The marc, if not treated effectively, can cause a number of environmental hazards ranging from surface and groundwater pollution to foul smells. In the European Union all by-products of wine production (grape marc and wine lees) are obliged to be distilled; the legal basis for distillation measures in the EU is given in chapter II of title III, Art.27 of regulation (EC) N°1493/1999. In European countries grape marc is first distilled to recover alcohol, followed by washing for tartrate recovery, then seed separation and finally the remainder is either burnt for energy recovery or composted along
with sludge from distillation and tartrate recovery to produce fertilizers for agricultural use (Johnston, 2001).

In general, grape-marc compost (GMC) has low nutrient status and conductivity; this compost has low water-holding capacities. It has a high content of lignin and cellulose and a low content of water-soluble carbohydrates.

There are a few reports about the disease-suppressive effects of GMC. Oka and Yermiyahu (2002) tested in pot and in vitro experiments the suppressive effects of GMC, on the root-knot nematode *Meloidogyne javanica*. Very few root-galls were found on tomato roots grown in soil containing 50% grape marc compost. Significant reductions in galling index were also found in tomato plants grown in soils containing smaller concentrations of this compost. The water extract of GMC showed weak nematicidal activity to the juveniles and eggs.

GMC and its water extracts have been reported to suppress fungal diseases such as *B. cinerea* on tomato and pepper (Elad and Shcienberg, 1994).

GMC suppressed the soilborne disease caused by *R. solani* and *S. rolfsii* (Gorodecki and Hadar, 1990; Hadar and Gorodecki, 1991). Hadar and Gorodecki (1991) found an inhibitory effect of GMC on sclerotial germination and viability, and associated this effect with high numbers of *Penicillium* isolated from sclerotia. *Penicillium* and *Aspergillus* spp. have been reported to colonize GMC; *Trichoderma* spp. hyperparasites of *R. solani* were not recovered from this compost (Gorodecki and Hadar, 1990; Hadar and Gorodecki, 1991). The age of the composted grape marc had a major effect on suppression; immature GMC (3 months of composting) failed to inhibit sclerotial germination (Hadar et al., 1992). Suppression of *Pythium aphanidermatum* was reported on grape marc compost, the beneficial effect of the compost was negated when the medium was autoclaved, and restored when compost that had not been autoclaved was mixed with the sterile one (Hadar et al., 1992).

Compost can provide natural biological control of diseases of roots as well as the foliage of plants. Its water extracts (compost tea) has been proposed as a substitute for synthetic fungicides (Zhang et al., 1998). Most of the papers published on the control of pathogens by means of compost tea have studied pathogens from the aerial part of the plants, the number of trials that use NTC being higher. Research into the control of soilborne pathogens by means of compost tea has been lower, although this practice is common in ecological agriculture (Scheuerell and Mahaffee, 2002a).

Our research focuses on soilborne disease suppression by GMC. The grape marc compost was produced in the University of Sevilla. It was composted in 40 m³ windrows and turned each week. Composting took 5 months. During composting, the grape marc pile was fertilized with ammonium nitrate, superphosphate, iron sulfate and magnesium sulfate. Microbiological analysis of our grape marc was performed using the dilution plate technique (Wakelin et al., 1998) on different agar growth media: water agar (WA) pH11 (actinomycetes), tryptose soy agar (TSA) 1/10 (bacteria), glucose peptone medium (GP) (yeast) and malt extract agar (MEA) (fungi). All the plates were incubated at 25°C, and WA and TSA plates were also incubated at 40°C, for detection of thermophytic bacteria and actinomycetes. Two analyses of
the same compost were done, 6 months apart. Microbiological analysis of GMC showed a high number of microbial morphologies in the compost. In the first analysis, 192 different morphologies were found, and 240 in the second, 6 months later. Most of the morphologies present in the first and second analyses were bacteria, with the average percentages being 31% mesophytic bacteria, 28% thermophilic, 16% mesophytic actinomycetes and 20% thermophilic actinomycetes, and only a few moulds 4% and yeasts 1%; the distribution of morphologies found in both assays is shown in Fig. 12.2.

Most microorganisms, both aerobic and anaerobic, respond to conditions that restrict iron ions due to the production of siderophores, whereby ions are kidnapped or assayed thus preventing their availability. Siderophores can act as growth factors and some as powerful antibiotics (Neilands, 1981). Many studies have described suppressiveness in agricultural soil due to siderophores. Thus, the addition of different species of *Pseudomonas* to a conducive soil infected with *Fusarium oxysporum* f. sp. *lini* makes this soil suppressive, preventing the development of the disease. The addition of Fe-EDTA reverses this situation (Kloepper *et al.*, 1980). This principle also applies to *Gaeumannomyces graminis* var. *tritici*, and several species of *Pythium* (Becker and Cook, 1984; Weller *et al.*, 1986).

The presence of siderophores produced by the microorganisms present in the grape marc aerated compost tea and their involvement in the development of eight phytopathogenic fungi in the soil and one mycopathogenic fungus was studied.

The results obtained from the *in vitro* analysis of the inhibiting effect of ACT on fungal development are shown in Fig. 12.3. The effect of the incubation time of ACT on the efficiency of the *in vitro* fungal suppression of the nine fungi tested highlighted an increase in inhibition percentages as the time of incubation of the compost increased (1, 7 or 14 days) being 80–100% for extract F (Filtered), in extractions after 1 and 7 days, and 100% after
14 days, for all the cases examined. In the case of extract C (microfiltered), the results vary depending on the fungus, with the same inhibition tendency percentage increasing as the incubation time and the extract concentration added to the medium increase, reaching 100% inhibition after 14 days of trial for most of the fungi, except for the two races of *Fusarium oxysporum* f. sp. *lycopersici* (Fig. 12.3). From the results obtained, we need to highlight the abrupt change in inhibition percentages for the fungi *R. solani* and *Pythium aphanidermatum*, using the microfiltered tea after 7 and 14 days' incubation. This effect is the result of measuring the radial growth of the fungus, but it

![Graph](image-url)

**Fig. 12.3.** *In vitro* analysis of the inhibiting effect of ACT on fungal development.
does not reflect the effect on the density of the mycelium, which can only be observed under a microscope with a clear inhibition by the compost extracts, although this cannot be expressed in the graph.

The sterilization of compost water extracts annuls the suppressing effect on fungal growth shown by non-thermally treated extracts, except for *Verticillium dahliae* and *V. fungicola*, for which inhibition values reach 60%, in compost tea incubated for 1 day at concentration levels of 10 and 15%.

The detection of siderophores on GMC tea, which can affect the development of the fungal mycelium, occurred equally in the extract obtained simply by filtering (F), in those that were microfiltered (C) and in those that were sterilized (E), with the addition of FeCl₃ to the medium. In these, the biological component has not been eliminated, so besides the potential inhibition that siderophores can cause, we must bear in mind other antagonistic effects such as competition for nutrients, space, and so on.

These results suggest that the microorganisms present in GMC produce siderophores, which grow outside the cells and kidnap iron, stopping its availability, thus preventing the *in vitro* development of the phytopathogens studied.

This study confirms the *in vitro* inhibition of the growth of eight pathogens and one mycopathogen, as well as the important role of siderophores in this suppression. In our previous studies, the inhibiting power of GMC had been verified against the nine fungi tested. As can be expected, the suppressiveness shown by GMC extracts is a combination of various factors, such as competition for nutrients, antibiosis, and production of lytic enzymes outside the cells and of low molecular weight molecules that are capable of degrading the fungus wall.

The difference between the use of soil-applied composts and watery compost extracts perhaps is best summarized as that the teas give immediate but very short-term control of surface-spreading pathogens, while soil compost acts more slowly over a longer period of time and requires much larger amounts (York and Brinton, 1996).

### 12.5 Conclusion

Diseases that have been shown to be effectively suppressed by compost use include those caused by *Fusarium*, *Phytophthora*, *Pythium* and *R. solani*. Several reports suggest that compost and compost-amended soil may alter the resistance of plants to disease. The microbes in compost teas can suppress diseases in several ways: induced resistance, antibiosis and competition, and direct destruction of pathogens structures. The effect is due to the activity of specific biocontrol agents in the batches of compost that suppress the disease. There are several reports on the control of plant pathogens or plant diseases with organic teas including airborne and soilborne diseases. GMC and its water extracts have been reported to suppress fungal diseases. Compost can provide natural biological control of diseases of roots as well as the foliage of plants. Its water extracts (compost tea) have been proposed as substitutes for
Suppressive Effects of Compost Tea on Phytopathogens


Craft, C.M. and Nelson, E.B. (1996) Microbial properties of composts that suppress damping-off and root rot of creeping synthetic fungicides. There are several mechanisms involved in the suppression, including competition among the microbial population for available carbon or nitrogen, iron competition, mycoparasitism, production of inhibitors or hydrolytic enzymes by microorganisms and interactions with some saprophytes. The microorganisms present in GMC produce siderophores, which grow outside the cells and kidnap iron, stopping its availability, thus preventing the development of the phytopathogens. The knowledge of mechanisms for biological control through the action of compost or its water extracts (compost tea) is necessary in order to increase the efficiency of the suppressing power.

References


Hoffland, E., Pieterse, C.M.J., Bik, L. and Van Pelt, J.A. (1995) Induced systemic resistance in radish is not associated with accumulation of pathogenesis-related


13 Biotechnology: a Tool for Natural Product Synthesis

SANATH HETTIARACHI

Department of Botany, University of Ruhuna, Matara, Sri Lanka

Abstract

Molecular biology is arguably the fastest growing field in all biological sciences. New techniques are discovered and they soon find applications. The search for natural products has a long history, as illustrated by the dependence of traditional medicine on botanicals. With the finding that microorganisms can produce useful products such as penicillin, scientists took the challenge to explore the microbial world for new natural products. Although the search continues with increasing intensity, finding new and more useful products would not have matched with the effort without the support of biotechnology. Although the most powerful approach is genetic manipulation, other techniques such as mutagenesis, breeding and protoplast fusion and the relatively old biotechnology of plant tissue culture are very useful. These also include even more simple approaches such as optimizing culture conditions and design of fermenters. The combination of technologies together with innovative ideas has already increased the production level of already existing natural products and expanded the diversity of products obtainable from biological sources. In addition to harvesting products from living organisms either in the wild or in cultivation, the developments in metagenomics have also paved the way to harness the bioproduction forming ability of unculturable microorganisms.

13.1 Introduction

By perusing the various definitions given by different authorities and in dictionaries, it becomes apparent that natural products are predominantly chemical compounds of biological origin and are extracted from plants and animals that produce them during secondary metabolism. None the less, naturally occurring mineral compounds may also be categorized as natural products. Among the myriad of natural compounds, many have pharmaceutical and other similar applications such as in pest and disease control in agriculture. Furthermore, natural antioxidants, bioflavours, biopreservatives,
natural colourings, fragrances and microbial polysaccharides are becoming the choice to replace artificial chemicals in the food and cosmetic industries. Several contemporary approaches have widened the usefulness of natural compounds. For example, a new move employing rhizosphere metabolomics for bioremediation of polychlorinated biphenyls is suggested (Narasimhan et al., 2003), where plants exuding high levels of phenylpropanoids have enhanced rhizosphere populations capable of degrading pollutants.

The study of the chemistry and extraction of natural products is so important that an entire discipline of chemistry is termed natural product chemistry. Many natural products have quite complex chemical structures, including stereochemistry, and hence their chemical synthesis is difficult. Yet some simpler compounds of natural origin are made by total synthesis and these are also treated as natural compounds. Scientists are also keen to elucidate the biochemical pathways of natural product formation. This information will lead to the development of technologies for the overproduction of already existing natural products as well as producing entirely new products through biological systems.

Plants and animals have coexisted with their pests, pathogens, grazers/predators and other competitors throughout evolution. In order for them to succeed in such a hostile atmosphere, coevolution has gifted the organisms with defence mechanisms of different natures, chemical defence being one of them. Therefore living beings are natural factories of chemical warfare. Scientific investigations guided by traditional knowledge have led to the identification of useful natural compounds for the benefit of humankind in medicine, veterinary medicine and in agriculture. Members of all classes of living beings from bacteria to higher plants and animals have been identified as sources of natural products. According to the accepted definitions of biotechnology, exploiting these organisms either from the wild or by cultivation for the production and extraction of products comes under biotechnology. This exploitation has already threatened some valuable plants and animals with local or even global extinction due to over-exploitation, for example for medicinal uses (Kala, 2005; Maundu et al., 2006). The use of new biotechnological tools would certainly ease the pressure on natural populations.

Although biotechnology plays an important role in non-biological natural products, these are not included in this discussion.

### 13.2 Biotechnology in Genetic Diversity Revelation and Conservation

It is well known that different varieties/races of the same species have different chemical properties and hence their level of importance as sources of natural products may be different. Until recent times, the taxonomy and identification of plants, animals and microorganisms were based on morphological (vegetative and reproductive) and anatomical characters. However, these features usually cannot differentiate between two closely related individuals and hence cannot identify those individuals with the same
morphology, but differences in their genetic makeup. Molecular biological tools, based on DNA, protein or secondary metabolites, provide additional taxonomic markers to supplement information gathered through classical taxonomical methods for further characterization. This enables the identification of variants not only at species or subspecies levels, but tracing down to variations between two individuals. Such biotechnological approaches thus enable the identification of more useful genotypes for exploitation in natural product synthesis. Identification of more useful genotypes is obviously very useful in the conservation of genetic diversity. Systematic studies can indicate which genomes to search, sample and study for useful products. Systematics also provides answers to questions relating to the evolution of chemical and physical structures and their synthesis or ontogeny.

The biotechnological tools available for systematics are protein profiles, polysaccharides, plasmids, DNA–DNA hybridization, various PCR-based techniques and DNA sequencing and alignment. With the assistance of bioinformatics, the molecular data are processed and phylogenetic relationships are generated. This facilitates the search for a better performer within producers of a known product or the search for new products, by narrowing down the scope of the search. Certain traits have evolved only once and therefore will only be present within a single clade or very closely related clades, rather than being present randomly across diverse organisms. For an example in bioproducts, taxol is known to be present in the yew family, Taxaceae. Therefore if one is interested in discovering other organisms producing taxol, the most logical approach would be to start the quest for taxol and other taxanes in plants closely related to Taxaceae family. The other sister family most closely related is Podocarpaceae and taxane has been found in Podocarpus gracilior for the first time outside Taxaceae (Stahlhut et al., 1999). The story of mustard oil or mustard glucosinolates is a different one. With the exception of the genus Drypetes (a member of Malpighiales), all the other mustard oil producers are in families belonging to one ordinal clade, Brasicales. As order Brasicales and genus Drypetes are phylogenetically distant, one can assume that mustard oil biosynthesis evolved twice (Rodman et al., 1993). This is confirmed by the presence of two different biosynthetic pathways. Therefore, although the final product is the same, the evolution of the biosynthetic pathway is different. This information is extremely important in the search for alternative pathways for the synthesis of natural products (i.e. one has to search in distantly related clades).

Molecular tools are extremely sensitive in revealing minor differences in closely related genotypes within a species. As discussed elsewhere in this chapter, identifying genotypes of interest in bioproduct formation is particularly important for exploitation, but not restricted to that. This is equally or more important in conservation strategies. A genotype once lost shall not be able to be reconstituted. Exploring possibilities of making use of other biotechnological tools such as plant-cell and organ culture also help preserve the plants in the field. In addition, micropropagation using tissue culture techniques is useful in this context.
Recombinant gene technology in natural products

Recombinant gene technology is perhaps the most wonderful tool a biotechnologist ever had. Conventional breeding of plants and animals can bring the genes of two different but closely related individuals together through the fusion of two gametes in sexual reproduction. The nuclear DNA of eukaryotic organisms is organized into chromosomes and the incompatibility in chromosome numbers and chromosome morphology is the main barrier for bringing genes together from different parents to produce a hybrid. However, today’s technology is such that the identification of DNA controlling a particular trait, isolation of that particular DNA, in vitro modification of that DNA, inserting the modified DNA into a desired organism to express the trait in the new organism, have become possible in an appropriately equipped laboratory. This is a straightforward approach when the final product is a peptide because engineering the base sequence in an open reading frame under proper control units is sufficient. It is a different matter when it comes to more complex molecules, such as secondary metabolites, which are products of a series of biochemical reactions each mediated by a specific enzyme. The maturation of the molecule may also involve chemical modifications within the environment of the producer cell. In order to make breakthroughs in the production of natural products, particularly those that are not peptides, using biotechnology, an understanding of the regulation of the secondary metabolite pathways involved at the levels of products, enzymes and genes, including aspects of transport and compartmentation in eukaryotic cells, are of paramount importance.

Antibiotics are natural products of microbial origin. However, these are naturally produced only in minute quantities that are not even detectable in nature. Overproducing individuals are present in nature and screening large populations can always yield better producers. Appropriate modifications to culture medium and culture conditions also result in higher production. Generating mutants artificially and screening increase the chances of finding such overproducers. A big leap in this direction was possible due to the new biotechnological tools such as genetic engineering. This possibility was already under consideration for more than two decades (Chater, 1990). There had been a slow progress as antibiotic synthesis occurs as a combination of the action of several genes.

While antibiotics are extremely useful in medicine and veterinary medicine, the development of resistance by the target pathogens is an increasing problem. Therefore heavy investments are made into research leading to the discovery of new antibiotics. However, the natural antibiotics belong to a few families and it may not be possible to isolate new and therapeutically important antibiotics belonging to new families. Once resistance is developed it is possible this resistance extends easily for that particular family of antibiotics. Therefore the modification of already known antibiotics to generate semisynthetic antibiotics, either chemically or enzymatically, may be more appealing.
As microorganisms can be cultivated in fermenters much more easily than plant cells and they are more amenable to genetic alterations via mutagenesis and genetic engineering, they have become factories of products originally produced by other organisms. This is a case of producing natural products in an ‘unnatural’ producer. The development of biotechnological approaches for enhanced production of such natural products is hindered by the complexity involving unknown regulatory genes and enzymes (Oksman-Caldentey and Inzé, 2004). In this context gene technology can help in overexpression, constitutive expression, breaking tissue specificity and so on, rather than expression in a different organism. This is possible when control mechanisms of expression are identified. It may be traced down to a particular molecule which either keeps the entire process switched off (suppressor) or required for switching on the system (inducer). Once the suppressor is knocked off or the inducer is constitutively expressed without tissue specificity, complex metabolites may be produced with a higher yield in the producer itself. One major limitation in plant cell suspension cultures is the tissue specificity of the metabolites. Therefore breaking tissue specificity should be given more attention in order to exploit the full potential of this technology.

Although animal cells can also be genetically manipulated, other problems associated with animal-cell and tissue culture are still limiting the formation of new products in animals. Nevertheless pharming, a technology still in its infancy, to produce pharmaceuticals in farm animals is a focal point in natural product formation with animals. What is basically done in pharming is to transform animals with genes coding for useful bioproducts, and allow expression and harvesting, for example by milking. Pharming has yielded drugs such as growth hormone, blood components such as haemoglobin, and large quantities of certain proteins needed for research. Although pharming is a novel production platform, it is yet to break through many hurdles such as regulatory barriers, consumer acceptance, environmental issues and ethical concerns. The term pharming is not restricted to production through animals, but also includes pharmaceutical production in genetically modified plants. Ramessar et al. (2008) reviewed the progress made in maize plants, the first plants used in pharming, as a platform for effective and safe molecular pharming.

Human insulin is the first mammalian protein expressed in bacteria and later became a huge contributor to the pharmaceutical industry. All human insulin preparations available in pharmacies are of microbial origin, based on two technologies using Escherichia coli as the expression system and different technology using yeasts to secrete the precursor of insulin (Petrides et al., 1995). Another industrial success is the production of rennet or chymosin enzyme, which is important in making cheese. The original source was the stomach of calves. As the amount extracted from a single stomach is very low, production could not meet demand and hence the cost was very high. This was first cloned and expressed in E. coli (Nishimori et al., 1982). Recombinant chymosin is now produced by two fungi, namely Kluyveromyces lactis and Aspergillus niger, in addition to E. coli, by different manufacturers (Neelakanthan et al., 1999).
A comprehensive list of plant proteins that have been expressed in *E. coli* and in two yeasts, namely *Saccharomyces cerevisiae* and *Pichia pastoris*, is provided by Yesilirmak and Sayers (2009).

Whole plants can serve as factories of desired products – not only those that are present naturally, but also products that are engineered into them. Edible vaccine production is one such example. Antigenic components of pathogens are expressed in plants, and when eaten they can act as antigens to trigger antibody production, thereby developing immunity against the pathogen in question. Neither purification of the antigen nor formulation into vaccine is necessary. In engineering Hepatitis B edible vaccine into lupin (*Lupinus luteus*) and lettuce (*Lactuca sativa*), the gene coding for a viral envelope surface protein has been transferred from the viral genome to the plant genome with necessary modifications for expression in plants. When tissues of transgenic plants were fed to mice and human, they developed Hepatitis B virus specific antibodies to the plant-derived protein (Kapusta *et al.*, 1999). A fusion protein of components from two naturally occurring proteins, cholera toxin B subunit and insulin, has been expressed in potato tubers. This protein, when ingested with the potato tuber, can enter into the gut-associated lymphoid tissues, as it is linked to the carboxy-terminal sequence of the cholera toxin B subunit. When mice, having a diabetic mellitus condition due to insulin autoimmune disease, were fed with transgenic potato, a substantial reduction in pancreatic islet inflammation and a delay in the progression of clinical diabetes were observed (Arakawa *et al.*, 1998).

Nevertheless, the production of secondary metabolites depends mainly on pathway engineering/metabolic engineering, rather than engineering the gene responsible for the final product. Due to the complex nature and specificity of reactions at strain level rather than at species or broader taxonomic level, the progress has been slow. Transfer of the putrescine:SAM N-methyltransferase (PMT) gene from *Nicotiana tabacum* under the control of the CaMV 35S promoter into a *Duboisia* hybrid has increased the N-methylputrescine concentration in hairy root cultures. The increase has been reported as 2–4-fold in transgenic versus wild type. The enzyme catalyses the N-methylation of the diamine putrescine to N-methylputrescine, which is the first specific precursor of both tropane and pyridine-type alkaloids. Both of these types are present in *Duboisia* roots, however the concentrations of these alkaloids did not increase in the transgenic hairy root culture, despite higher levels of the precursor (Moyano *et al.*, 2002). Although the final product formation was not enhanced, this is a step forward. Working along similar lines it was also possible to engineer the enzyme hyoscyamine 6-hydroxylase from *Hyoscyamus niger*, under the regulation of the CaMV 35S promoter into a *Duboisia* hybrid and found one of their transgenic lines produced 74 mg/l scopolamine (Palazóna *et al.*, 2003). The enzyme was known to catalyse two steps in scopolamine biosynthesis.

In the above section the importance of modifications, either enzymatic or chemical, to natural products was mentioned. These ‘unnatural’ modifications to natural products can be done in a more ‘natural’ manner by combinatorial alterations by engineering genes relevant for the enzymes. An
example of this approach is reported by McDaniel et al. (1999) who engineered erythromycin polyketide synthase to produce a library of over 50 macrolid antibiotics. Kantola et al. (2003) provided an analysis of available literature on this subject giving details of the gene clusters involved. Hopwood et al. (1985) was the first group to produce ‘hybrid’ antibiotics by transferring genes encoding enzymes making a set of antibiotics in one strain to another. This results in new antibiotics depending on the substrate specificity of the enzymes. Thus the possibility of finding more efficient antibiotics is made possible.

Metabolic engineering or combinatorial synthesis of traits from bacteria to plants has also been successful. For example, a bacterial gene encoding p-hydroxycinnamoyl-CoA hydratase/lyase (HCHL) has been expressed in Beta vulgaris. One line was able to accumulate the glucose ester of p-hydroxybenzoic acid (pHBA) at a rate of 14% of dry weight (Rahman et al., 2009).

Combinations of different approaches are of course possible and some trials have already given positive results. The effect of combining metabolic engineering with providing elicitors in the culture medium has been tested by Zhang et al. (2009) in flavonoid production by hairy root cultures of Glycyrrhiza uralensis. In metabolic engineering, overexpression of chalcone isomerase was achieved by Agrobacterium-mediated transformation with a 150% increase of total flavonoid over the wild type. When PEG8000 and yeast extract was added to the medium, the engineered line produced over 300% total flavonoids.

Plant tissue and cell culture in natural products

Many higher plants produce economically important organic compounds such as oils, resins, tannins, natural rubber, gums, waxes, dyes, flavours and fragrances, pharmaceuticals, and pesticides. Plants have been identified since ancient times as a source of remedies for ailments. Medicinal plants, even today, are given the highest importance in the pharmaceutical industry, despite the fact that some of these chemicals, which were first identified as botanicals, are synthesized chemically. It is a general rule in nature that if one has continued enthusiasm, patience and the right approach, one shall encounter a better performer of the function of interest. Natural product formation is no exception. Screening of natural plant populations has taken place throughout civilization and will continue. This is now happening in a more rigorous manner at the level of genetic diversity and identity with the aid of molecular biology and biotechnology tools. On the other hand, it is also possible to use the biotechnological tools for the generation of new varieties with more desirable traits, as discussed in the above section with regard to microorganisms. Once a better performer is identified, the next concern would be how to maintain the genetic constitution so that it would be used for a long period without genetic variation. Tissue culture is the first option available for the clonal propagation of plants within a short period of time in a small
area. Similarly regenerated plants through micropropagation are extremely important to relieve the pressure on the wild plants exerted by overexploitation. Depending on the tissue specificity of the product, the harvesting may be destructive as vital parts, such as roots or bark, of the plant may have to be removed in harvesting, imposing additional heavy pressure on wild populations.

As mentioned in the review by Chaturvedi *et al.* (2007), the micropropagation and field establishment of *Dioscorea floribunda* in India has been a success story. They calculate the number of plantlets that could be obtained within a year starting from a single nodal cutting as 2,560,000 in comparison to a maximum of 10 plants from a single tuber which can be obtained after 3 years of growth in the field. Thus there cannot be any doubt about the power of micropropagation, especially for those plants that cannot be rapidly propagated otherwise. Even with those plants, the advantage of having propagation of true-to-type plants cannot be underestimated. The report criticizes the progress made in India in the micropropagation of medicinal plants, despite the fact that experiments in various institutes have come up with protocols ending up in the field of a long list of medicinal plants. This fact is mentioned here in order to highlight the inefficiency of technology transfer.

The extraction of natural products from wild or field-grown plants, however, suffers from many impediments such as low production, and no uniformity of production from place to place, from time to time and from one plant variety to another. Riker and Hildebrandt (1958) were probably the first scientists who had vision of the power of plant tissue culture in natural product synthesis. As tissue and cell cultures can be maintained under desirable culture conditions, once culture media and culture conditions for optimum growth and optimum production have been worked out, the above problems can be mitigated. When tissue is collected from cultivated or wild plants, there is a long waiting time from plantlet formation to product formation as extraction may be possible only after reaching maturity or some other status.

Among several other scientists working in the late 1970s and early 1980s, Berlin (1984) visualized plant tissue culture as a future potential process for natural product synthesis and stressed that more research was needed for the elucidation of regulatory controls in biosynthetic pathways. Alfermann and Petersen (1995) demonstrated the potential of plant tissue and cell cultures for natural product synthesis by referring to research by many scientists who were able to produce various metabolites at the laboratory scale.

It has been possible to manipulate biosynthesis through genetic manipulation, and overexpression and expression of new products has been possible in cultured cells and organs. Organogenesis may be required for generating certain tissue-specific substances (Rout *et al.*, 2000). The primary purpose of plant tissue culture was the exploitation of the totipotency of the plant cell for mass-scale propagation of useful varieties of plants. The plants obtained are expected to be genetically identical and hence form a clone. However, variations occur within the clone due to somaclonal variations as a result of replication errors in mitotic cell divisions. While it seems undesirable, the
generation of somaclonal variations is intentionally done for the further improvement of the selected plant variety. The screening can be done in much the same way as for microorganisms – in Petri dishes rather than in a greenhouse or a field. Therefore overproducers and producers of new metabolites can be easily and rapidly selected. The generation of variants can also be achieved by somatic fusion of two protoplasts of cells from two different parents. The parents may be closely or distantly related. This can bring genetic information required, for example, for synthesis of one metabolite and an enzyme that can further transform it into a more useful product or products. This section of science is called combinatorial biosynthesis. The variants made by either method can usually be regenerated into whole plants or, if desired, can be maintained in cell or organ cultures.

Certain metabolites are tissue specific. Even for metabolites that are not tissue specific, the higher yield is given in compacted tissues rather than in loose-cell suspensions. For this, organogenesis is necessary. A very good solution is available as plant tissues transformed by Agrobacterium rhizogenes can grow indefinitely as roots in appropriate culture media. Once transformed, the cells can grow as hairy roots without the bacterium. When products are formed and secreted or made to secrete into the medium, product recovery is easy as it is not contaminated by cells. Further, continuous removal is also possible. While all these facts are fascinating and encouraging, the published literature shows only two plant metabolites that are produced on a commercial scale. Shikonin is the first botanical produced on a commercial scale using plant cell cultures of Lithospermum erythrorhizon. The specific productivity of shikonin has been increased 25-fold by simultaneous in situ extraction using n-hexadecane added before 15 days and immobilization of cells in alginate beads, in comparison with production in cell suspension culture (Kim and Chang, 2004).

Immobilized cells have shown to be better producers in general. When comparing yields of scopadulcic acid B, a diterpene that has antiviral and anti-tumour activity, production by Scoparia dulcis in suspension culture and cells immobilized in Luffa sponge, Mathew and Jayachandran (2009) noted 350.57 mg/g of cells by the 19th day by immobilized cells in contrast to 50.85 mg/g of cells after 30 days of incubation in suspension culture. This is a sevenfold increase with a shorter time of incubation. Continuous removal of products and inhibitory substances is an added advantage of using immobilized cells.

The only other compound produced using plant cell culture that has successfully entered the market is ginseng saponin originating from Panax ginseng. Further improvements to the yield have been shown in hairy root cultures fed with specific nitrogen and phosphorous sources (Jeong and Park, 2006).

Catharanthus roseus is one of the plants that showed success in the production of alkaloids in cell suspension culture. These are indole alkaloids, of which the bisindole alkaloids vinblastine and vincristine are antineoplastic medicines and the monoindole alkaloids (ajmalicine and serpentine) are antihypertension drugs. Since the first results published 30 years ago (Kurz et al.,
continuous efforts have been made experimenting with various cell suspension culture techniques with modifications of culture conditions in order to maximize the production of desired compounds. The research focusing on improvements on both cell culture and bioreactor aspects is the subject of the review by Zhao and Verpoorte (2007). Nevertheless, further research is necessary to bring products of *C. roseus* to the commercial scale. Berberine, an isoquinolene alkaloid, has been produced in cell suspension culture of *Tinospora cordifolia* at a concentration of 5.5 mg g\(^{-1}\) dry wt in 24 days (Rao *et al*., 2008). By screening eight cell lines, the authors were able to find one line that accumulated 13.9 mg g\(^{-1}\) dry weight of berberine. This is a 5–14-fold increase in product formation compared to that of the intact plant. This is an example demonstrating the potential of plant cell cultures and somaclonal variation for the natural product industry. A tenfold increase brings down the cost of the product in the market by at least the same magnitude.

Cyclotides are small cyclic peptides stabilized by disulfide bonds between six conserved cystine residues. Their biological activities include anti-HIV, antimicrobial and insecticidal actions, and hence they are important botanicals in biocontrol. In addition, due to their high stability, cyclotides are very good candidates for the development of drug delivery systems. Dörnenburg *et al.* (2008) developed techniques to produce cyclotides using callus, suspension culture and hydroponic cultures of *Oldenlandia affinis* and evaluated them for Kalata B1 accumulation. *In vitro* culture produced only up to 15% of Kalata B1 in comparison with plants grown in hydroponics. Further improvement is probable by manipulating culture conditions and the same group reported a higher rate of cell multiplication in a 25-l photobioreactor (Seydel *et al*., 2009). They claim that this approach for harvesting Kalata B1 is more profitable than other methods, such as field cultivation and chemical synthesis.

Cell suspension culture is also useful in the synthesis of volatile oils. By manipulating culture conditions, Ishikura *et al.* (1984) obtained a yield of 0.005% to 0.01% of volatile oils of the fresh weight of the cells of *Cryptomeria japonica* cell suspension.

The progress of research in the development of hairy root technology for metabolite production has been reviewed by Guillon *et al.* in 2006. The delicate nature of the hairy roots is one of the major problems in maintaining hairy root cultures. Srivastava and Srivastava (2007) reviewed the problems and different technologies available to overcome them. The basic types of reactors are either liquid phase or gas phase or even a combination of the two. The nature, applications, perspectives and scale up are discussed therein.

The hairy root growth, production of the desired substance(s) and secretion may require different culture conditions. The production can be enhanced by providing the precursors at the right time and the right concentration. The addition of cadaverine to hairy root cultures of *Nicotiana rustica* shifted the alkaloid production in considerable favour of anabasine with a concomitant diminution of nicotine (Walton *et al*., 1988), whereas the addition of menthol or geraniol at 25 mg l\(^{-1}\) to hairy root cultures of *Anethum graveolens* did not have an impact on the growth and resulted in the transformation of the compounds to volatile products (Faria *et al*., 2009). In a recent experiment,
Hernandez-Vazquez et al. (2010) were able to increase the production of centellosides in cell cultures of *Centella asiatica* by feeding with α-amyrin together with DMSO to assist the penetration of α-amyrin into the cells.

The secretion can be enhanced by manipulating the culture medium either by increasing the leakiness of tissues or by introducing a trapping system to trap the secreted metabolite. For example, Rudrappa et al. (2004) reported an increased recovery of betalaines (red natural pigment) production by hairy roots of *B. vulgaris* up to 97.2% by using alumina:silica (1:1) in the culture medium. The use of elicitors is a useful approach to enhance the productivity as some secondary metabolites are naturally produced in response to a signal. This has been shown practically by incorporating both live and autoclaved bacteria in the conversion of hyoscyamine to scopolamine by hairy root cultures of *Scopolia parviflora* (Jung et al., 2003).

Podophyllotoxin is a useful botanical extracted from *Podophyllum hexandrum* for treating general warts. Chattopadhyay et al. (2002) used a 3-l bioreactor for the cell suspension culture of *P. hexandrum* and successfully recovered podophyllotoxin. It has been noted that providing coniferin as a precursor in the culture medium increases the productivity, but this is economically prohibitive. An innovative method to circumvent this problem is to co-cultivate *P. hexandrum* cell suspension with hairy roots of *Linum flavum*, which produces coniferin. This approach has increased the final product formation by 240% (Lin et al., 2003).

A further step in bringing the substrate and enzymes from different sources has been made possible through combinatorial biosynthesis. Here, rather than cocultivating the two individual plants *in vitro*, the genetic traits controlling the production of one compound, which will be the precursor of the final product, and the enzyme required for the transformation are brought together into one cell. A somatic hybrid of two *Solanum* species producing solanidine and solanthrene (*S. tuberosum*) and tomatidine (*S. brevidens*) produced all three steroidal glycoalkaloid aglycones. In addition all hybrids also produced a totally new compound, demissidine (Laurila et al., 1996). These authors propose a hypothesis to describe this which explains the production of demissidine by hydrogenating the double bond at position 5 of solanidine of *S. tuberosum* by a hydrogenase enzyme of *S. brevidens*.

### 13.3 Expanding Natural Product Diversity

In the quest for natural products for the benefit of humankind, it can often be thought that the existing natural product diversity is not sufficient. The generation of mutants is a tool available for increasing natural product diversity. Random mutagenesis is stimulated by treating with chemical mutagens or radiation. Although these are useful and have been employed for making variants and subsequent screening, with the better understanding of DNA and development of new biotechnological tools, specific, site-directed mutagenesis is possible. This has reduced the effort in screening a large number of mutants for the expected outcome.
In an attempt to restore the ability to produce taxol, an anticancer drug, to an endophytic fungus, *Tubercularia* sp., mutagenesis and genome shuffling in protoplasts resulted in no restoration, but the production of new metabolites (Wang et al., 2010). One mutant produced three new and one already known sequiterpenoids, whereas another one made 18 novel compounds belonging to different classes and 10 already known compounds which were not present in the wild-type strain.

Altering the culture condition alone can induce the production of different natural products by an individual organism. If the mechanism of control of a metabolic pathway is understood, then breaking silence in expression should be simple. Sometimes the presence of another organism in the neighbourhood may influence the induction of a pathway leading to a previously unseen product. Therefore mixed fermentation can result in an increased concentration of already expressed or undetected or unexpressed metabolites in crude extract, and the production of new analogues of known metabolites due to combined or extended pathways (Pettit, 2009).

Each and every step of biochemical pathways are supposed be catalysed by a specific enzyme. Nevertheless, the size of the total genome, as unravelled by genome-sequencing projects, cannot account for the large number of metabolites present in organisms. Post-transcriptional modifications leading to the formation of isozymes can be partly responsible for the high diversity of metabolites, but this has now been mainly attributed to the low specificity of some enzymes, which means that one enzyme can convert several similar precursors or intermediates into several products causing ramifications in the next step, and finally ending up with several end products. The number of end products shall be much higher if there was no compartmentalization of substrates and enzymes within a cell and in different cells. Bringing a natural substrate in one cell in contact with an enzyme from another cell may result in entirely new ‘natural’ products. This is possible through breeding of sexually compatible individuals, or through protoplast fusion, which is possible between rather distant relatives. This technology is known as combinatorial biosynthesis or metabolic engineering or heterologous expression, and has been applied to microorganisms as well as to plants.

Polyketides are highly diverse natural products, including those important as antibiotics and other pharmaceuticals such as anticancer agents and immunosuppressors. The most important producers are actinomycetes, but other bacteria, fungi, plants and marine animals also contain polyketides. They are formed by the sequential polymerization of carboxylic acids, and as such carboxylic acid monomers become a source of variation in polyketides. The diversity has been possible due the modular nature of the polyketide synthases (PKSs). Once transcribed, the peptides assemble to make the functional enzyme consisting of different number of polypeptides, each having two modules. The large protein adds one monomer at each module to the growing chain. Mutagenesis in each module is possible and the outcome of each mutation and combinations of those can cause a great variety of polyketides (Kosla, 1997). The first polypeptide in the assembly of the megasynthase initiates polymerization and is the minimal PKS containing
two enzymatic domains (ketosynthase (KS), malonyl-CoA:ACP transferase (MAT) didomain) and an acyl-carrier protein (ACP) domain. Zhang et al. (2008) removed the minimal PKS from Gibberella fujikuroi in two formats and engineered it in E. coli – cyclized polyketide production was observed. In the fungus cyclization is C2–C7, whereas in E. coli cyclization of C9–C14 and C7–C12 were predominant. By expressing one of the two minimal PKSs (PKS_WJ) and downstream processing enzymes in E. coli they were able to synthesis nonaketide anthraquinone SEK26 in good amounts. This work also encourages scientists to investigate further the generation of variety through heterologous expression.

A very good example is the engineering of a new metabolic pathway in E. coli by a combination of mixing genes and modifying catalytic functions by in vitro evolution. In this experiment, phytoene desaturases were assembled by shuffling modules from different bacteria and expressing them in E. coli. The different strains generated were screened for new carotenoid pigments. One such chimeric enzyme had introduced six, in place of four, double bonds into phytoene. Another set of chimeric lycopene cyclases had also been made and engineered into the cells expressing the above novel phytoene, thus extending that pathway to produce a variety of coloured compounds. One such combination produced cyclic carotenoid torulene in E. coli. This experiment reported by Schmidt-Dannert (2000) suggests the unlimited possibilities of obtaining novel natural products by rational design.

Apart from the usual ribosomal polymerization of amino acids into peptides, a mechanism of non-ribosomal enzymatic polymerization of amino acids similar to that of polyketide synthesis is also present in living systems. For example, the well known hepatotoxin, microsystine produced by Microsystis spp., is formed by a microcystin synthetase complex consisting of peptide synthetases, polyketide synthases and hybrid enzymes (Dittmann et al., 2001). Accordingly, heterologous expression in a similar way to PKS is possible in view of introducing new variants of microsystins in the quest for novel natural products.

A great proportion of microorganisms cannot be cultivated and hence no information on their potential for natural product formation is available. This portion reaches an astounding 90% or 99% of the total populations in soil. They belong to bacteria and archaea and also viruses. This also indicates the presence of an extremely large, yet untouched resource. Although the organisms are unculturable, their DNA can be isolated from environmental samples and amplified using PCR techniques. The isolation, amplification and study of DNA from a total community is referred to as metagenomics, or environmental or community genomics. Once DNA is amplified, purification and sequencing is straightforward. Sequencing helps in ‘seeing’ what is present, and at least how close they are to culturable, known members of the community. On the other hand, a functional approach, in which the DNA is expressed in surrogate hosts, is also very useful in finding out what they can do. When analysing clones of recombinant surrogate hosts for new products, there is a big chance of finding new bioproducts, perhaps some of which may be in entirely new families of compounds.
Fragments of DNA can be cloned using artificial bacterial chromosome (BAC) vectors. These are designed to carry larger fragments than those produced by PCR techniques. Rondon (2000) used this technique and revealed a great deal of information on phylogenetic, physical and functional properties of the metagenome. Some of the clones showed antibacterial and nuclease activity and the DNA sequences governing these characteristics were found to be different from those already known. This directly supports the idea that unculturable organisms provide a source of novel genes. Other functions observed were the production of amylase and lipase and hemolysis.

13.4 Conclusion

The search for natural products has been rekindled with realization of the vast biological diversity and genetic diversity that make biological systems an unlimited resource. Furthermore, the global society is demanding natural products and rejecting synthetic chemicals for all possible uses, including food and additives, drugs, cosmetics and so on. Although plants and animals had been a source of such products from ancient times, the horizons now have widened and continue to expand, particularly with the development of modern biotechnological tools. Man was unaware that he was exploiting microorganisms as they are invisible to the naked eye. Some products become redundant over time, as is the case for antibiotics for which resistance has developed in target (and non-target) organisms. Further new diseases emerge, new lifestyles demand new products, and biotechnology is needed to satisfy those demands. As new tools in biotechnology have been found, one can expect that the trend will continue. Exploring and exploiting new resources will be feasible in the future, as evidenced by metagenomics in new product formation which harness the biosynthetic capability of unculturable microorganisms. However, with all of these developments, the number of bioproducts that have already conquered the market is not encouraging. Therefore, there is a need for more intensive research on optimizing production of already identified bioproducts, with simultaneous research efforts on new product formation. It can also be noted that technology transfer is not occurring effectively, because the already available technologies remain in the laboratories where they were generated without reaching the industrial fermenters or industrial-scale farms.

References


Index

Page numbers in italic indicate figures, those in bold indicate tables.

active components for antifungal activity 95–96
antifungal active methanol investigations 96
antimicrobial compounds 95
secondary metabolites 95
useful antimicrobial phytochemicals 95
active packaging 35–37
advantages of preservative food-packaging films 35–36
alternative to modified atmosphere packaging (MAP) 36
innovative concept 35
effect of MAP packaging tested 36–37
mustard essential oil 36
oil in liquid phase 37
use of wax-coated paper and board 36
aerated compost tea (ACT) 251, 252
inhibiting effect on fungal development 255
aflatoxin secretion inhibitors 15
aflatoxins 2
produced by species in *Aspergillus* 24
Africa crop losses 191, 192

forest 195
agriculture, in developing countries 1–2
agrochemical industry 81
aliphatics 60
allelochemicals 135–136
allomones 135
apneumones 135
kairomones 135
synomones 135
allomones 136–137
plant metabolites with negative effect on insect behaviour 136
antifeedants 136–137
anti-ovipositants 136
repellents 136
substances meeting requirements for new botanical insecticides 137
allyl isothiocyanate (AITC) 10, 10, 36–37
stored in plants as a glucosinolate 10
α-terpineol 181, 182, 183
α-terthienyl 11, 11
ambuic acid 228–229, 229
antibiosis 247–248
antibiotics development of resistance to 266
antibiotics continued
modification 266
natural products of microbial origin 266
antifeedant action mechanism 138–141
biological assays 139–140, 140
general procedure adopted 140–141
feeding deterrents 138
food choice 138
formula to calculate feeding deterrence 141
leaf discs 139
products can lose primary efficiency 141
use of bioassay techniques 139
antifeedant research 137–138
antifeedant efficiency 138
history of research 137
recent emphasis 137–138
studies showing efficacy 137
antifeedant substances 141–143
aromatic hydrocarbons 143
aromatic plants 143
Colorado beetle 143, 144
monoterpenes as feeding deterrents 143
no antifeedant efficiency in commercial products 141
Pongamia genus 142
antifeeding activities 142
repellent activities 142–143
present study of polyphenolic substances 143
prospects for products based on 143–145
multi-component tactics 145
non-azadirachtin liminoids 145
use in pest management programmes 144–145
antifeedants 12, 136–137
deter phytophagous insects 136
prospects for practical use 136–137
antifungal active component (plants) 96–106
antifungal agents 22
antimicrobial peptides from biocontrol microorganisms 112–113, 113–114
classified into groups of linear and cyclic peptides 112–113
efficacy 113, 113–114
peptide synthesis 112–113
antimicrobial peptides from plants 114–115
plant defensins
inhibitory activity 114–115
range of biological functions 115
antimicrobial products
applied to foods, research in 27–34
from plant extracts, current status 71–72
Carvone™ 71
Milsana® 71
new products 71
plant essential oils as organic fungicides 71
new approach to microbial disease control via SAR 72
antimicrobials of plant origin 92
aromatic compounds 53–59, 60–61
alkaloids, examples 59, 59
non-phenolic aromatic compounds 53, 54
OH groups absent 53
tetrapyrrole group 53, 54
phenolic compounds 55–59
flavonoids 57–59, 57, 61
simple phenols all monomeric 55–57, 55
aromatic plant compounds 12
Azadirachta indica see neem (Azadirachta indica)
azadirachtin 7–8
commercial products 142
considered non-toxic to mammals 7–8
highly oxidised triterpenoid 7, 7
primary and secondary antifeedant activities 142
behavioural insect control 13
benzoquinine 70
β-Asarone 13, 14
bioactive compounds 218
bioactive substances 44
biocontrol agents 206, 210
biodeterioration 91–92
biofumigation with *Brassica* 211–215
biological activity and repellency 177–178
  activity of fatty acids 178, 178
    C9—C11 acids 178, 179, 185
  activity of some edible oils 177, 177
biological diversity 221
biotechnology in genetic diversity 264–273
  molecular biological tools and identification of variants 265
    minor differences in closely related genotypes 265
  molecular tools and conservation strategies 265
  plant tissue and cell culture 269–273
recombinant gene technology 266–269
  antibiotics 266
  edible vaccine production 268
  genetic alteration 267
  hepatitis B 268
  human insulin preparations 267
  importance of modifications 268–269
  metabolic engineering 269
  more complex molecules 266
  peptide as final product 266
  pharming 267
  production of rennet (chymosin) 267
systematics, uses of 265
  biotechnological tools available 265
  story of mustard oil biosynthesis 265
botanical pesticides 4
  attitudes of resource-poor farmers in developing countries to 200
  now adopting IPM principles 200
  willing to pay for the services 200
  environmentally safe 5–10, 11–12
  replacement by synthetic pesticides 5
  botanical products, historical use 4–5
  plant diseases and disease control methods 4–5
  botanical resistance inducers 153
  botanicals in developing countries 196–198
    local formulation by peasant farmers 196
    burnt and fumes used 196
    methods of formulation 197–198
    crude water extracts 197, 197
    mixed formulations 197, 198
    oils 197–198, 197
    powders 197, 197
    use of adjuvants 198
    scientific formulations 196
    simple to make, easy to use 196
  future use 200
    alternative to synthetic pesticides 200
    WHO 200
  mechanisms of systemic 152–154
  use in third world countries 193–194
  versus conventional pesticides 198–199
  alternative management 198–199
brassinosteroids 51, 51, 80, 81
carvone 10, 10
  non-toxic botanical insecticide 10
  cereals 27–33
  mycotoxins 27
  chemicals, synthetic 3
  coevolution and coexistence 264
  combinatorial biosynthesis 269, 271, 273
  compost tea 242–257
    aerated compost tea (ACT) 254–256
    competition among microbial populations 246–251
    antibiosis 247–248
    hyperparasitism 248–249
    induced resistance 249–251
    microbiostasis 246–247
    grape marc compost 252–256
compost tea continued
microbes in compost teas 256–257
suppression of plant pathogens 251–252
aerated compost tea (ACT) 251, 252
clarification of terms 251
compost tea described 251
macrobiotic of NCT and ACT 252
non-aerated compost tea 251, 252
reports on control of plant pathogens/diseases 251–252
cotton leaf curl virus disease 149
crop protectants, non-synthetic 47
cyclosporin 226
defensive plant mechanisms 135
deforestation, and botanicals 195–196
developing countries
crop protection a necessity 2
destruction of food in storage 2
farmers/researchers seeking alternatives to synthetic pesticides 43
food industries rely mainly on fumigants 175–176
formulations of botanicals in 196–198
history of natural products and use by local farming communities 193–194
Nigeria 194
tropical forest botanicals 193, 194
importance 1–2
insect damage in stored grains 175
use of natural products 48
eco-friendly control measures 2–4
edible oils 176
edible oils and fatty acids 177, 177–8, 178, 179
 crude oils against C. maculata 185
no adverse effect on seed germination 185
mode of action complex 185
elicitors 119, 120–122, 206
SAR-inducing compounds 206
endophyte biology
diminishing rainforests a major problem 236
microbial diversity loss 236
endophytes 220
definition of 219
diversity in 221
fungi and bacteria 219–220
metabolic distinction 221
molecular techniques 224
addition of telomeric repeats 224
genes for taxol production 224
plant selection norms and ethics 222–223
collection of Rhyncholacis penicillata 222–223
distinct environmental settings 222–223
hypotheses governing plant selection strategy 222
secondary metabolites 223
snakevine Kennedia nigriscans 223
taxol and Taxus brevifolia 223
researchers 235
techniques for isolation, preservation and storage 221–224
cultures for product isolation 221–2
storage solutions 222
endophytic fungi
as alternative sources 225–226
examples 226
Taxus brevifolia and taxol 219
antibiotics from endophytic fungi 227–231
artemisinin 230
colletotric acid 230
Cryptocandin 227, 228
Cryptocin 227, 228
guignardic acid 230, 230
javanicin 230–231
Pestalotioptis jesteri, jesterone and hydroxy-jesterone 229–230, 229
Pestalotioptis microspora 227–229, 229
antioxidants from endophytic fungi 233–234

compounds from natural resources 233–234

P. microspora, compounds, pestacin and isopestacin from 233

pestacin 233

antiviral from endophytic fungi 232–233

call for new effective agents with low toxicity 225
discovery in its infancy 232–233
fungi 234

immunosuppressive compounds 234

F. subglutinans and subglutinols A and B 234

natural-based compounds 226–227

problem of resistant organisms 225

production of certain bioactive compounds 225

volatile antibiotics from fungal endophytes 231–232

Glcioladium sp. 232

M. albus 232

M. albus 231

M. crispans 232

M. albus 231–232

Environmental Protection Agency (EPA) and developing countries 199

DDT 199

establishment of Botanical Pesticides and Pollution Prevention Division 199

register botanical pesticides 199

use of synthetic pesticides 199

views of 199

enzymes, proteinase inhibitors, lectins and PR proteins 115–119

lectins 117

naturally occurring insecticides 117

lytic enzymes 115–117

lysozymes 116–117

other applications for chinolytic enzymes 116

potential for plant-disease management 116

use on plant pathogens by biocontrol agents 115

PR proteins 118–119

families 118–119

‘inducible defence-related proteins’ 118

proteinase (protease) 117–118

active against plant pathogenic nematodes 117

effective against phytopathogens in vitro and in vivo 117

in the green consumerization context 118

used to engineer virus resistance in transgenic plants 118

essential oils 12–14, 28, 176

advantage of bioactivity in the vapour phase 34

antifungal effects and anti-aflatoxigenic efficacy 25

antimicrobial additives 23

chemosterilant activity 13–14, 14

cinnamon and clove 24

as contact insecticides and fumigants 185–186
difference in anti-fungal and aflatoxin efficacy 25–26

and edible oils 176–177

efficacy in inhibiting aflatoxin production 24–26
clove, mountain thyme and poleo antifungal effect 25

C. camphora and A. galanga oils 25

P. graveolens and A. parasiticus 25

zimmu extract and inhibition of AFB1 26

encapsulation 14

as fumigants against stored-product insects 180, 180, 181

space fumigation with SEM76 essential oil 180, 181

space fumigation studies/tests 180, 180, 186
essential oils continued
  important role in plant protection 12
  insect repellants 13
  in vitro assays against
    mycotoxigenic fungi 24
  in vitro screening of 37 oils 24
  as inhibitors of fungal growth and
    aflatoxin production 15
  lemongrass oil and mycotoxigenic
    fungi on maize 27–29
  assayed on irradiated maize 29
  mustard essential oil 36
    AITC, fungistatic or fungicidal
      36–37
  octopamine 14
  plant essential oils 71, 186
  possible mode of action 183–185
  d-limonene 184
  Push-Pull (stimulo-deterrent
    diversionary) strategy 13
  semio-chemicals 13
  and synthetic pesticides 14
  therapeutic use of 26
  Ethiopian subsistence farming
    systems 48

fescue toxicosis 219
flavonoids 57–8, 57, 61
  glycosides 61, 61
  kinones 58–9, 58
  tannin, hydrolysable and
    condensed 58, 58
food, loss during storage 92
fruits 33–34
  blue mould in apples and pears 33
    AITC treatments in pears 33
    disease incidence 33
  pepperfruit 34
  cinnamon essential oil 34
  volatile eugenol 33–34
fungicides and contact synthesized
  insecticides
  botanicals as possible alternatives
    to 176
  global concern over negative effects
    176
  pest resistance and pesticide
    residues 176
fungal endophytes 218–236

fungal toxins, controlled by natural
  plant products 15
fungi
  group of microbes 219
  plant associated 218
fungicides, chemical 42
  pressure to reduce in foods 3–4
  resistance to accelerating 3
fungicides, natural 47
fungistasis 246

  genotypes 265
  gibberellins 218
  glucosinolates 10, 211
    and myrosinase
      co-located in same cells 211, 212
      formation of hydrolysis
        products 211, 213
      tissue disruption 211, 213
  secondary metabolites 211
grape marc compost 252–256
  age and suppression 253
  disease-suppressive effects 253
  environmental hazards 252
  inhibition of sclerotial germination
    253
soilborne suppression and diseases
  253–256
  treatment in Europe 252–3
  waste from wine production 252

hairy root technology 272–273
hyperparasitism 248–9

India 234–235
induced resistance 249–251
induced antiviral proteins 160–166
  C. aculeatum and B. diffusa 162–166
  antiviral proteins 165, 166
    efficacy of foliar leaf sprays 166
    medicinal properties 162
  plant viruses 162–163
  pre-inoculation spray of SRIs
    165
  protein occurring in B. diffusa
    163
  proteinaceous modifiers
    165–166
systemic resistance inducer 164–165
treatment with SRI from C. aculeatum leaves 163
virus inhibitory activity 163–164
inhibitor of virus replication 161
Samsun plants 161
plant-extract-induced virus inhibitory agent (VIA) 161–162
antiviral agents 161
hypersensitivity to virus infections 160
purified AVF 160
two categories 161
VIAs 162
virus-induced new antiviral protein components 160–161
induced systemic resistance (ISR) 250–251
insect growth reguatory chemicals (IGRS) 11–12
insect pests 2
insect repellents from rainforest plants 11
volatile terpenoids 12
insecticide effects 135
insecticides, toxicity of 2–3
integrated pest management (IPM) 43, 68, 200
development 4
in organic agriculture 45
pest control in conventional cropping systems 44
juvabione 11–12, 12
lemongrass essential oil 27–29, 32
limonene 51, 51
limonoids 142
non-azadirachtin 145
maize 27–31
aflatoxin accumulation 27
essential oils tested for fungal control/mycotoxin prevention 29–31
A. asperrima and A. striata 30
dried basil leaves 30
anise, boldus, mountain thyme, clove and poleo 29–30
effects of cinnamon, clove, oregano and palma rose oils studied 30
herb oils 29
onion and garlic 29
oregano oil 30
lemongrass 27–29, 28
potential prevention of biodeterioration 96–101
active compound 98, 98
in vitro evaluation antifungal activity 99–100
test fungi for antifungal activity assay 99
use of poisoned food technique 99–100
in vivo evaluation to prevent biodeterioration 100–101
results 100–101
isolation and characterization of antifungal active component 98–9
molecular structure of bioactive compound 99, 99
P. corylifolia 96–98, 97
melanin antimalanogenic compounds 127
infectivity of plant pathogenic fungi 127
metagenomics 275, 276
methyl bromide (fumigant) 65–66, 205
microbial population, competition among 246–51
antibiosis 247–8
antibiotic production 248
defined 247
and inhibition in the Petri dish 247
Trichoderma and Gliocladium 248
hyperparasitism 248–249
Trichoderma spp. 249
mycoparasites 249
parasitism on another parasite 248, 249
microbial population, competition among continued
induced resistance 249–51
compost/compost-amended soils 250
defined 249–50
ISR role in suppression of plant pathogens 250–251
ISR and SAR 250
microbiostasis 246–247
competition for nutrients in exudates 246
fungistasis 246
iron competition 246–247
iron salts, synthesis and use of siderophores 247
and pseudobactins 247
mungbean yellow mosaic virus (MYMV) 149
mycotoxicosis 22
mycotoxigenic fungi, in vitro assays against 23–24
aqueous extract of *Adenocalymma sativum* 23–24
extracts of *Cynara cardunculus* 23
zimmu 23
mycotoxigenic fungi and mycotoxins in foods
natural preservatives 22
plant products 22–27
defence mechanisms against pathogens evolved 33
mycotoxins 2
in foods 21–22
naturally occurring secondary metabolites 21
significant impact on economics 22
production 24–27
aflatoxins 24
myrosinase 211, 212, 213

natural bio-herbicides 72–77
allelopathy
defined 73, 195
release of protective chemicals 73
weed management programmes 73
augmentation biocontrol 73
biological approach to weed control 72
classical biocontrol (inoculative biocontrol) 73
current status of natural herbicides 76–77
commercialized for weed control in organic agriculture 77
ecologically more favoured 76
inundative biocontrol 72–73
need to control weeds 72
plants with herbicidal properties 74–76
allelochemicals inhibiting seed germination and growth 75–76
bioactivities of plant extracts 75
buckwheat 75
essential oils used for weed control 76
extracts of lucerne cultivars 74
potential of *W. shinensis* 74
research into allelopathic activity of plant extracts 75
natural compounds
from plants with bio-stimulatory potential 78–81
brassino steroids 80, 81, 81
ComCat™ 80–81, 81
effect of liquid seaweed extract on improving yield of canola 79
products developed 78
properties in plant extracts 79
prototype product 80
from wild plants 46–48
plant allelochemicals 78
replacing artificial chemicals in food 263–264
secondary metabolites 78
usefulness 264
natural pest controls using botanicals 16
natural plant compounds biocidal effect 111
for controlling plant pathogens and pests 110–111
with microbial activity 47
non-biocidal suppressors 111
natural plant extracts
potentially to use as plant growth regulators/natural herbicides 44–45
use to control pathogens 44
natural plant products
aims of research 47
biodegradable and eco-friendly 82
contribution of biochemicals 44
final application to food products 37
inhibitory action on fungal cells 26
use in agriculture 46–47
natural product chemistry 264
natural product diversity, expansion of 273–276
attempts to restore taxol-producing ability to an endophytic fungus 274
combinatorial biosynthesis 274
E. coli, engineering new metabolic pathway in 275
fragments of DNA can be clones 276
metagenomics 275
nonribosomal enzymatic polymerization of amino acids 275
polyketides, formation of 274–275
mutagenesis 274
site-directed mutagenesis 273
natural product research 60
natural product synthesis 263–276
natural products
availability 195–196
  cultivation within agro-forestry programmes 195
  growth throughout the year 195
  inter-cropping and mix-cropping 195
  use as weed control in farmlands 195
biofumigation with Brassica 211–215
importance in third-world countries 193
and phytochemicals from endophytes 224–234
plant tissue and cell culture in 269–273
and ailments 269
biosynthesis manipulation 270
combinatorial biosynthesis 271, 273
cyclotides (small cyclic peptides) 272
development of hairy root technology 272–273
immobilized cells 271
indole alkaloids 271–272
organogenesis 270, 271
plant tissues culture and clonal variations 270–271
podophyllotoxin 273
regeneration through micropropagation 270
shikonin 271
tissue culture 269
use as fungicides and bactericides in agriculture 206–210
factors in formulating plant-based products as pesticides 106
plant protection from microbial attack 206
summary of natural products used as agrochemicals 206, 207–210
use of 47–48
see also botanicals; natural plant products
natural substances in fungi, bacteria and plants, pesticidal properties 215
neem (Azadirachta indica) 6–8, 15, 25, 47
and integrated pest management 7–8
biopesticides for pest control 6
insect growth regulators (IGRs) 7
leaf extracts 26
limonoids 142
organic farming 7–8
potential alternative to chemical-based pesticides 6
seed extracts 141–142
use of leaves 193
use of neem cake 194
nematodes 11
New Zealand 74
nicotine 4, 5
Index

nuts 35

controlling aflatoxin infection 35
effect of fumigation with essential oil of mustard 35
inhibition of germination of fungi 35
use of protectants 35

octopamine

biological role in insects 14
as neurotransmitter 183, 184

paddy 101–106

active principle 102, 102
antifungal assay 101
comparative efficiency studies 102, 104
complete inhibition of test fungi observed 102, 103
D. hamiltonii 101, 101, 105–106
evaluation of the bioactive compounds 105, 105
in vitro antifungal activity assay 102
pathogen control 215
pathogen suppression 243
pesticides 2

aerosol 193
eco-friendly and natural 106
essential-oil-based 13
natural-product-based 205
 persistence in biological systems 3
pesticides, chemical
being phased out globally 205
benefits to crop producers 43
and creation of green consumerization 110
downside of 192–193
hazards to environment 43
long-term effect of environmental contamination 46
novel compounds in place of 110–11
results of persistent and indiscriminate use 92
undesirable impacts and environmental risks 110
phenolic acids 75
phenols, simple 55–57
all monomeric 55, 55
formation of coumarin glycosides 56, 56

development as natural herbicide 56–57
as natural herbicides 55
hydrokinone 55
salicylic acid 55
phenyl propanoids
coumaric acid and caffeic acid 55–56, 56
potential for development 56
synthesized from p-coumaric acid 56
synthesized from phenylalanine 55–56
phytopathogens 110
plant diseases, problems and consequences of 42–43
plant endemism 221
plant extracts
antimicrobial compounds 59–62
chemical defences 59
constitutive and induced compounds 59–60
flavonoids and saponins 61–62
intensive plant screening programmes for bioactivity 60
antimicrobial properties of 59–72
aqueous extracts 93–94
current status 71–72
in vitro evaluation for antifungal activity 93–95
plants with antibacterial properties 69–71
plants with antifungal properties 62–69
secondary metabolites with antimicrobial properties 60–61
solvent extracts 94–95
methanolic and ethanolic bark extracts 94
petroleum ether and methanolic extract of E. ayapana tested 94
testing for antifungal activity 94–95
plant oils, effects of 176
plant pathogens, biocontrol of 111–125
antimicrobial peptides produced 112–115
enzymes, proteinase inhibitors, lectins and PR proteins 115–119
green consumerization 119–125
proteinaceous compounds 111–112
proteinic inducers of plant resistance 119–125
plant products
antimicrobial activity studies and demonstrated 23
disc diffusion test 23
as pesticides, current worldwide use 5–10
use in active packaging 35–37
plant species and insecticidal properties 176
plant–insect relationships 134–135
a ‘food’–‘consumer’ relationship 135
plants
isolation and identification 96–106
problems in managing protection 109–110
serious efforts to screen for biological activities 92
under exploited for plant health needs 106
use of bioactivity-directed fractionation and isolation (BDFI) 96
with antibacterial properties 69–71
Hedera helis extract and fire blight on pome fruits 70–71
large-scale screening programmes 69
testing of in vitro growth inhibition of E. amylovora 69–70
with antifungal properties 62–69
active secondary leaf extract metabolites 62
antifungal potential 64
antimicrobial activity 65
antimicrobial efficacy of plant extracts 68–69
effective control of grape downy mildew 63–64
significant inhibition of spore germination 64
effects of some essential oils against R. solani 67
evaluation of potential of plant extracts to be applied in IPM programmes 68
exploiting indigenous knowledge of medicinal plants 64
grapefruit extract extract used to control Phytophthora spp. 64–5
inhibition of mycelial growth of C. cladosporioides 62
of spore germination of some fungi by Ajoene 62
investigation of phenol composition of two carnation cultivars 65
methanol extract of C. emoryi 62
natural plant extracts and soil-borne pathogens 65–6
neem tree extracts 66
plant seeds 67–68
saponins 63
South African plants with fungitoxic properties 63
PR proteins 118–119, 159–160
precocenes 12, 12
proteinic inducers of plant resistance 119–125
Chitozars 120
cold shock protein (CspD) 120–122
harpins 120
induction of plant resistance to pathogens 119
active defence mechanisms initiated 119
general and proteinaceous elicitors 119
MF3 protein 122–125
MF3 integration with chitosan 124
MF3 polypeptide chain 123
peptidyl-prolyl cis/trans isomerases (PPIases) 122
plant FKBPs 122
Index

proteinic inducers of plant resistance continued
MF3 protein continued
PPase interaction with pathogen proteins 122–123
PPases and plant—pathogen relations 122–123
rape lines with mf3 insertion 124
systemic character of resistance 124
Psoralea corylifolia 96–101, 97
Push-Pull (stimulo-deterrent diversionary) strategy 13
pyrethrum 8, 9, 46–47
as insecticide 8
low doses 8
pyrethroids versus pyrethin 8
quassin and neo-quassin 11
rainforests 221
repellents/repellency 136
ribosome inactivating proteins (RIPs) 150, 154–155
rice 32–33
plant extracts 32–33
rotenone 4, 5
used in commercial insecticides 4
rysanodine 4, 5
sabadilla (cevadilla) 8–10
saponins 52, 52, 61–62, 63 biological activity 61
secondary metabolites 21, 49–59, 78, 95, 223
alkaloids 59
with antimicrobial properties 60–61
aromatic components 53–9
non-phenolic aromatic compounds 53, 54
phenolic aromatic components 55–59
isoprenoid components 49–53 brassinosteroids 51, 51, 52, 80, 81, 81
diterpenes 50, 51
hemiterpenes 49, 50
isoprene units and repeating units 49, 49
monoterpentes 50, 50
saponins 52, 52
sesquiterpenes 50, 50
sterols 51–52, 51, 52
tetraterpenes 53, 53
triterpenes 51
semio-chemicals 13
siderophores 247, 254, 256, 257
soilborne suppression 253–256
detection of siderophobes 256
microbiological analysis 254, 254
production of compost 253
production of siderophores 254
results from in vitro analysis 254–6, 255
soil-applied composts and watery extracts 256
solarization 211
sorghum 32
South Africa 13
Blyde River Canyon 63
determination of antifungal potential of plants 63
search for plant species with fungitoxic properties 63
statins 125–128
ergosterol 125
and fungal melanin 127
lovastatin and compactin in plant protection 126
natural inhibitors of sterol biosynthesis 125
sterols 125
stored food commodities 15
strychnine 11, 11
subsistence farmers 46
suppressive soils/suppressive substrates biological elements 242–243
composting conditions and materials 245–246
general suppression 245
modes of action of biocontrol agents 243
soilborne disease 243–245, 244
specific suppression 245
sustainable agriculture 4
synthetic chemicals consumer resistance to 46
increased production 81
systemic acquired resistance (SAR) 206
endogenously occurring virus inhibitors 150
induced by infection of plants 150
pathogen-induced 158–159
dicotyledonous and monocotyledonous plants 159
endogenous SA 159
first report of virus-induced SAR 158
pre-inoculation with biotic inducers 158
and role of PR proteins 159–160
systemic induced resistance (SIR) 150, 163
systemic resistance inducers (SRIs) 151–158, 163, 167
carnation antiviral proteins (dianthins) 156
characteristics 151
induced resistance 151–152
mechanisms of systemic induced resistance by botanicals 152–154
absence of PR proteins 153
production of VIA sensitive to actinomycin D 153
suppression of disease symptoms 154
systemic synthesis of some PR proteins 153
VIA production in hosts 153
virus inhibitory agents (VIAs) 152
mirabilis antiviral protein (MAP) 1 56–157
leaf extract 156–157
purified protein 157
obtained from plants 152
pokeweed antiviral proteins (PAPs) 155–156
pre-inoculation spray 165
resistance development inhibited by actinomycin D and cyclohexamide 152
ribosome inactivating proteins (RIPs) 154–155
PAPs, dianthins and MAPs belong to type-I RIPs 155
show antiviral activity against both animal and plant viruses 154–155
shown to be N-glucosidases 154
Type-I RIPs 155
Type-II RIPs 155
ricinus (RICIN A) antiviral protein 157
A and B chains 157
type II RIP 157
role of RIPs 157–158
virus resistance 157–158
biological significance of RIPs 158
problem using type-I RIPs 158
taxol 265
anticancer drug 219, 227
fungal source 219
terpenoids 7, 7, 12, 60, 186
Trichoderma 210

virus disease resistance
constitutive resistance 150
induced resistance 150
virus infection 150
virus inhibitors from plants 150–151
plant products using local or systemic resistance 150–151
ribosome inactivating proteins (RIPs) 151
viruses 149

wheat 31–32
A. speciosa root isolates 31–32
resveratrol 31
wild plants 44, 46
world agriculture 46